

RICHARD CLAY & SONS,
BREAD STREET HILL, LONDON, E.C.
And at Bungay, Suffolk.

PREFACE.

ALTHOUGH two or three very fair Latin "First Books" are already in existence, yet the present results of Latin teaching are not so satisfactory as to necessitate an apology for a new attempt. For a very long time the Author (in the course of a weekly entrance-examination of a most elementary kind) has been in the habit of asking those boys who profess to have learned Latin—almost all of whom are over thirteen years of age, and have learned Latin two, three, four, or five years—to construe the sentence "*Oppida magna boni agricolæ habent*": and not one in five has been able to construe these few simple words correctly. The Examiner would have been well content with the translation "They have the great towns of the good husbandman": but almost all have succumbed to the temptation of treating "*oppida*" as Nominative, and have then "plunged" to the rendering "Great towns have good husbandmen"—or something worse.

One reason for these miserable results is probably that, at present (1880), a private school may be "kept" by any

one with or without any degree, or other proof of the possession either of knowledge or of the power to impart knowledge: but it is also possible that many of our elementary Latin books are to some extent responsible for these failures, because they lay scarcely sufficient stress on *parsing before construing*. The Latin sentences placed before beginners are so easy that the pupil soon finds he can *construe* without the trouble of *parsing*; and he thus early contracts the fatal habit of "plunging" at the meaning instead of reasoning it out. To provide against this evil is one of the principal objects of the *Fin Latina*. From the very first page the pupil is taught to *parse* as well as to *construe*, and not to *construe* till he has *parsed*; and throughout the book, parsing questions are put bearing on the Latin Exercises, and the answers are suggested by paragraph references.

In the preparation of the Exercises the *dictum* of Lord Bacon has been borne in mind that in all kinds of training we should imitate dancers, who practise at one time in heavy boots, at another in light shoes. A considerable experience of teaching has led the Author to the conclusion that a First Latin Book requires a great diversity of Exercises, some to illustrate special rules, others of a more general nature; some on points of Accidence, the Irregular Nouns and Verbs, and the like, others on difficulties of Syntax; and again, some difficult and accompanied with helps, others easy to be done without help; some to be written with preparation, others to be answered *vivâ voce*. This want he has

attempted to supply in the present volume, and at the same time to combine the Exercises with an outline of the Accidence, and the principal Rules of Syntax.

As regards the arrangement of the Exercises, some departures from the usual order have been introduced, especially in the earlier introduction of the simpler uses of the Subjunctive Mood. It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that, during all this while, they remain under the impression that "*amemus*" means *we may love*, and "*amaremus*" *we might love*—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses.

The Author has also aimed at introducing a little more variety into the examples by teaching somewhat more of *idiom* than is usually taught in First Latin Books; and some hints on the particles have not been thought out of place. In Greek a boy is taught to pay attention to particles almost from the beginning, but in Latin they are too much neglected; and, for want of them, the language too often strikes beginners as uninteresting and lifeless.

Most of the longer sentences in the Latin Exercises have been selected from classical authors, occasionally

modified: and here, as well as in the statement and explanation of several of the Rules, ample acknowledgments are due to the *Public School Grammar*. Several of them may appear at first sight somewhat difficult for beginners; but it will generally be found that the Vocabularies and the paragraph references supply all the help that is needed for a pupil who will honestly *parse before construing*. The Author has worked through most of them with a pupil ten years old, whose questions and difficulties have suggested many of the footnotes bearing on the Exercises.

The Irregular Verbs are arranged in two lists; first according to their formation, and then in alphabetical order. This repetition may appear superfluous; but the object of it is to enable the pupil to learn the Verbs according to their logical order in the first list, but afterwards to test his knowledge by repeating them when presented to him miscellaneously in the second list, which also includes a large number of the more important Compound Verbs in which boys frequently go wrong.

The Hints on Construing are intended not only as a preparation for translating a Latin author, but also as a summary of Rules for parsing the sentences in the Latin Exercises, and for translating English into Latin.

It is hoped that the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, while escaping the necessity of breaking the thread of the Accidence and Syntax by interposing continual explanations of terms, will on the other hand avoid the greater

evil of suffering the pupil to use words of the meaning of which he knows nothing.

In the Public Schools and in the better class of Preparatory Schools (to the excellence of which the Author bears willing testimony) such portentous failures as were mentioned in the beginning of this Preface are (no doubt) unknown: but even there it sometimes appears as though it were very difficult to ground boys well in Latin Grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a mechanical and monotonous word-drill. Good teachers will succeed without any books in avoiding the evil and attaining the good; but even good teachers may occasionally be helped by a book, and to them this book is offered, not as a substitute, but as a help, for good teaching.

I gratefully acknowledge much valuable help for which I am indebted to Mr. J. S. Reid, Fellow and Tutor of Caius College, Cambridge, and one of the Classical Examiners for the University of London.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THIS Edition contains many corrections and modifications suggested by the use of the book in teaching. All the Exercises have been worked through with the view of detecting omissions in the Vocabulary, or difficulties that required additional help. The Exercises themselves have received very few alterations, but many references to Rules have been inserted, and the deficiencies in the Vocabularies have been supplied.

My thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Phillipotts, Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, for many useful suggestions incorporated in the present Edition.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Pronunciation	xvi
The Cases of Nouns	1—4
The First Declension	6
The Second Declension	8
Ablative of Instrument and Agent	11
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension	13—16
The Third Declension (Consonant Branch)	18
Adj. governing Dative; dignus, g. Ablative	19
The Abl. answering to <i>When?</i> and <i>Within what time?</i>	21
The Acc. answering to <i>How long?</i> or <i>During what time?</i>	21
Multi, many (<i>men</i>); multa, many (<i>things</i>)	23
Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension (Consonant Branch)	24
Third Declension, continued (the -i Nouns)	25
Adjectives of the Third Declension	27
The Fourth Declension	31
The Fifth Declension	33
The Comparison of Adjectives; quam, or Ablative	34—5

	PAGE
Irregular Comparison	37—8
Numeral Adjectives	39—42
The Dative of Possession with <i>est</i>	42
<i>Ūnus, ullus, sōlus, āliū, &c.</i>	43—4
Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives	45
A Verb agrees with its Nom. Case in Number and Person .	46
Direct Questions	48
Demonstrative and Emphatic Pronouns	49—50
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	51—2
The First Conjugation (Active)	53—5
The Second „ „	56—8
The Third „ „	58—60
The Fourth „ „	60—2
The Latin and English Tenses ; Apposition	63—4
A Verb agrees with the First Person, rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third	65
The Infinitive as a Subject or Object	66
The Imperative ; the use of <i>nē</i> in Prohibition	67
The Subjunctive expressing Purpose	67
The Subjunctive expressing a Dependent Question . . .	69
The Sequence of Tenses	70
<i>Quīdem, vēro, ētiā, vėl</i>	70—2
Verbs signifying <i>pleasing, obeying, &c.</i> , take the Dative .	72
Verbs of <i>asking, commanding, advising, and striving</i> are followed by <i>ut</i> , or <i>nē</i> , with the Subjunctive	74
Verbs of <i>preventing</i> are followed by <i>quōmīnus</i> and the Subjunctive ; <i>nōn est dūbīum quīn</i>	75
<i>Cum</i> , with the Subjunctive Mood	77

CONTENTS.

xiii

	PAGE
Vēnio, vinco, vincio, rēpērio	78
The Verb sum	79—81
The Active Participles	81
The Dependent Future Interrogative; quando	82
The First Conjugation (Passive)	83—6
The Second " "	86—8
The Third " "	88—91
The Fourth " "	91—3
The Passive Participle	94
An Adjective agreeing with Nouns of different Genders	95
Impersonal Use of the Passive	96
An Active Verb that governs the Dative retains the Dative in the Passive	97
The Gerundive Construction with the Dative of the Agent	99
Capio, Conjugation of	100—1
Utrum—ān; -nē—ān	102
The Prepositions	104—9
The Ablative of Manner	106
Ād with the Gerund and the Gerundive	108
Verbs compounded with Prepositions	110—1
Mīnimum ābest quīn, &c.	111
The Ablative Absolute	112—4
Doponent Verbs	115—7
Obliviscor, mīsēreor, &c.; fungor, fruor, ūtor, &c.	119
The Accusative and Infinitive; its Tenses	120—2
Fōre ūt; sē, suus	122—3
Impersonal Verbs	124—5
Possum, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, fēro	126—32

	PAGE
Indirect Questions after Verbs of <i>knowing, discovering, &c.</i>	133
The Verb <i>eo</i>	135
Supines; <i>captum iri</i>	137—8
The Gerund and Gerundive	139
The Verb <i>fi</i> ; The Complementary Subject	141
Cases; The Accusative of Extension	142
The Locative Case	143
The Dative of Equivalence or Purpose	144
The Ablative; of <i>Definite Price; of Quality; Plenty or Want</i>	145—6
The Genitive of <i>Quality; Value; Indefinite Price; Plenty or Want</i> ; to express "it is the mark of"; after Adjectives used as Nouns; after Adjectives of <i>knowledge, desire, &c.</i>	147—8
The Subjunctive used to express <i>result or consequence; optatively; hortatively; concessively</i> ; in Conditional Sentences; after <i>qui</i>	149—52
<i>Sī quis; nē quis</i>	151
<i>Ūt nōn</i> , when used for <i>nē</i>	152
<i>Vēreor ūt; nescio ān</i>	153
<i>Quo</i> with Comparative; <i>suus, sē, ipsē</i>	154—5
<i>Quisquam, aliquis, quilibet, quidam</i>	156
Irregular Nouns	157
Irregular Verbs and Genders of Nouns { <i>Cēlo, doceo; Adverbial antē and post</i>	158
{ Distrib. Numerals; <i>cum...tum</i>	159—60
{ <i>Quam qui; Historical Infinitive</i>	161—2
{ <i>Quamquam and quamvis; jampridem</i>	163—4
{ <i>Quam</i> with Superl.; <i>intērest, rēfert</i>	166—7

CONTENTS.

xv

PAGE

Elementary Rules on Oratio Obliqua	168—71
Easy and Recapitulatory Exercises	172—186

APPENDICES.

I.—Irregular Verbs in Order of Formation	189
II.— „ „ „ Alphabetical Order	200
III.—Hints on Construing	216
IV.—A Parsing Table	224
V.—A Table of Genders	226
VI.—On the Latin Days of the Month	229
VII.—Elementary Rules on Quantity	230
VIII.—Glossary of Grammatical Terms	232
IX.—Vocabularies for the Earlier Exercises	240
X.—Latin-English Vocabulary	248
XI.—English-Latin Vocabulary	284

SCHEME OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION.¹

Based on the nearest English Approximations.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā ²	=	English	a in father.
"	a	=	"	first a in away, or a in villa
"	e	=	"	ai in pain.
"	ae	=	"	ai in pain.
"	oe	=	"	ai in pain.
"	ē	=	"	c in men.
"	ī	=	"	i in machine.
"	ī	=	"	i in pity.
"	o	=	"	o in home.
"	o	=	"	o in top.
"	ū	=	"	u in rule.
"	ū	=	"	u in full.
"	au	=	"	ow in power.
"	ui	=	"	ice, e.g. in Lat. qui, cui.
"	eu	=	"	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin ū (differs little from present pronunciation).
"	ei	=	"	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin ī (differs little from ai in pain).

CONSONANTS.

Latin	c, ch	=	English	k.
"	g	=	"	g in get.
"	s	=	"	s in sin.
"	t (rătŭo)	=	"	t in cat, not sh, as in nation.
"	j	=	"	y in yard.
"	v	=	"	v.
"	z, ph, th	=	"	z, ph, th.

Latin s between two vowels = (sometimes) English s in rose, e.g. "rosa."

¹ Taken from the *Syllabus of Latin Pronunciation*, issued by the Professors of Latin at the Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. Some modifications have been made by the suppression of all Italian standards, and of all the English standards of pronunciation that contain a vowel followed by r. Consequently the Latin o is represented by the English o. The Professors give the option of pronouncing v as v or as w.

² Syllables in Latin are either long or short. A short syllable is denoted by this mark (˘), a long one by this (—). A few elementary rules about the *quant ty*, i.e. the length or shortness of syllables, are given in Appendix VII. on Prosody.

VIA LATINA.

THE CASES OF NOUNS.¹

THE FIRST OR -A DECLENSION.

Āquīl-ā, (an) eagle. Fēmīn-ā, (a) woman. Fīlī-ā, (a) daughter.
Āqu-ā, water. Dextr-ā, (a) right hand. Pēcūnī-ā, money.
Āmā-t, (he) loves. Dā-t, (he) gives. Lāvā-t, (he) washes.
Līberā-t, (he) frees. Monstrā-t, (he) points out.
Sūpērā-t, (he) overcomes. Vōrā-t, (he) devours.²

- 1 English Nouns have (now) only two Cases, of which the Possessive is indicated by 'the affix 's: "John's book;" "the sun's light;" "men's clothes."

Latin Nouns have six Cases.

- 2 1. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Who?* or *What?* before a Verb (i.e. when it is the Subject of a Verb), it is put in the Nominative Case, which, in Nouns of the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -a short, -ā:

The woman loves.

Fēmīn-ā āmāt.

The eagle devours.

Āquīl-ā vōrāt.

¹ For an explanation of the terms Case, Noun, &c., see the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, Appendix VIII. p. 232.

² A vowel before t final is always short: the quantity of a-t (") will therefore not be marked for the future.

Who loves?—Ans., the woman, *fēmin-ă*. *What devours?*
—Ans., the eagle, *ăquīl-ă*.

In parsing Latin, the question is generally asked as follows: *Why is fēmină Nominative?*—Ans., *because it is the Subject of (or Nominative to) ămăt*.

- 3 2. THE VOCATIVE CASE.—When a person or thing is addressed, the Noun expressing the person or thing is put in the Vocative Case, which, in the First Declension, is the same as the Nominative:

O woman, Fēmīn-ă.

O eagle, Ăquīl-ă.

Why is fēmină (or ăquīlă) Vocative?—Ans., *because it is a person (or thing) addressed*.

- 4 3. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* after a Verb (i.e. when it is the Direct Object of a Verb), it is put in the Accusative Case, which is expressed, in the First Declension, by the termination *-am*:

The daughter loves the woman.

Fili-ă fēmīn-am ămăt.

The woman points out the eagle.

Fēmīn-ă ăquīl-am monștră-t.

Loves whom?—Ans., the woman. *Points out what?*—Ans., the eagle.

Why is fēmīnam the Accusative?—Ans., *because it is the Direct Object of (or Accusative governed by) ămăt*.

- 5 N.B. Note here that the order of the words is not the same in a Latin and in an English sentence.

In English the Object generally follows the Verb, and the Subject generally precedes the Verb, so that the order of the words shows which is Subject and which is Object.

- 5a But in Latin the Verb generally comes at the end of the sentence; and the Nominative and Accusative must be discovered, not by the order, *but by examining the Case*.

Thus, in the last example, *-am* is the Accusative termination, and *-ă* is the Nominative termination. Therefore

fēmin-ā is the Nominative, and the Subject of *monstrāt*; and *āquīl-am* is the Accusative, and the Object of *monstrāt*.

- 6 4. THE GENITIVE CASE.—The Latin Genitive (besides other uses) expresses the English Possessive Case, and, in the First Declension, terminates in -ae:

The woman's daughter.

Fēmīn-ae filiā, or (less commonly) filiā fēmīn-ae.

As the Latin Gen. expresses many other relations besides possession, it is usual, in parsing a Gen. Noun qualifying another Noun, to say that the former is *governed* by the latter.

Why is *fēmīnae* Genitive?—Ans., *Because it is governed by the Noun filiā.*

In English the Possessive Case *always* precedes the Noun which it qualifies.¹ In Latin the Genitive generally precedes, but *not always*.

- 7 5. THE DATIVE CASE.—When a Noun expresses the person (or thing) (1) *to whom* a thing is *given*, or (2) *for whom* a thing is done, the Noun is put in the Dative (i.e. *Giving*) Case, which, in the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -ae:

(1) *The daughter gives an eagle to the woman.* *Fili-a āquīl-am fēmīn-ae dā-t.*

(2) *The woman points out the eagle to, or for, (her) daughter.* *Fēmīn-ā āquīl-am fili-ae monstra-t.*

(1) Why is *fēmīnae* Dative?—Ans., *After a verb of Giving, or, Indirect Object of dat.*

In answer to the question (2) Why is *filiāe* Dative? it is usual to say *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.

¹ Distinguish the English Possessive Case "sun's" from "of the sun," which is not a Case at all, but a Phrase used instead of a Case.

- 8 6. THE ABLATIVE CASE, besides (1) *sometimes* expressing separation, or motion from, i.e. ablation, also (2) *always* expresses the instrument with or by which an action is performed. In the First Declension, the Ablative is denoted by -a long, -ā :

(1) *The woman frees the daughter from blame.* Fēmin-a fili-am culpā libēra-t.

He hastens from Capua. Prōpūrā-t Cāpū-ā.

(2) *The woman washes the daughter with water.* Fēmin-ā fili-am āqu-ā lāva-t.

The daughter gives money with (her) right hand. Fili-ā pēcūnī-am dextr-ā du-t.

(1) Why is culp-ā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of Separation.*¹

(2) Why is āquā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of the Means or Instrument.*

FIRST DECLENSION, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nom. Insul-ā, (an or the) island (Subject).

Voc. Insul-ā, O island.

Acc. Insul-am, (an or the) island (Object).

Gen. Insul-ae, (an or the) island's, or of (an or the) island.

Dat. Insul-ae, to or for (an or the) island.

Abl. Insul-ā, from, with, or by (an or the) island.¹

- 9 THE ARTICLE.—From the above form it will be seen that what is sometimes called "the Article" in English (i.e. *a* or *the*) does not exist in Latin. Insul-ā must be rendered "*an* island" or "*the* island," according to the sense.

EXERCISE I.

(Learn Vocabulary I.)

1. ²Fili-ae. 2. Aquil-ā. 3. Pecuni-am. 4. ²Femin-ā. 5. Regnam. 6. Aqu-ā. 7. ²Puell-ae. 8. Naut-ā.²

¹ The Ablative is only *sometimes* used to express separation. Most frequently it cannot be so used without a *Preposition*. The particular Verbs and Adjectives of Separation, which are followed by an Ablative without a *Preposition*, will be given later on. But the pupil must remember that insulā, without an accompanying *Preposition*, very seldom means *from an island*.

9a ² These words are capable of more than one translation. Each translation should be written down, both here and for the future.

1. *Of a sailor.* 2. *To a sailor.* 3. *Money (object).* 4. *Water (subject).* 5. *For a girl.* 6. *By water.* 7. *With money.* 8. *O sailor.*

EXERCISE II.

Parse the Nouns in the following Exercise, stating in what Case each is, and why.

1. *Feminā naut-am aqu-ā lava-t.* 2. *Naut-ae sapienti-ā procell-am supra-t.* 3. *Naut-ae sapienti-ā procell-ae violenti-am supra-t.* 4. *Reginā insul-am fili-ae da-t.* 5. *Fili-ā pecuni-am dextr-ā dat.* 6. *Femin-ā pecuni-am naut-ae dextr-ā da-t.* 7. *Femin-ae patienti-ā naut-ae violenti-am supra-t.* 8. *Femin-ā patienti-ā naut-am supra-t.* 9. *Patienti-ā, O femin-ā, violenti-am supra-t.* 10. *Experienti-ā sapienti-am regin-ae dat.* 11. *Naut-ae dextr-ā femi-nam violenti-ā (9a) liber-a-t.*¹

[Words in brackets, thus (*her*), are not to be translated.]

1. *The queen gives an island to (her) daughter.*² 2. *The woman's daughter gives money to the sailor.* 3. *The sailor washes (his) daughter with (his) right hand (5a).* 4. *The sailor's violence overcomes the patience of the queen.* 5. *The woman by (her) patience overcomes the sailor's violence.* 6. *The daughter gives the queen's money to the sailor.* 7. *(Thy) daughter's patience, O woman, overcomes the violence of the queen.* 8. *Experience gives (to) the sailor wisdom.* 9. *The sailor's prudence delivers the daughter from the storm.*

(When this Exercise is turned into Latin, parse the Latin; and do the same with future Exercises.)

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

There are six similar cases for the Plural of each Noun, so that the Singular and Plural of *insul-ā* are thus declined :

¹ The Pupil should parse this Exercise *before construing it*. He should then commit the Latin to memory so as to be able to repeat the Latin of this Exercise from his own English, or from the English when read aloud to him, before he translates the next Exercise into Latin.

² The Pupil should note the order of the words in the Latin Exercise above, and imitate it by putting the Verb (for the present) *at the end*.

Words that are bracketed in the English Exercises are not to be translated into Latin, e.g. *her* in the first sentence of the English Exercise II.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Insŭl-ă, <i>an island.</i>	Insŭl-ae, <i>islands.</i>
Voc.	Insŭl-ă, <i>O island.</i>	Insŭl-ae, <i>O islands.</i>
Acc.	Insŭl-am, <i>an island.</i>	Insŭl-ās, <i>islands.</i>
Gen.	Insŭl-ae, <i>of an island.</i>	Insŭl-ārum, <i>of islands.</i>
Dat.	Insŭl-ae, <i>to or for an island.</i>	Insŭl-īs, <i>to or for islands.</i>
Abl.	Insŭl-ă, <i>from, with, or by an island.</i>	Insŭl-īs, <i>from, with, or by islands.</i>

EXERCISE III.

1. Puell-is.¹ 2. Femin-ārum. 3. Femin-ă.¹ 4. Naut-ae.¹
 5. Violenti-ă. 6. Aquil-ae.¹ 7. Aquil-is.¹ 8. Aquil-ās.
 9. Patienti-am. 10. Naut-ārum.

1. *To women.* 2. *From blame.* 3. *Eagles (object).* 4. *By patience.* 5. *Of eagles.* 6. *O women.* 7. *To eagles.*
 8. *Women (subject).* 9. *From an eagle.* 10. *To sailors.*

If a Nominative is changed from the Singular to the Plural Number, the Verb changes also :

<i>The woman loves.</i>	Fēmīn-ă amă-t.
<i>The women love.</i>	Fēmīn-ae ama-nt.
<i>The eagle devours.</i>	Ăquīl-a vōră-t.
<i>The eagles devour.</i>	Ăquīl-ae vōra-nt.

The Plural of all Verbs ending in -ă-t is formed by inserting n between a and t :

Sŭpĕra-nt, *they overcome,* monstra-nt, *they point out,*
 da-nt, *they give.*

EXERCISE IV.

A.—Change the Singular into the Plural in the Nouns and Verbs of the following :

1. Naut-ă ama-t. 2. Regin-ă monstra-t. 3. Fili-ă lava-t.
 4. Femin-ă da-t. 5. Naut-ă supera-t. 6. Puell-ă libera-t.

B.—Change the Plural into the Singular in the following :

1. Nautae da-nt. 2. Regin-ae supera-nt. 3. Aquil-ae vora-nt.
 4. Fili-ae ama-nt. 5. Dextr-ae libera-nt. 6. Stell-ae monstra-nt.

¹ The words or sentences thus marked are capable of different renderings; all of which should be given.

EXERCISE V.

1. Naut-*ā* procell-am supera-t. 2. Naut-ae procell-am supera-nt.
 3. Regin-*ā* pecuni-am puell-ae da-t. 4. Reginae pecunni-am
 puell-ae dant (9a). 5. Naut-arum patienti-*ā* procell-as supera-t.¹
 6. Naut-ae patienti-*ā* procellam supera-nt. 7. Femin-*ā* naut-
 ārum fili-*ās* lavat. 8. Femin-*ā* naut-ārum fili-*ās* aqu-*ā* lava-t.
 9. Patienti-*ā*, O naut-ae, violenti-am super-at. 10. Naut-ae, O
 regin-*ā*, patienti-*ā* procell-ārum violenti-am supera-nt. 11.
 Naut-arum dextr-ae regin-am procell-ae violenti-*ā* libera-nt.²

1. *The sailor overcomes the storm.* 2. *The sailors overcome the storm.* 3. *The women love the girl.* 4. *The woman loves the girl.* 5. *The queen gives money to the sailors.* 6. *The eagles devour the sailor.* 7. *By patience the sailor overcomes the storms.* 8. *The sailor's daughter points out the eagle.* 9. *The sailor's daughters point out the eagle to the queen with (their) right hands.* 10. *The queen's wisdom frees the woman from blame.* 11. *The daughters of the sailors wash the women with water (5a).*

EXERCISE VI.

- 11 After the verb "give," *to* is often not used in English, but the Dative must be retained in Latin :

*The queen gives the sailors
money.*

Rēgina pecūniam nautis
dāt.

- 12 Et, (which means *both* or *and*), is sometimes repeated to couple together two Nouns in the same case :

*Experience gives both
patience and wisdom.*

Expērientiā et pātientiam
et sāpientiam dat.

Sometimes the former *et* (*both*) is omitted :

*The stars point out the way
for (both) the sailors and
the women.*

Stellae viam (et) nautis et
fēminis monstrant.

¹ *Sūperat* is Sing. agreeing with its Nom. *pātienti-ā*, and is not affected by the Plural Number of the Genitive *nautārum*. What overcomes?—Ans., *patience*.

² This and all the following Latin Exercises should be carefully parsed before being construed, and then learned, so that the pupil can readily repeat them when the English is given.

For *filiabus*, *dēabus*, &c., see Exercise LXXXIV., p. 153, and foll.

1. Fili-ū aqu-am naut-ae dat. 2. Sapienti-ā, o nautae, regin-ā violenti-am supera-t. 3. Regin-ā fili-ae pecuni-am dextr-ā dat. 4. Stell-ae vi-am naut-is monstra-nt. 5. Experiēti-ū naut-is sapienti-am da-t. 6. Stell-ā naut-ae fili-ae vi-am monstra-t. 7. Regin-ae fili-ae naut-ae aqu-ā lava-nt. 8. Experiēti-ā et sapienti-ā naut-ae procell-as supera-nt. 9. Regin-ā nautis et aquam et pecuni-am da-t. 10. Sapientiū regin-am Ir-ā et intemperanti-ā libera-t.

1. *By experience and (by) patience the sailor overcomes the storm.*
 2. *The queen gives water both to the sailors and to the women.*
 3. *The women give to the sailors water and money.* 4. *Wisdom, O sailors, gives patience to the queen.* 5. *The stars point out the way for the daughter of the sailor.* 6. *The queen's daughter washes the woman with water.* 7. *The patience of sailors, O daughter, overcomes the storm.* 8. *The sailors, by (their) patience, overcome the violence of the storm.* 9. *The queen's daughters give the (11) sailor water.* 10. *By money the woman frees (her) daughter from the violence of the sailors.*

THE SECOND OR O- DECLENSION.

This Declension is divided into three groups, in which the Nominative ends in :

(1)
-ūs

(2)
-ī

(3)
-um

1.—NOUNS IN -ūs.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Dōmīn-ūs, a lord. ¹	Dōmīn-ī, lords.
Voc.	Dōmīn-ē, O lord.	Dōmīn-ī, O lords.
Acc.	Dōmīn-um, a lord.	Dōmīn-ōs, lords.
Gen.	Dōmīn-ī, of a lord. ²	Dōmīn-ōrum, of lords.
Dat.	Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord.	Dōmīn-īs, to or for lords.
Abl.	Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord. ³	Dōmīn-īs, by, with, or from lords.

- 13 The Voc. Sing. of fili-ūs, a son, and of proper names in -ūs, contracts -ē into -ī: fili, O son; Mercūrī, O

¹ Dōmīnūs means lord in the sense of owner, master.

² The Gen. Sing. of nouns in -ūs, -um, was generally contracted into -ī; but most English books retain -ī.

13a ³ N.B. A noun denoting a living thing is never used with *by* without the Latin Preposition *ā* or *ab*. The pupil should remember that *by a spear* may be translated *hastā*, but *by a lord* is *ā dōmīno*.

Mercury. The termination -īe was avoided even in common nouns in -īus, e.g. nuntī-us, a messenger. The Vocatives of these words were not used at all. The Voc. of Deus, God, is the same as the Nominative.

2.—a. NOUNS IN -ēr (gen. -rī).¹

Nom.	Māgistr-ē, a master.	Māgistr-ī, masters.
Voc.	Māgistr-ē, O master.	Māgistr-ī, O masters.
Acc.	Māgistr-um, a master.	Māgistr-ōs, masters.
Gen.	Māgistr-ī, of a master.	Māgistr-ōrum, of masters.
Dat.	Māgistr-ō, to or for a master.	Māgistr-īs, to or for masters.
Abl.	Māgistr-ō, by (13a), with, or from a master.	Māgistr-īs, by, with, or from masters.

2.—b. NOUNS IN -ēr (gen. -ērī).²

Nom.	Pūēr, a boy.	Pūēr-ī, boys.
Voc.	Pūēr, O boy.	Pūēr-ī, O boys.
Acc.	Pūēr-um, a boy.	Pūēr-ōs, boys.
Gen.	Pūēr-ī, of a boy.	Pūēr-ōrum, of boys.
Dat.	Pūēr-ō, to or for a boy.	Pūēr-īs, to or for boys.
Abl.	Pūēr-ō, by (13a), with, or from a boy.	Pūēr-īs, by, with, or from boys. ³

Vīr, a man, is declined like pūēr, except that ī is written for ē: vīr-um, vīr-ī, vīr-ō, and vīr-ī, vīr-ōs, vīr-ōrum, vīr-īs.

Nouns in -rī and -ērī. The best way to remember which Nouns make -rī and which make -erī, is to remember that

- 14 1. The only Nouns declined like pūēr are vīr, man; gēnēr, son-in-law; sōcēr, father-in-law; vespēr, evening; Lībēr, the god of wine (called by the Greeks Bacchus); also lībēr-ī, children (used only in the plural).³

- 15 ¹ Nouns in -er once ended in -ērus, like nūmēr-us, a number. The Voc. pūēr-ō is found in Old Latin.

² Final -ī, -o are always long. Also final -īs, in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Second Declension, is always long, and final -us in the Nom. Sing. is always short. These syllables will not therefore be always marked long or short for the future.

- 16 ³ The Adjective adulter (used as a Noun to mean an adulterer) may also be included in this list; and so may Adjectives in -ifer and -iger used as Nouns, e.g. signifer, standard-bearer, armiger, armour-bearer or squire.

2. All other Nouns in *ēr* are declined like *māgister* e.g. *āger*, *cāper*, &c.

3.—NOUNS IN -um.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc.	Regn-um, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Regn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Acc.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Regn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen.	Regn-i, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Regn-ōrum, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat.	Regn-ō, <i>to or for a king- dom.</i>	Regn-īs, <i>to or for kingdoms.</i>
Abi.	Regn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Regn-īs, <i>by, with, or from king- doms.</i>

EXERCISE VII.

Hābē-t, (<i>he</i>) <i>has.</i>	Hābe-nt, (<i>they</i>) <i>have.</i>
Terrē-t, (<i>he</i>) <i>terrifies.</i>	Terre-nt, (<i>they</i>) <i>terrify.</i>
Timē-t, (<i>he</i>) <i>fears.</i>	Time-nt, (<i>they</i>) <i>fear.</i>

1. Hortos habent.¹ 2. Dominus filio hortum dat. 3. Dominorum filii hortum habent. 4. Filii hortum dominus servo dat. 5. Servo equum dat. 6. Filii servorum equos habent. 7. Domini equum gladio torret. 8. Nauta servos experientiā superat. 9. Servorum patientiā dominum superat. 10. Fluvius aquam habet. 11. Servi, domine, minas timent. 12. Minae, O fili (13), servos terrent.
1. The lord has a garden. 2. The lord's son has gardens. 3. The lord's sons have gardens. 4. The lord gives a garden to (his) son. 5. The master gives the slave a horse.² 6. The slave has a sword. 7. The lord's sword terrifies the slave. 8. The slaves fear the master's sword. 9. The master terrifies the men with (his) sword. 10. The slaves overcome the man by patience. 11. Experience, O son, gives men patience. 12. The slave's patience overcomes the master's violence (5a).

EXERCISE VIII.—NOUNS LIKE *māgister*.

An Active Verb in -at, -ant, or -et, -ent, can be made Passive by adding -ur; but the *ā* or *ē* of the Verb, which was shortened before *t* (*supērā-t*, *terrē-t*), is long before -ur.

16a ¹ Where there is no Subject to the Verb expressed, *he* or *they* must be supplied. Here *hābent* must be translated *they have*.

² "The slave" here stands for "to the slave," and must be placed in the Dative Case. The pupil must be prepared for this in similar sentences where "to" is omitted after the word "give."

sūpērā-tur, he is (being) overcome; sūpērant-ur, they are (being) overcome.

terrē-tur, he is (being) terrified; terrent-ur, they are (being) terrified.

- 17 RULE.**—(1) The *instrument* is expressed by the Ablative alone; but (2) the *agent* (whether a man or other animal) requires, before the Ablative, the Proposition *ā* (*āb*, before a vowel or *h*).

The girl is terrified (1) with (or by) a spear (2) by the sailor. Puella (1) *hastā* (2) *ā nautā* *terrētur*.

1. Minister librum habet. 2. Magister agros fabris dat. 3. Aper caprum terret. 4. Minister caprum cultro terret. 5. Ager colubros habet. 6. Cancer colubros timet. 7. Cancris colubrorum violentiam timent. 8. Fabri minister Austrum timet. 9. Domini ministros arbiter sapientiā superat. 10. Pueri a colubris et ab apris terrentur. 11. Apri servorum hastis et gladiis superantur. 12. Feminas (16a) torrent.

EXERCISE IX.

CAUTION.—Distinguish between :

Lībr-os, books.

Lībr-um, a book.

Lībēr-os, children.

Lībēr-um, Liber, the god of wine.

- A. 1. Of snakes. 2. To a son-in-law. 3. To a crab. 4. To Liber. 5. By (17) goats. 6. Children (Abl.). 7. Of boys. 8. Of wild-boars. 9. Artificers (Abl.). 10. To books. 11. To children. 12. Attendants (Abl.). 13. For sons-in-law. 14. Of a father-in-law. 15. Of the South Wind. 16. To a field. 17. To a man. 18. To crabs. 19. To Liber. 20. Of children. 21. By (17) children. 22. By books. 23. By goats. 24. By wild-boars.

- B. 1. The master terrifies the servants. 2. The servant fears the master's violence. 3. The crab fears the snakes of the field. 4. The goat fears the servant's knife. 5. The umpire overcomes the lord's violence by (his) patience. 6. The artificer gives the servant a field. 7. The servant gives (his) master a knife. 8. The servants are terrified by the lord's threats. 9. The lord is overcome by the slaves.

EXERCISE X.—NOUNS LIKE *pūēr*.

1. Portum puero dant. 2. Vesperum puer timet. 3. Agricola Liberum amant. 4. Vesper virum terret. 5. Viri socer

feminam terret. 6. Virorum socori feminae generum terrent. 7. Puerorum violentiâ virorum patientiam superat. 8. Gener a socero gladio terretur. 9. Regina procollae violentiâ nautarum experientiâ liberatur.

1. *The boy loves Liber.* 2. *The woman's son-in-law fears the father-in-law.* 3. *The women fear the man's son-in-law.* 4. *The men's father-in-law terrifies the boys.* 5. *The woman's patience overcomes the violence of the children.* 6. *Experience gives men wisdom.* 7. *By patience children overcome the father-in-law's violence.* 8. *The wild-boars are overcome by the spears of the lords.* 9. *The queen is delivered (8) from the envy of the servants (5a).*

EXERCISE XI.—NOUNS LIKE *māgistēr* AND *pŭēr*.

18

*Nōn, not.*¹*Lauda-t, praises.**Nēquē, and not.**Culpa-t, blames.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>The lord does not blame the woman.</i> | 1. <i>Dōmīnus femīnam nōn culpāt.</i> |
| 2. <i>The lord praises the man, and does not blame the woman.</i> | 2. <i>Dōmīnus vīrum laudat nēquē femīnam culpāt.</i> |

1. *Capri puerum timent.* 2. *Caper puerorum cultros timet.* 3. *Liberi minister librum non laudat.* 4. *Puer virum timet neque feminam amat.* 5. *Feminae generos culpant neque soceros laudant.* 6. *Colubri fabri ministros terrent.* 7. *Fabrorum generi arbitri patientiam culpant neque sapientiam laudant.* 8. *Liberi ministris caprum agricola dat.* 9. *Aper servos non timet neque domini hastā superatur.* 10. *Puella a capris non terretur.*

1. *The book praises Liber.* 2. *The servants of Liber do not praise books.* 3. *The boys terrify the goats and do not fear the snakes.* 4. *The boy terrifies the goat with a knife.* 5. *The man praises (his) father-in-law's field.* 6. *The snakes terrify the artificer's son-in-law.* 7. *The man fears (his) father-in-law, and does not love (his) son-in-law.* 8. *The husbandmen give Liber a goat.* 9. *The queen is not delivered from the storm by the sailors (5a).*

19

¹ *Nōn* always means *not*; but *not* is not always to be translated *nōn*. In commands and some other sentences, *nē* is used, see Exercise XXXVI. But *not* may always be translated by *nōn* in statements and direct questions; and these are the only sentences with which the pupil will have to do for the present.

EXERCISE XII.—NOUNS IN -um AND -ēr.

20 RULE.—Two Nominatives coupled by -et take the Verb in the Plural :

Patience and constancy overcome violence. Pātientia et constantia violentiam superant.

1. Agricola Liberi dona laudat neque libros amat. 2. Magister argentum ministro dat. 3. Argentum, non aurum, dominus servis dat. 4. Pueri diligentiae praemiis delectantur. 5. Puerorum praemia viri non amant. 6. Tempa Liber et Neptunus habent. 7. Liberi templa argentum habent. 8. Liberi templa argentum, non libros, habent. 9. Liberi templis agricolae aurum dant. 10. Diligentia et constantia praemia habent. 11. Oppida muros et templa habent. 12. Horti et arva ab agricolis laudantur.

1. The master gives the attendants gold. 2. The master's gifts are not praised by the boys. 3. The boy and the girl love rewards. 4. The master gives the boy the reward of diligence. 5. The husbandmen are delighted by the walls and temples of the town. 6. The temples of the town have silver and gold. 7. The husbandman and the sailor give gifts to the temples of the towns. 8. The man by (his) gifts overcomes the sailor's constancy. 9. The sailors praise the husbandmen's cornfields. 10. The lord is terrified by the storm, and does not love water.

ADJECTIVIS

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

ADJECTIVES IN -ūs, -ā, -um.

Adjectives in Latin agree in Number and Case with the Nouns which they qualify :

Nom. Sing.	Bonus dominus.	The good lord.
Gen. Sing.	Boni domini.	Of the good lord.
Nom. Plur.	Boni domini.	The good lords.
Gen. Plur.	Bonorum domi- norum.	Of the good lords.

But besides agreeing in number and case, most Latin Adjectives also have three forms to suit the three kinds of Noun-terminations represented by (1) dominus, (2) femina, (3) regnum.

Nom. Sing. Bōnus dōmīnus, bōna fēmīna, bōnum regnum.

Gen. Sing. Bōnī dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōni regni.

Nom. Plur. Bōni dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōna regna.

Gen. Plur. Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum, bōnārum fēmīnārum, bōnōrum regnōrum.

These three forms of the Adjective are called its *Genders*.

(1) The form in -ūs is called the Masculine Gender, (2) the form in -ā the Feminine, (3) the form in -um the Neuter.

21 **RULE.**—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

<i>Singular.</i>			1.	<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-as	bōn-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs

			2.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Nigr-ūs	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-as	nigr-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

22 **GENDER OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.**—Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: *nauta*, a sailor, *aurīga*, a charioteer, and other words denoting the occupations of men, are Masculine.

23 **GENDER OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.**—(1) Nouns in -ūs and -ēr are Masculine, (2) Nouns in -um are Neuter.

Exceptions.—*Dōmus*, house, and *hūmus*, ground, are Feminine; *pēlāgus*, the sea, *vīrus*, poison, and *vulgus*, the common folk, are Neuter.¹

¹ The exceptional Masculine use of *vulgus* is not to be imitated.

For the other exceptions, see the Table of Genders, p. 226.

A few Nouns (together with all those which may denote either males or

SINGULAR NUMBER.

	Feminine.		Masculine.		Neuter.
	<i>A good woman.</i>		<i>A good lord.</i>		<i>A good gift.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ā femin-ā		Bōn-us dōmīn-us		Bōn-um dōn-um
Voc.	" -a " -a		" -ē " -ē		" -um " -um
Acc.	" -am " -am		" -um " -um		" -um " -um
Gen.	" -ae " -ae		" -ī " -ī		" -ī " -ī
Dat.	" -ae " -ae		" -o " -o		" -o " -o
Abl.	" -ā " -ā		" -o " -o		" -o " -o

PLURAL NUMBER.

	<i>Good women.</i>		<i>Good lords.</i>		<i>Good gifts.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ae femin-ae		Bōn-ī dōmīn-ī		Bōn-a dōn-a
Voc.	" -ae " -ae		" -ī " -ī		" -ā " -ā
Acc.	" -as " -as		" -os " -os		" -ā " -ā
Gen.	" -ārum " -ārum		" -ōrum " -ōrum		" -ōrum -ōrum
Dat.	" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs
Abl.	" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs

Hitherto the terminations of the Noun and Adjective have been the same. But this is not always the case, as may be seen from the following instances :

SINGULAR.

	<i>A great man.</i>		<i>A great charioteer (m).</i>		<i>A great sea (n).</i>
Nom.	Magn-us vir		Magn-us aurīg-ā		Magn-um pēlāg-us
Voc.	Magn-ō vir		Magn-ō aurīg-a		Magn-um pēlāg-us
Acc.	" -um vir -um		Magn-um aurīg-am		Magn-um pēlāg-us
Gen.	" -ī " -ī		Magn-ī aurīg-ae		" -ī " -ī
Dat.	" -o " -o		Magn-o aurīg-ae		" -o " -o
Abl.	" -o " -o		Magn-o aurīg-ā		" -o " -o

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Vir magnus a nautā strenuo laudatur.
2. Dona parva improbi pueri culpant.
3. Nautā impavidus pelagus non timet.
4. Pelagus vastum et procella magna nautas pavidos torrent.
5. Scribā strenuus docti magistri jussa non timet.
6. Aurigam probum pericula magna non terrent.
7. Nautae improbo regina dona splendida dat.
8. Nautarum proborum filii praemia magna habent.
9. Aurigae strenui patientiā nauta improbus superatur.
10. Feminam probam et nautam strenuum regina bona laudat.
11. Pericula, parve fili, viros justos non terrent.
12. Via aurigae strenuo a puellā monstratur.

females, e.g. pŕēta, poet, incōla, inhabitant) vary between the Masc. and Fem.; these are said to be of common Gender, and are indicated in the Vocabularies by c. But incōla, pŕēta, and the like, are so much more frequently Masc. than Fem., that they are marked m.

(The Adjective in Latin generally, but not always, follows its Noun.)

1. *The rigorous charioteer is not terrified by dangers.* 2. *The danger of the way, and the violence of the storm, do not terrify the fearless charioteers.* 3. *The learned master gives a long letter to the honest scribe.* 4. *The daughters of the dishonest clerk fear the commands of the good queen.* 5. *The sailor's daughter fears the vast sea.* 6. *The dangers of the long way overcome the constancy of the good charioteer.* 7. *The queen by splendid gifts overcomes the constancy of the worthy sailors.* 8. *The unworthy charioteers terrify with threats the sailor's daughter.* 9. *Storms, O fearful sailor, do not terrify fearless men.* 10. *The man points out the way with (his) right hand for the honest sailor.*

EXERCISE XIV.

Est, (he, she, it) is.

Sunt, (they) are.

After the Verb *est* or *sunt* the question *who?* or *what?* is answered by the NOMINATIVE.

Britain is an island.

Britannia est insula.

Wars are the causes of evils.

Bella sunt malorum causae.

- 24** RULE.—The Verb *to be* takes the same Case after it as before it.

Why are *insula* and *causae* Nom.?—Ans., Because the Verb *est* takes the same Case after it as before it.

The horses are great (horses).

Equi sunt magni (equi).

The woman is (a) good (woman).

Femina est bona (femina).

- 24a** From the last examples we see that an Adjective still agrees with its Noun in Number, Gender, and Case, even when separated from the Noun by the Verb *to be*.

1. *Britanniae incolae sunt nautae.* 2. *Nautae non sunt timidi.*
3. *Agri sunt lati.* 4. *Oppidum est magnum.* 5. *Puer est validus.* 6. *Pueri patientia magna est.* 7. *Aquila est alba.*
8. *Aquilarum alae sunt albae.* 9. *Oppida parva sunt.* 10. *Oppidorum templa sunt alta.* 11. *Dominus ab equis albis delectatur.* 12. *Femina proborum generorum filias amat.*

1. *The sailor is timid.* 2. *The walls of the town are high.* 3. *The field is broad.* 4. *The towns are not great.* 5. *The experience*

of the boy is small. 6. The wings of the eagle are great. 7. The walls of the temple are white. 8. The master has black horses and white goats. 9. The master's horses are black. 10. The eagle has white wings. 11. The timid sailor is terrified both by the unjust queen and by the vast sea.

EXERCISE XV.

ADJECTIVES IN -ĕr.¹

Like the Nouns in -er, so also the Adjectives in -er are declined (1) some like *puer*, (2) others like *māgister*.

The pupil will find it the best course to commit to memory the former class, as being the fewer.

- 25 1. Declined like *puer*: *asper*, *rough*, *liber*, *free* (whence *liberi*, *children*), *miser*, *wretched*, *prosper*, *prosperous*, *tēner*, *tender*.²

2. Declined like *māgister*: all Adjectives in -er not contained in the above list.

- 1 *Impigrum agricolam poeta piger timet.* 2. *Regina pulchra ab improbis incolis terretur.* 3. *Agricolae vafri tenerum puerum verbis falsis laudant.* 4. *Domini prosperi maeros capros habent.* 5. *Reginae liberis libros sacros pūctao dant.* 6. *Et nauta miser et auriga strenuus filios aegros habent.* 7. *Templorum sacrorum portis rubris et muris nigris viri delectantur.* 8. *Morbi agricolas miseros superant.* 9. *Agricolae vāfri filius parvao puellae caprum :nacrū dat.* 10. *Morbūm tetrūm nautae pavidi timent.*

1. *The beautiful woman is overcome by the foul disease.* 2. *The slothful sailors fear the active husbandman.* 3. *The cunning boys give a lean goat to the miserable sailor.* 4. *The wretched sons of the sick husbandman fear the foul disease.* 5. *The foul disease terrifies the wretched sailors.* 6. *The sick women praise the sacred books with foolish words.* 7. *The vigorous husbandmen overcome by (their) wisdom the foul diseases (vā).* 8. *The cunning lord gives lean goats to the sick women.*

¹ As final -er is always short, it will not be marked short for the future.

26 ² Besides these, there are (though not contained in the following Exercises), (1) *lācer*, *torn*, and (2) Adjectives derived from the Verbs *fer-o* and *ger-o*, *I bear*, viz. *frūgi-fer*, *fruit-bearing*; *corn-iger*, *horn-bearing*.

In the nom. sing. *prosperus* is more common than *prosper*.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

In the Third Declension some Nouns have a Stem (see Glossary, Appendix VIII.) ending in a consonant, *e.g.* *c* in *judic-is*, *judic-i*, of a judge, to a judge, or *m* in *hiem-is*, *hiem-i*, of winter, to winter. This class of Nouns is called the Consonant Branch.

In the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension the Nom. Sing. endings are numerous, but *-s* (sometimes disguised in the shape of *-x*, which represents *-gs*, and *-cs*) is the most common.

A.—MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	} [-s]	-ēs
Voc.		
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Abl.	-ē, rarely -ī	-ibus

I. Nouns in which the Stem ends in a guttural (throat) letter, *i.e.* *-c* hard, or *-g* :

Singular.			
Leader (m).	Judge (c). ¹	Law (f)	Citadel (f)
N.V. Dux (Duc-s)	Judex (Judic-s)	Lex (Leg-s)	Arx (Arc-s)
Acc. Dūc-em	Judīc-em	Lēg-em	Arc-em
Gen. Dūc-is	Judīc-is	Lēg-is	Arc-is
Dat. Dūc-ī	Judīc-ī	Lēg-ī	Arc-ī
Abl. Dūc-ē	Judīc-ē	Lēg-ē	Arc-ē
Plural.			
N.V. Dūc-ēs	Judīc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
Acc. Dūc-ēs	Judīc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
Gen. Dūc-um	Judīc-um	Lēg-um	Arc-ium
Dat. Dūc-ibus	Judīc-ibus	Lēg-ibus	Arc-ibus
Abl. Dūc-ibus	Judīc-ibus	Lēg-ibus	Arc-ibus

¹ The abbreviation *c.* means that *judex* is of common gender, being mostly masculine, but sometimes feminine.

II. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a dental (tooth) letter, *i.e.* -t or -d :

Singular.

<i>Soldier (m).</i>	<i>Foot (m).</i>	<i>Summer (f).</i>
N.V. Miles (Milet-s) ¹	Pās (Ped-s)	Æstās (Æstat-s)
Acc. Milit-em	Pēd-em	Æstāt-em
Gen. Milit-is	Pēd-is	Æstāt-is
Dat. Milit-i	Pēd-i	Æstāt-i
Abl. Milit-ē	Pēd-ē	Æstāt-ē

Plural.

N.V. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Acc. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Gen. Milit-um	Pēd-um	Æstāt-um
Dat. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus
Abl. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus

Nox, *f.* (for noct-s) Gen. noct-is, *night*, is declined like Æstās; but the Gen. Plur. (see Par. 40) is noct-ium.

- 27 RULE.—The Dative is used after Adjectives signifying *pleasing, displeasing, troublesome, easy, difficult*, and the like :

Laws are not troublesome to a just judge. Leges iudici justo non molestae sunt.

- 28 RULE.—Dignus and indignus (*worthy and unworthy*) govern the Ablative :

Impatience is unworthy of a leader. Impatientia ducē indigna est.

EXERCISE XVI.

Laed-īt, (*he*) *hurts*. Laed-unt, (*they*) *hurt*.
Laedit-ur, (*he*) *is (being) hurt*. Laedunt-ur, (*they*) *are (being) hurt*.

1. Leges justae regibus bonis non sunt molestae. 2. Bella militibus iucunda sunt. 3. Militum ignavia ducibus claris ingrata

- 29 ¹ The o of the true Stem (milēt-) is changed into -i in all except the Nom. and Voc. Cases. Similarly, the true Stem of virgo (virgon-) is changed into virgin-. But sometimes, as in iudex above, the true Stem (iudic-) is lost in the Nom. but preserved in the other Cases.

est. 4. Lapides militum miseriorum pedes lacerant. 5. Con-
stitis validi constantia fossas : puer debetatur. 6. Equites
peditum acutis gladiis torrent. 7. Rege levis huius malis
indignae sunt. 8. Indigna verba iniusta dominis ju-
ncta sunt. 9. Noctes obscuras pueri pravi timent.
10. Domini arx ab agricolâ laudatur. 11. Actatis memoria
multibus grata est. 12. Aurigae per siniter spiriti nauta
laeditur. 13. Agriculae equi validi (21a) sunt.

1. *The constancy of the strong soldiers is pleasing to the good king.*
2. *Slothfulness is unworthy of a great leader.*
3. *The lev landmen point out the citadel of the lord to (their) companions.*
4. *A dark night terrifies the timid boy.*
5. *The memory of the pleasant summer is agreeable to the miserable husbandmen.*
6. *The anger of the horsemen is displeasing to the foot-soldiers.*
7. *The companions of the horse-soldier hurt the good husbandman with many stones.*
8. *Good laws are worthy of a just king.*
9. *The feet of the weary companions are hurt by the sharp stones.*
10. *The queen gives just laws to the renowned leader and to the good judges.*

III. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a labial (lip)
letter, i.e. -m, -p, -b :

Singular.

<i>Chief (m.).</i>	<i>Item (f.).</i>	<i>Winter (f.).</i>
N. Prīncip-s (Prīncip-s)	Trāb-s	Hiēm(p)-s ¹
Acc. Prīncip-em	Trāb-em	Hiēm-em
Gen. Prīncip-is	Trāb-is	Hiēm-is
Dat. Prīncip-i	Trāb-i	Hiēm-i
Abl. Prīncip-ē	Trāb-ē	Hiēm-ē

Plural.

N. Prīncip-ēs	Trāb-ēs	Hiēm-ēs
Acc. Prīncip-ēs	Trāb-ēs	Hiēm-ēs
Gen. Prīncip-um	Trāb-um	Hiēm-um
Dat. Prīncip-ibus	Trāb-ibus	Hiēm-ibus
Abl. Prīncip-ibus	Trāb-ibus	Hiēm-ibus

IV. Nouns in which the stem ends with (1) a nasal
(nose) letter, i.e. -n, or (2) -u :

¹ P is inserted for euphony, between m and s in the Nominative of
this word, so that the right spelling is hiēmps.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
<i>Lion (m.).</i>	<i>Maiden (f.).</i>	<i>Crane (c.).</i>
N.V. Leo (Leō-n)	Virgo (Virgō-n) ¹	Gru-s
Acc. Leon-em	Virgin-em	Grū-em
Gen. Leōn-is	Virgin-is	Grū-is
Dat. Leōn-i	Virgin-i	Grū-i
Abl. Leōn-ē	Virgin-ē	Grū-ē
	<i>Plural.</i>	
N.V. Leōn-ēs	Virgin-ēs	Grū-ēs
Acc. Leon-ēs	Virgin-ēs	Grū-ēs
Gen. Leōn-um	Virgin-um	Grū-um
Dat. Leōn-ibus	Virgin-ibus	Grū-ibus
Abl. Leōn-ibus	Virgin-ibus	Grū-ibus

EXERCISE XVII.

30 RULE.—The question *When?* or *Within what time?* is answered by the Ablative, as *hiēme*, in winter, *nocte*, by night.

31 RULE.—The question *How long?* or *During what time?* is answered by the Accusative, as *multos annos*, for, or during, many years.

Vivit, (he) lives.

.. Vivunt, (they) live.

1. Multi homines aestatem hieme laudant. 2. Virgines aestate hiemem, hieme aestatem laudant. 3. Leones multas aestates et multas hiemes vivunt. 4. Principibus pavidisq[ue] molestus est. 5. Nautae nocte magnam gruum multitudinem puellae monstrant. 6. Virgines tenerae ab improbis principum filiis minis terrentur. 7. Papiliones paucas horas, elephantem multos annos vivunt.² 8. Leoni fero equitis cornes caprum macrum dat. 9. Templum longas trabes, portas magnas, habet.³ 10. Tomphi trabs longitudinem miram habet. 11. Comites pavidum principe indigni sunt. 12. Multa poma aestate terra habet.

1. The sailor praises land in winter, (but) blames (it) in summer.
2. For many hours the lion devours the tender goats.
3. The sailor by night points out a multitude of cranes to the maiden.
4. The daughters of the chief fear the savage lion.
5. A

¹ Virgo and hōmo originally kept the o throughout, and hōmōnes, for hōmīnes, is actually preserved, though, of course, not to be used.

² Repeat vivunt after pāpiliōnēs, "paucas horas (vivunt)."

³ In enumeration, and in other sentences, et, or some other conjunction, is often omitted where the English must insert and, but, &c.

butterfly does not live for many hours. 6. Unjust words are unworthy of a chief. 7. By the companions of the beautiful maidens the lion is frightened with a sword. 8. The winter is troublesome to the maidens and not agreeable to the chief. 9. The queen gives praise to chiefs and gold to poets. 10. In the night the lion devours a multitude of tender goats.

V. Nouns in which the Stem ends with (1) a liquid, *i.e.* -l, -r, or (2) a sibilant, *i.e.* -s : ¹

Singular.

Consul (m.).	Love (m.).	Tree (f.).	Flower (m.).
N.V. Consul	Ämor ²	Arbor(-ös) ²	Flös ¹
Acc. Consül-em	Ämör-em	Arbör-em	Flör-em
Gen. Consül-is	Ämör-is	Arbör-is	Flör-is
Dat. Consül-i	Ämör-i	Arbör-i	Flör-i
Abl. Consül-ě	Ämör-ě	Arbör-ě	Flör-ě

Plural.

N.V. Consül-ēs	Ämör-ēs	Arbör-ēs	Flör-ēs
Acc. Consül-ēs	Ämör-ēs	Arbör-ēs	Flör-ēs
Gen. Consül-um	Ämör-um	Arbör-um	Flör-um
Dat. Consül-ibus	Ämör-ibus	Arbör-ibus	Flör-ibus
Abl. Consül-ibus	Ämör-ibus	Arbör-ibus	Flör-ibus

Cinīs c., makes cīnēr-em, cīnēr-is, cīnēr-i, &c.

33 Note that anser differs from päter, as pūer from mūgister; the former retains, the latter rejects, in the other Cases, the -e of the Nom.

Singular.

Goose (m.).	Father (m.).	Mother (f.).
N.V. Anser	Päter (Päter-)	Mäter (Mäter-)
Acc. Ansēr-em	Patr-em	Matr-em
Gen. Ansēr-is	Patr-is	Matr-is
Dat. Ansēr-i	Patr-i	Matr-i
Abl. Ansēr-ě	Patr-ě	Matr-ě

¹ (1) Many sibilant stems retain -s in the Nom. Sing., but change it to -r in the other cases: flös, Gen. flör-is (for flös-is), rös, Gen. rör-is (for rös-is) of dew (2) Others have two forms of the Nom.: labös or labor, Gen. labör-is, of labour; and so arbös or arbor, Gen. arbör-is, of a tree.

² Final -or is short, and therefore its quantity is not marked in ämor, arbor, &c.

Plural.

<i>N.V.</i> Ansēr-ēs	<i>Patr-ēs</i>	<i>Matr-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Ansēr-ēs	<i>Patr-ēs</i>	<i>Matr-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Ansēr-um	<i>Patr-um</i>	<i>Matr-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Ansēr-ibus	<i>Patr-ibus</i>	<i>Matr-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Ansēr-ibus	<i>Patr-ibus</i>	<i>Matr-ibus</i> ¹

EXERCISE XVIII.

- 34** RULE.—An Adjective is sometimes used (1) in the Masculine to agree with *men* understood; (2) in the Neuter to agree with *thing* or *things* understood.

Many (men) praise the king. Multi regem laudant.

The father gives (his) son many (things). Pater filio multa dat.

To err is (a) dangerous (thing). Errare est periculōsum.²

Sūpērā-re, to overcome. Culpā-re, to blame.

Laudā-re, to praise. Erat, (he) was, erant, (they) were.

- 35** N.B.—The Adj. is often separated from its Noun by a Gen. belonging to the Noun, *e.g.*, *the consul's clear voice*, clāra consulis vox; and sometimes by other words: flōribus sō pulchris dēlectat, *he delights himself with beautiful flowers.*

1. Multi regem laudant neque reginam culpant.
2. Jucundum est laudāre, culpari injucundum (est).
3. Rex pauca filio dat, filiae multa (dat).
4. Puer anserem timet, patrem et matrem non timet.
5. Sepulcrum pulchrum multorum amicorum cineres habet.
6. Hiemps frigida arbores magnas et parvos flores laedit.
7. Milites magno clamore claram consulis vocem superant.
8. Pulchri florum colores virginum oculis grati sunt.
9. Anserem stultum multa terrent.
10. Femina a virgine amore magno amatur.
11. Militum clamor timoris causa est agricolis.³
12. Consulum jussa timoris causae erant militibus.
13. Timidos nocte (30) multa terrent.

- 36** ¹ The pupil should note that in the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension, he can form the cases of any Noun without committing them to memory, if he remembers the Nom. and Gen. Singular.

All the other cases can be formed by striking off the -is from the Gen., *e.g.* anser-, patr-, and adding -em, -i, -ē, -es, -um, -ibus. See p. 18.

36a ² Here, part of a Verb is treated as a Noun, and is the Subject of est. See further, Exercise XXXV.

³ Agricōlis may be parsed as the "Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage." See par. 7.

1. To overcome is pleasant for soldiers. 2. The consul gives many things¹ to the rigorous soldier. 3. Many praise the king, few blame (him). 4. A goose fears many-things, (and) terrifies few-men.² 5. The companions of the soldiers overpower the king's voice by (their) clamour. 6. The colour of the glaucus is agreeable to the eyes of the beautiful maidens. 7. The broad semichires have the ashes of many soldiers. 8. The flower by (its) colour and pleasant odour delights the maidens. 9. The cold winters were troublesome to the timid sons of the husbandmen. 10. To praise the bad is unpleasant and-not just. 11. For-a-few hours (31) the soldiers overcome the sailors.

B.—NEUTER NOUNS OF THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

Singular.

	Head (n.).	Name (n.).	Right or Law (n.).	Work (n.).
N.F. Acc.	Cāpit	Nōmen	Jūs	Ōpus
Gen.	Cāpit-is	Nōmīn-is	Jūr-is	Ōpēr-is
Dat.	Cāpit-i	Nōmīn-i	Jūr-i	Ōpēr-i
Abl.	Cāpit-ē	Nōmīn-ē	Jūr-ē	Ōpēr-ē

Plural

N.F. Acc.	Cāpit-ā	Nōmīn-ā	Jūr-ā	Ōpēr-ā
Gen.	Cāpit-um	Nōmīn-um	Jūr-um	Ōpēr-um
Dat.	Cāpit-ibus	Nōmīn-ibus	Jūr-ibus	Ōpēr-ibus
Abl.	Cāpit-ibus	Nōmīn-ibus	Jūr-ibus	Ōpēr-ibus

Note also corpus, corpōr-is, corpōr-i, &c., a body.

EXERCISE XIX.

37 When two Nouns of kindred meaning are connected together in one phrase, instead of et between the two Nouns, -quē is added as an extra syllable to the latter of the two Nouns: *flowers and trees*, flōres arbōresquē.

1. Fulmen arbores fruticesque et corpora hominum laedit. 2. Carmina sunt poetarum opera. 3. Jura belli agricolae timent. 4. Pueri nomen pulchrum erat. 5. Verbera judiciis consulibusque indigna sunt. 6. Equitum peditumque multitudinem vastam mercatores jure² timent. 7. Militum opera oppidorum incolis ingrata erant. 8. Capri capita parva,

¹ The words *things* and *men* (here and in other passages where they are used with *many* or *few*) should not be translated. See the Rule above.

² Jure is the Abl. used as an Adverb, *by right*, i.e. *rightly, naturally*.

corpora maera, pedes longos habent. 9. Multis hominibus inultorum scelerum causa est aurum.¹ 10. Sidera nautis hiemo grata erant. 11. Injusti iudicis verba bona (erant), facta mala erant. 12. Corpori cibum, doctrinam menti Deus dat. 13. Miles ab injusto iudice culpa (8) liberatur.

- *1. *The leader's head (was) small, his body was lean. 2. The multitude of the merchants fears the horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers. 3. The works of soldiers are displeasing to husbandmen. 4. Flowers and shrubs are agreeable to the inhabitants of towns. 5. Boys give food and sleep (use -quē) to (their) bodies, learning to (their) minds. 6. The names of the boys and girls are beautiful. 7. Unjust laws are unworthy of kings and queens. 8. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers are not terrified by the crimes of (their) leaders. 9. The poet's work delights the queen with (its) beautiful name. 10. It was (a) renowned (thing) to overcome a multitude of horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers in-war (Abl. of instr.)*

THIRD DECLENSION.

2.—NOUNS WHOSE STEM ENDS IN *i*.

- 39 These Nouns differ from the Consonant Branch in this respect, that they make the Gen. Plur. in *-ium*; whereas, in the Consonant Branch, the Gen. Plur. mostly ends in *-um*.² But the Stem *i* (being very variable, often dropped, and often changed into *e*.) frequently disappears.

¹ What case is *hominibus*, and why? See Par 7.

² For the Genders of Nouns of the Third Declension see page 226; and for Exercises on the Exceptions see Exercises LXXXIV to XCII.

- 40 ³ The more advanced pupil will find that several Nouns of the Consonant Branch take *-ium* in the Gen. Pl. The following rules will be found useful:—

1. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is *-i* (as *dūc-is*), take *-um* (*dūc-um*).

Examples: *pātr-um*, *sēn-um*, *pēd-um*, *grēg-um*, *āp-um*, &c.

2. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is *-ie* (as *ārc-is*) take *-ium*.

Examples: *falc-ium*, *urb-ium*, *art-ium*, *lit-ium*, *font-ium*, *pont-ium*, *mont-ium*, *noct-ium*, &c.

Exceptions are *vōc-um*, *lēg-um*, *rēg-um*, *jūr-um*, and a few others.

B.—1. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Singular.

	<i>Ship (f.).</i>	<i>Shower (m.).</i>	<i>Cloud (f.).</i>
N. V.	Nāv-īs	Imber (Imbri-)	Nūb-ēs (Nubi-)
Acc.	Nāv-em	Imbr-em	Nūb-em
Gen.	Nāv-īs	Imbr-īs	Nūb-īs
Dat.	Nāv-i	Imbr-i	Nūb-i
Abl.	Nāv-i or -ē	Imbr-i (-ē) ¹	Nūb-ē

Plural.

N. V.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Acc.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Gen.	Nāv-ium	Imbr-ium	Nūb-ium
Dat.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus
Abl.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus

2.—NEUTER NOUNS.

Singular.

	<i>Sea (n.).</i>	<i>Animal (n.).</i>	<i>Spur (n.).</i>	<i>Bone (n.).</i>
N. V.	Mār-ē	Ānimāl	Calcār	Ōs ²
Acc.	Mār-ē	Ānimāl	Calcār	Ōs ²
Gen.	Mār-is	Ānimāl-is	Calcār-is	Oss-īs
Dat.	Mār-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-i
Abl.	Mār-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-ē

Plural.

N. V.	Mār-ā	Ānimāl-ia	Calcār-ia	Oss-ā
Acc.	Mār-ā	Ānimāl-ia	Calcār-ia	Oss-ā
Gen.	Mār-um	Ānimāl-ium	Calcār-ium	Oss-ium
Dat.	Mār-bus	Ānimāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus
Abl.	Mār-bus	Ānimāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus

41 Nēque or nēc, when repeated, means *neither . . . nor*.

Consūm-it, (*he*) *consumes*.

Consūm-unt, (*they*) *consume*.

EXERCISE XX.

1. Nautae validi neque imbres crebros neque maria saeva timent.

2. Imbri longo et fulmine crebro pastores terrentur. 3. Iominum sapientia et animalium robur et maris furor superantur. 4. Navem rapidam mare avidum vorat. 5. Naves

42 ¹ A few Nouns in -is take only -im in the Acc., and only -i in the Abl.: sītis, *thirst*; tussis, *cough*; vīs, *violence*; and names of towns and rivers, e.g., Tibēris, *the Tiber*. The following commonly take -im. febris, *fever*; pelvis, *basin*; pappis, *poop*; restis, *rope*; turris, *tower*; scēuris, *axe*.

43 Ignis makes Abl. in -i, except in poetry: and Abl. -i is always found in those Nouns that always make Acc. -im.

² Distinguish this word from ōs, ōris, *n., mouth, or countenance*. Ānimāl, calcār, and almost all other Neuters with Abl. in -i, are derived from Adjectives.

validas maris furor et tempestatis violentia superant. 6. Duces aurea calcaria et decora inagna equitibus dant. 7. Hostium urbem dux igni ferroque consumit. 8. Nauta navi valida pelagi furorem superat. 9. Britannorum naves multis urbibus multisque gentibus notae sunt. 10. Ducum certamina prosperis civitatibus saepe causa exitii sunt. 11. Equus ignavus calcar tinct. 12. Multa genera et animalium et lapidum mare habet. 13. Morbus capros totam aetatem (31) consumit.

1. Strong horses often fear the spur. 2. The soldiers consume the cities with fire and sword. 3. Repeated lightning and a great storm terrify the merchants. 4. The animals of the sea are many and wonderful. 5. Men by (their) wisdom overcome the threats of seas and the madness of savage animals. 6. Both to leaders and to states strife is often the cause of destruction. 7. Golden spurs give great honour to horse-soldiers. 8. The strength of the ships overcomes both the madness of the sea and the violence of the storms. 9. The bones of small animals are small. 10. The tempest terrifies the citizens with a great cloud. 11. By wisdom and experience men are freed from the violence of savage animals. 12. He lives a few hours.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

- 44 These are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension; except that in almost all of them the Abl. Sing. is -i and not -e; and the Gen. Plur. -ium and not -um.

A.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -i, and Gen. Plur. in -ium.

1.—ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

			Ācer, sharp.			
			Singular.		Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N. V.	Ācer	ācr-īs	ācr-ē		Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
Acc.	Ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē		Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
Gen.	Ācr-īs	ācr-īs	ācr-īs		Ācr-ium	ācr-ium
Dat.	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i		Ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
Abl.	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i		Ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus ¹

- 45 ¹ Other similar Adjectives are sālūb-er, healthy, ālāc-er, brisk, ēquest-er, equestrian. In the Nom. Masc. Sing., the forms ācr-is, sālūb-is, ālāc-is &c. are sometimes used, but more often in poetry than in prose. Ōl-er retains the ē in the Fem. cōlōr-is and in the Neut. cōlōr-e.

2.—ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Tristis, *sad*.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V. Trist-īs	trist-ě	Trist-ēs	trist-īā
Acc. Trist-em	trist-ě	Trist-ēs	trist-īā
Gen. Trist-īs	trist-īs	Trist-ium	trist-ium
Dat. Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ibus	trist-ibus
Abl. Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ibus	trist-ibus

3.—ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

Felix, *happy*.

Singular.		Plural.	
M., F., and N.		M. and F.	N.
N.V. Fēlix		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
Acc. Fēlic-em		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
Gen. Fēlic-is		Fēlic-ium	fēlic-ium
Dat. Fēlic-ī		Fēlic-ibus	fēlic-ibus
Abl. Fēlic-ī		Fēlic-ibus	fēlic-ibus

46 *B.*—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -ě, and Gen. Plur. in -um.

These are mostly Comparatives ending in -ior (*m. and f.*), -ius (*n.*): trist-ior, *sadder*, fēlic-ior, *happier*.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V. Tristiōr	tristiūs	Tristiōr-ēs	tristiōr-ā
Acc. Tristiōr-em	tristiūs	Tristiōr-ēs	tristiōr-ā
Gen. Tristiōr-īs	tristiōr-īs	Tristiōr-um	tristiōr-um
Dat. Tristiōr-ī	tristiōr-ī	Tristiōr-ibus	tristiōr-ibus
Abl. Tristiōr-ě	tristiōr-ě	Tristiōr-ibus	tristiōr-ibus

47 Besides Comparatives, a few other words make the Abl. Sing. in -ě and the Gen. Plur. in -um. Most of them are capable of being used as Nouns: divēs, (*a*) *rich* (*man*), supplex, *a suppliant*, vīgīl, *a watchman*, princeps *a chief*, pauper, *a poor man*, superstēs, *a survivor*.¹48 ¹ A useful Rule is given (*Public School Grammar*) that:—
i. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. short, make -um in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* supplex, Gen. Sing. supplicis, Gen. Pl. supplicum.
ii. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. long, make -ium in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* fēlix, Gen. Sing. fēlicis, Gen. Pl. fēlicium.

1.—Cēlēr ēquus, *the swift horse.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Cēlēr ēqu-us		Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
<i>Voc.</i>	Cēlēr ēqu-e		Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	Cēlēr-em ēqu-um		Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	Cēlēr-īs ēqu-ī		Cēlēr-ium ēqu-ōrum ¹
<i>Dat.</i>	Cēlēr-ī ēqu-o		Cēlēr-ibus ēqu-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Cēlēr-ī ēqu-o		Cēlēr-ibus ēqu-īs

2.—Mēliūs dōnum, *the better gift.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V. Acc.</i>	Mēliūs dōn-um		Mēlior-ā dōn-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Mēlior-īs dōn-ī		Mēlior-um dōn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Mēlior-ī dōn-o		Mēlior-ibus dōn-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Mēlior-ē dōn-o		Mēlior-ibus dōn-īs

3.—Fēlix jūdex, *a happy judge.*

49 Note the two points of difference in the Noun and Adjective (1) Noun -ē, -um; Adj. -ī, -ium:

(1) Fēlic-ī jūdīc-ē, *by* (13a), *with*, or *from* the happy judge.

(2) Fēlic-ium jūdīc-um, *of* happy judges.

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Mater bona moliore filio digna est. 2. Celerium equorum terga ab aurigis verberibus laeduntur. 3. Patres lacti meliora dona filiis dant. 4. Poeta sapiens regem insignem tristiore carmine delectat. 5. Rex insignis infeliei morte indignus est. 6. Agricolarum vita salubris est; scribae diligentis labor non est saluber. 7. Equus acer certamen equestre amat. 8. Mercatorum divitum vitam miles fortis non amat. 9. Ira acri ducum tristium cives timidi terrentur. 10. Dulce carmen poeta insigni dignum est. 11. Puer tristis donum melius amat. 12. Principes justī fortibus militibus agros feraces dant. 13. Regina prudenti animo et audacibus consiliis seditionem superat. 14. Eques comitem culpā (8) liberat.

1. *The joyful father gives a better gift to (his) son.* 2. *The life of a soldier is not agreeable to the son of the rich merchant.*

¹ The Gen. Pl. Cēlēr-um is only used when the word is used as a Noun, to signify the ancient body-guard in Rome; just as we speak of the "Blues," the "Scots Greys."

3. By (his) sweet poem the good poet delights the great king.
 4. A keen contest is pleasant to strong soldiers. 5. The labours of the unhappy judges were displeasing to the just king.
 6. The keen anger of the citizens terrifies the companions of the sad leaders. 7. The diligent husbandman is worthy of a fruitful field. 8. The just judges give rewards to the chariot-cers of the swift horses. 9. The healthy life of the happy sailors was pleasing to the brave boy. 10. The good king is delighted by the songs of the sad poets and (17) by the brave boy.¹ 11. The master frees the boys from blame.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION WITH
 NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Saevus hostis, a cruel enemy.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Saevus hostis	Saevi hostēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Saevē hostis	Saevi hostēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Saeuum hostem	Saevos hostēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Saevi hostis	Saevōrum hostium
<i>Dat.</i>	Saevo hosti	Saevīs hostibūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Saevo hostē	Saevīs hostibūs

Almā māter, loving mother.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Almā māter	Almae matrēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Almam matrem	Almās matrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Almae matris	Almarum matrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Almae matri	Almīs matribūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Almā matrē	Almīs matribūs

Magnum opus, a great work.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V. Acc.</i>	Magnum opūs	Magnā opēra
<i>Gen.</i>	Magnī opēris	Magnōrum opērum
<i>Dat.</i>	Magno opērī	Magnīs opēribūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Magno opērē	Magnīs opēribūs

EXERCISE XXII.

Quis? What (man)? Who (Nom.)? Quem? What (man)? Whom (Acc.)? Quid? What (thing)? What (Nom. and Acc.)?

1. Bonorum operum memoria forti viro dulcis erat. 2. Virgines pulchrae ducis iracundi minas timent. 3. Milites primae

¹ Numbers bracketed thus (17) in the Exercises refer to the Paragraphs indicated by the figures in the margin.

cohortis hostibus iracundis terga dant.¹ 4. Quis vinum vetus pnero, quis seni verbera dat? 5. Benigno patri acris filiorum ira molesta erant. 6. Gladios breves, (32) longas hastas milites habent. 7. Mater alma filiarum tristium poenitentiam laudat. 8. Hostium saevorum feritas atrox cives timidos terret. 9. Senes infirmi regum minis atrocibus terrentur. 10. Tempestas atris nubibus et crebro fulmine virgines teneras terret. 11. Quis non virtutem amat? Quem non honorum operum memoria delectat? 12. Senex probus inhonesta morte et turpi fama indignus est.

1. *Brave men fear a dishonourable reputation.* 2. *A disgraceful death terrifies strong soldiers.* 3. *Who loves vice? Who is not delighted by (trans. Whom delights not) the memory of virtue?* 4. *Who (gives) swords to weak old-men? who gives wine to boys?* 5. *The enemy (use pl.), by (their) savagences and cruel threats, terrify the timid hostages.* 6. *The tender maidens fear the dark-black clouds and the frequent lightning.* 7. *The memory of a good work is pleasing to all (men).* 8. *The citizens flee before the strong cohort (trans. give their backs to the strong cohort).* 9. *The loving mothers are delighted by the brave deeds of the bold boys.* 10. *The sad woman is worthy of a better death.* 11. *(He) is-terrified in the night.*

THE FOURTH OR:-II DECLENSION.

	Singular.		
	<i>Step (m.).</i>	<i>Hand (f.).</i>	<i>Knee (n.).</i>
N. V.	Grād-ūs	Mān-ūs	Gēn-ū
Acc.	Grād-um	Mān-um	Gēn-ū
Gen.	Grād-ūs	Mān-ūs	Gēn-ūs
Dat.	Grād-ūi	Mān-ūi	Gēn-ūi
Abl.	Grād-ū	Mān-ū	Gēn-ū
Plural.			
N. V.	Grād-ūs	Mān-ūs	Gēn-ūā
Acc.	Grād-ūs	Mān-ūs	Gēn-ūā
Gen.	Grād-ūum	Mān-ūum	Gēn-ūum
Dat.	Grād-ibus	Mān-ibus	Gēn-ibus
Abl.	Grād-ibus	Mān-ibus	Gēn-ibus

1. The Dat. Sing. in -ūi is sometimes contracted into -ū.

¹ "To give backs to an enemy" means "to flee from an enemy."

- 52 2. Some names of trees, e.g. *pīnus*, *pine-tree*, vary between the 2nd and 4th Decl. in Gen. and Abl. Singular, and in Nom. and Acc. Plural.
- 53 3. The Dat. Plur. is formed in *-ūbus* (not *-ibus*) by *arcus*, m., *bow*, *artus*, m., *limb*, and *partus*, m., *birth*, so as not to be confounded with the Dat. Plur. of *arx*, f., *citadel*, *ars*, f., *art*, and *pars*, f., *part*. The Dat. in *-ūbus* is also formed by *ācus*, f., *needle*, *portus*, m., *harbour*, and *trib-us*, f., *tribe*. (See also Par. 311.)
- 54 All nouns of the Fourth Declension that have nom. *-us*, are masculine, except the names of trees, and five others (see Appendix V. p. 226); those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXERCISE XXIII.

- 55 Carefully distinguish the different constructions of the Preposition *in*:

In (foll. by Abl.) *in*: *In* (foll. by Acc.) *into, to, towards*:

(*My*) *father is in the garden.*

Pāter in horto est.

The leader leads the soldiers into the city.

Dux milites in urbem ducit.

1. *Pinus altae fructum non habent; glandes sunt quercuum fructus.* 2. *Hostes magnam copiam arcuum et sagittarum comparant.* 3. *Imbres quercui dant aquam.* 4. *Scythae arcu dux vulneratur.* 5. *Equi albi sinistram genu durum est.* 6. *Acus longa digitum mulieris vulnerat.* 7. *Naves longae in tuto portu ventos secundos expectant.* 8. *Naves longas in portus diversos tempestas agit.* 9. *Nautae, in portu pelagus, in polago portum laudant.* 10. *Auditus visusque utilitatem quis non intelligit?* 11. *Romanae plebis tribubus frumentum a Caesare datur.* 12. *Hiemis gelu myrto perniciosum erat; pinui et quercui non erat (perniciosum).* 13. *Multa (34) totam noctem (31) timet (16a).*

1. *The Scythian overcomes (his) enemy with (his) strong bow.*
 2. *The diligent women have sharp needles.* 3. *Adverse winds drive the ships into safe harbours.* 4. *The frost of winter is not destructive to pines.* 5. *The ships of-war are awaiting favourable winds in the safe harbour.* 6. *Stags by their running, foxes by (their) subtlety, overcome the hunter.* 7. *The branches of the tall oaks have many acorns.* 8. *By*

hearing and by sight men avoid destructive (things), (and) obtain useful (things). 9. The stag (has) long horns, the bull has short (horns). 10. The bull with his left horn wounds the shepherd. 11. He was sick for-the-whole winter (31).

THE FIFTH OR -Ē DECLENSION.

Day (m.).		Thing (f.).	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. Dī-ēs	Dī-ēs	R-ēs ¹	R-ēs
Acc. Dī-em	Dī-ēs	R-em	R-ēs
Gen. Dī-ei	Dī-ērum	R-ei ²	R-ērum
Dat. Dī-ei	Dī-ēbus	R-ei	R-ēbus
Abl. Dī-ē	Dī-ēbus	R-ē	R-ēbus

56 In the Gen. and Dat., final -ei is sometimes contracted into -ē; diē, fidē.

57 All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except diēs, day, and mēridiēs, midday, which are Masculine.³

EXERCISE XXIV.

Āg-it, (he) drives, or leads. Āg-itur, (he) is (being) driven.

1. Agricola spē fructuum in labore agit. 2. Acies densa ab hostibus in fugam agitur. 3. Magna pars exercitus in planitiē erat. 4. Tanta vitiā tam pulchra facie indigna sunt. 5. Memoria pulchrae faciēi hominibus jucunda est. 6. Mora spei inimica est. 7. Rex justus melioribus rebus dignus est. 8. Rebus adversis vir fortis in dolorem agitur. 9. Exercitus omnis in spem novam a forti duce agitur. 10. In Britannia apricorum dierum numerus non magnus est. 11. Fluminis rapidi cursus interdum glacie superatur. 12. Rerum adversarum memoria in rebus secundis interdum jucunda est.

1. In summer the hours of the day are many, in winter (the hours) of the night (30). 2. There-were many horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers (use -quē) in the line of the enemy. 3. The light of mid-day is (being) overcome by a dark-black cloud. 4. The

¹ This Noun is printed thus (as also in the *Public School Grammar*) to exhibit the Case Terminations more clearly. But the true Stem of rēs is not r- but re-. See p. 239, 'Stem.'

² The quantity of r-ei varies.

³ Diēs should not be used by the beginner in the Feminine, except poetically; to signify, not a literal day, but a season, e.g. *The evil day has come*, *Atra dies venit*.

Diēs and rēs are the only Nouns in the Fifth Declension that are fully declined; and all (but nine) have no Plural.

long line of the enemy (trans. enemies) is being overcome by the fearless soldiers. 5. The memory of prosperity is sometimes unpleasing to the wretched. 6. The heat of the sun was destructive to the thin ice. 7. The memory of joyful days was pleasing to the just judge. 8. Great is the utility of hope. 9. The hostage is being driven into the citadel by the bold leader. 10. The queen shows (her) grief by (her) sad face.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I.—REGULAR.

58 1. The Comparative Degree, if regular, is formed from the Gen. Sing. by taking away -i, (alt-i, alt-) or -is (ferac-is, ferac-), and adding -ior: alt-ior, *higher*, ferac-ior, *more fruitful*.

59 2. The Superlative Degree is formed by taking away -i or -is and adding -issimus: alt-issimus, fērac-issimus.

Gen. Sing.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Trist-īs,	trist-ior, <i>sadder</i> ,	trist-issimūs, <i>saddest</i> .
Rēcēnt-īs,	rēcēnt-ior, <i>more recent</i> ,	rēcēnt-issimūs, <i>most recent</i> .

II.—IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.

1. -līmus.

60 1. Six Adj. in -īlis, form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -līmus instead of -issimus.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Făcīl-īs, <i>easy</i>	facīl-ior	facīl-līmus
Difficīl-īs, <i>difficult</i>	difficīl-ior	difficīl-līmus
Sīmīl-īs, <i>like</i>	sīmīl-ior	sīmīl-līmus
Dissīmīl-īs, <i>unlike</i>	dissīmīl-ior	dissīmīl-līmus
Grăcīl-īs, <i>thin</i>	grăcīl-ior	grăcīl-līmus
Hūmīl-īs, <i>low</i>	hūmīl-ior	hūmīl-līmus

The rest, fertīl-īs, ūtīl-īs &c., have either no Superlative or -issimus; fertīl-issimus, ūtīl-issimus, &c.

2. -rīmus.

- 61 2. All Adj. ending in -er form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -rīmus to the Nominative :

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
Nom.	Gen.		
Liber, liber-i, free		libēr-ior	liber-rīmus
Celer, celer-is, swift		cēlēr-ior	cēler-rīmus
Pulcher, pulchr-i, beautiful		pulchr-ior	pulcher-rīmus
Acet, acet-is, sharp		acet-ior	ācer-rīmus

The Adjective vētūs, Gen. vētēr-is, *old*, has Comp. vētiast-ior, Superl. veter-rīmus.¹

Quam, than.

- 62 RULE.—Nouns coupled by quam (*than*) and a Comparative Adj. or Adv., are in the same case :

1. Nom. { Œqui utiliores sunt quam capri (sunt).
Horses are more useful than goats (are).
2. Gen. { Pudor flagitii, magis quam erroris, hominem complet.
Shame for the crime, rather than for the error, possesses the man : lit. of the crime, of the error.
3. Dat. { Puero dat meliorem dona quam puellae (dat).
To the boy he gives better gifts than (he gives) to the girl.
4. Acc. { Malus folia habet densiora quam mala (habet).²
The apple-tree has leaves thicker than (it has) apples.

- 63 RULE.—When the first Noun is in the Nominative or Accusative, the second Noun is generally put in the Ablative without quam :

Nothing is more lovable than virtue. Nihil est virtute amabilius.

¹ The Comparative vētērior is rare and archaic.

² Distinguish between mālā, apples, and mālā, evils.

N.B. Superlatives and Comparatives have each more meanings than one :

- 64 I. Tard-issimus means (1) *slowest*, (2) *very slow*.
 65 II. Tard-ior means (1) *slower*, (2) *rather*, or *somewhat*, *slow*, or (3) *too slow*.

EXERCISE XXV.

- 66 RULE.—Similis, *like*, takes a (1) Gen. or (2) Dat. :¹—

(1) *The boys are like (i.e., the likenesses of) (their) father.* Pueri patris similes sunt.

(2) *All things were more like (to) a camp than (to) a city.* Omnia castris quam urbi similia erant.

- 67 Quidem, *on the one hand; indeed*. Autem, *on the other hand; however; but*. Neither of these words can stand first in a clause. They must be placed after some emphatic word. See Sentences 9 below.

1. Vallis humilior erat campo. 2. Nihil est virtute pulchrius, nihil amicitia dulcius. 3. Puer omnibus praeceptoris discipulis procerior erat. 4. Latori vir melius donum quam sorori dat. 5. Amor patrio magis quam filiorum duces acerrimum complet. 6. Corvus animal est celerissimum, et testudini dissimillimum.² 7. Hieme dies breviores sunt noctibus. 8. Iter puellae difficilior est quam puero. 9. Turdus quidem avis tardior (65) est, aquila autem velocissima. 10. In regione aspera itinera hieme difficiliora quam aestate sunt. 11. Puer aegerrius crura et brachia graciliora habet. 12. Puellae patris quam matris similiores erant. 13. Puellam quidem totum diem (31) culpam (16a), puerum autem laudat.

1. *Nothing is more useful to men than sight and hearing.* 2. *The husbandman's garden is more fertile than the rich king's fields.* 3. *Who is bolder than a soldier? who (is) juster than a judge?* 4. *The ass is a somewhat-foolish (65) animal; the dog is very sagacious.* 5. *The boy's sisters were more like (their) mother than (their) father.* 6. *The anger of the king was keener than the madness of the soldiers.* 7. *By very swift journeys*

¹ The Dative is rare in Cicero, but very common in later writers.

² Two Adjectives coupled by et can agree with the same Noun.

the general leads (his) soldiers into a most rugged region.
8. *Very beautiful trees fill the very low¹ valleys of (the) most¹ fertile region.* 9. *The very brave soldiers are being driven into the city by (a) very keen and bold leader.¹* 10. *The very¹ ailing boy has very thin legs in winter.*

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
68	bōnus, good	mēlior	optimus
	mālus, bad	pēior	pessimus
	magnus, great	māior	maximus
	parvus, small	mīior	minimus
	multi, (pl.), many	plūres	plūrimi ²
	nēquam, (indecl.) worthless	nēquior	nēquissimus

68^a Adjectives ending in -dīcus, -speaking, -ficus, -doing, -vōlus, wishing, form the Comp. in -entīior, the Superl. in -entissimus:

mālē-dīcus, ill-speaking, -dīcentīior, -dīcentissimus.
mūnī-ficus, gift-making, -fīcentīior, -fīcentissimus.
hēnē-vōlus, well-wishing, -vōlentīior, -vōlentissimus.

(These forms are really derived from Verbal forms in -ens, which will be recognised when the Verbs are mastered.)

68^b Adjectives ending in -ēus, -ius, -ūus, seldom have a Compar. or Superl. form of their own, but are compared by appending the adverbs māgis, more, maxīmē, most: pīus, dutiful, māgis pīus, more dutiful, maxīmē pīus, most dutiful.

69 In the following the Positive is defective, and is represented by a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition:

70 ¹ In Latin the Superlative is more frequently used than in English. We should say "the brave soldiers," "a bold leader." But in Latin the Superlatives must be expressed.

71 ² Multum, plūs, and plūrimum are also used in the Neut. Sing. as Nouns governing a Genitive Case.

They have much	} (of) money.	Multum	} pecūniāe habent.
more		Plūs	
very much		Plūrimum	

[Sēnex], an old man	sēnior ¹	nātu maxīmus, oldest.
[Jūvēnis], a young man	jūnior ¹	nātu minīmus, youngest.
[Sūpērus], upper	sūpērior	suprēmus, summus, highest.
[Infērus], lower	infērior	infīmus, imus, lowest.
[Extērus], outside	extērior	extrēmus, (outermost or last).
[prep. Intrā], inside	intērior	intīmus, inmost.
[Postērus], after, behind	postērior	postrēmus, (hindmost or last).
[prep. Præ], before	prīor	prīmus, (foremost or first).
[prep. Prōpē], near	prōpīor ¹	proxīmus, (nearest or next).
[prep. Ultrā], beyond	ultērior	ultīmus, (furthest or last).

72 Plūs, more, is thus declined :

Singular : a Noun.

Plural : an Adjective.

	Neuter.		Masc. and Fem.		Neut.
Nom. and Acc.	Plūs		Plūrēs		Plūrā
Gen.	Plūrīs		Plūrīum		Plūrīum
Dat.	Plūrī		Plūrībus		Plūrībus
Abl.	Plūrē		Plūrībus		Plūrībus

Māgis means *more in degree* and is used with Adjectives ;
plūs, *more in quantity*, and is used with Verbs.

Balbus is *more dutiful*, but Balbus māgis pius est, sed
Tullius delights (his) father Tullius patrem plūs delectat.
more.

EXERCISE XXVI.

73 RULE.—A Superlative, in agreement with a Noun understood, is followed by the Genitive :

The horse is the most useful (animal) of animals. Equus utilissimum (animal)
animālium est.

1. Alexander erat ducem præstantissimus.²
2. Optimorum virorum filii interdum pessimi sunt.
3. Quid pejus erat Balbi contione ! Quid optimæ (35) Tullii contioni (66) simile habet ?³
4. Majores natu ratio, non spes, agit.
5. Junioribus

¹ Nātu māior and nātu mīnor are also used. Nātu means *by birth*, and is not declined.

² Why is ducem Gen. ? Ans. governed by aux understood.

³ An Adj. e.g. optimæ, is often separated from its Noun by an intervening Genitive e.g. Tullii. (Par. 35.) Quid (Exercise XXII) is Acc. gov. by habet.

The Nom. to habet is it, i.e. the speech of Balbus, understood.

seniores dona dant. 6. Ducis optimi dies ultimus erat felicissimus. 7. Socrates optimus Græcorum erat. 8. Castrorum pars exterior partē intimā maior erat. 9. Plus erat (71) modestiæ quam sapientiæ in viro benevolentissimo.¹ 10. Plurimorum facta nequissima, optima verba sunt. 11. Minima pars propioris regionis maximā partē regionis ulterioris maior erat. 12. Senes priora (34) laudant, juniorum facta culpant. 13. Proximo die imperator maximam partem hostium suporat. 14. Virgo a milite hasta totum diem terretur.

1. *The king, (who was) worse than (his) father, has a (still) more worthless son.*
2. *Very old men praise former times.*
3. *The greater part of the outermost wall was nearest to the citadel.*
4. *The most benevolent of the younger (men) were inferior to (trans. as if to were than) the worst of the elder (men).*
5. *He gives more gifts to the worst of the sisters than to the most dutiful of the brothers.*
6. *The lowest part of the mountain was higher (comp. and superl. of superus) than the highest part of the citadel.*
7. *The younger rightly give reverence to (their) elders.*
8. *The younger of the brothers was very like the elder sister.*
9. *Very many praise what is best (trans. best-things).*
10. *On the last (30) day of (his) life the old-man was most happy.*
11. *He is-blamed the whole day (long).*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

74 Numeral Adjectives are either (1) Cardinal, denoting *how many*, or (2) Ordinal, denoting *in what order*.² All the Ordinal Adjectives are declined like *bōnus*; but of the Cardinal Adjectives only a few are declined.

1. Ūnus, one.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Gen. Sing.	Ūn-ūs	un-ūs	un-ūs
Dat. Sing.	Un-i	un-i	un-i

In the other cases, Sing. and Plur., it is like *bonus*.

75 ¹ Why is *modestiae* Gen? Ans. governed by *plūs*, Adj. used as Noun. Why is *sapientiæ* Gen.? Because *quam* (Par. 62) takes the same Case after it as before it. In translating *benevolentissimo* add *the* or *that*.

76 The Gen. after *pars*, *plūs*, *multum*, &c., is often called the *Partitive Genitive*.

77 ² For the Distributive Numeral Adjectives see Exercise LXXXV. They are all declined like *bōni*, -ae, -a: (1) *singŭli*, one a-piece; (2) *bīni*, two a-piece; (3) *terni* or *trīni*; (4) *quāterni*; (5) *quīni*; (6) *sēni*; (7) *septēni*; (8) *octōni*; (9) *nōvēni*; (10) *dēni*; (11) *undēni*; (100) *centēni*; (101) *centēni singŭli*; (200) *dūcēni*; (300) *trēcēni*; (400) *quādringēni*; (600) *sexcēni*; (1,000) *singŭla mīlia*.

78

2. *Dŭo, two.*3. *Trēs, three.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Dŭ-ō	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ō		Trēs	triā
<i>Acc.</i>	Dŭ-os ¹	dŭ-as	dŭ-ō		Trēs ²	triā
<i>Gen.</i>	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum		Trium	triūm
<i>Dat.</i>	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus		Tribus	tribus
<i>Abl.</i>	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus		Tribus	tribus

Ambo, both, is declined like *dŭo*.

79 The Cardinal Numbers, from *four* to a *hundred*, are indeclinable.

The compounds of a *hundred* are declined like *bŏnus*:
Of two hundred men, *Dŭoentŏrum hŭmīnum*.

4. *Millē, thousand.*

80 The two uses of *millē* (*a*) Sing. (*b*) Plural, must be carefully distinguished:

a. Singular, an indeclinable Adjective:

Millē passus, a thousand paces.

Millē passibus, to a thousand paces, &c.

b. Plural, a Noun of the Third Declension, having an Adjective agreeing with it in Number and Case, and governing another Noun in the Genitive:

N.V. and Acc. Multa *mīlia* passuum, many thousands of paces.

Gen. Multŏrum *mīlium* passuum, of many thousands of paces.

Dat. Multis *mīlibus* passuum, to many thousands of paces.

Abl. Multis *mīlibus* passuum, by many thousands of paces.

¹ Less commonly, *dŭ-o*.

² Less commonly, *triā*.

81

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus
2	II	dūō, -æ, -o	sēcundus or altēr
3	III	trēs, -tria	tertius
4	IV	quattuōr (quātūōr)	quartus
5	V	quīquē	quintus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septīmus
8	VIII	ocīō	octāvus
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus
10	X	dēcem	dēcīmus
11	XI	undēcim	undēcīmus
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcīmus
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus
15	XV	quīndēcim	quintus dēcīmus
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septīmus dēcīmus
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus
20	XX	vigintī	vicēsīmus
21	XXI	ūnus et vigintī or vigintī-ūnus	unus et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus prīmus
22	XXII	duō et vigintī or vigintī duo	alter et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus alter
23	XXIII	trēs et vigintī or vigintī trēs	tertius et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus tertius
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētrīcēsīmus
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsīmus
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100	C	centum	centēsīmus
101	CI	centum et unus or centum unus	centēsīmus prīmus
136	CXXXVI	centum et trīginta sex or centum, trīginta sex	centēsīmus trīcēsīmus sextus
200	CC	dūcentī, -æ, -ā	dūcentēsīmus
300	CCC	trēcentī, -æ, -ā	trēcentēsīmus

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -ā	quadringentēsīmus
500	I \overline{D} or D	quingentī, -ae, -ā	quingentēsīmus
600	DC	sescentī, -ae, -ā	sexcentēsīmus
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -ā	septingentēsīmus
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ā	octingentēsīmus
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ā	nongentēsīmus
1,000	CI \overline{D} or M	mille	millēsīmus
2,000	MM	duō miliā	bis millēsīmus
100,000	CCCI \overline{D} \overline{D}	centum miliā	centiēs millēsīmus ¹

EXERCISE XXVII.

- 82 RULE.—The Possessor is often expressed by the Dative Case with the Verb *est*, (*sunt*, *erat*, *erant*, &c.):

Balbus has, or had a book, i.e. Balbo est, or erat, there was a book for Balbus. liber.

1. Duos consules decem tribunorum constantia superat. 2. Militi veterrimo unus solus oculus et novem digiti erant.² 3. In legione Romana decem cohortes erant. 4. Mensis Septembris quondam septimus (erat), nunc nonus anni mensis est.³ 5. Juvenis alteram et vicesimam partem patrimonii pauperibus dat. 6. Arbori centum et triginta sex poma tunc erant. 7. Agricola sedecim vices, (32) nonaginta octo cerus mulieri dat. 8. Centuria erat altera pars manipuli, sexta pars cohortis, legionis sexagesima (pars). 9. Legio trecentos equites habet. 10. In hostium exercitu sunt mille nongenti equites,

- 83 ¹ The number 500, I \overline{D} , is multiplied by 10 as often as \overline{D} is subjoined:—

$$I\overline{D}\overline{D} = 10 \times 500 = 5,000.$$

$$I\overline{D}\overline{D}\overline{D} = 10 \times 5,000 = 50,000.$$

In order to double I \overline{D} , or I $\overline{D}\overline{D}$, you must prefix C as many times as it is suffixed:—

$$CI\overline{D} = 2 \times 500 = 1,000.$$

$$CCII\overline{D} = 2 \times 5,000 = 10,000.$$

- 84 ² Why is militi Dat? Ans., *Dat of the Posters, &c. after est.*

³ Jānuārius and September are Adjectives agreeing with mensis. The adjectival names of the months are sometimes used as Nouns, mensis being understood, e.g. Febrūariū in sentence 11. See p. 229.

peditum tria millia. 11. Januarii mensis unus dies est pars una et tricesima; Februarii, duodetricesima.¹ 12. Undetriginta verberibus miles a centurione castigatur.

The general had (erant) three hundred and seven foot-soldiers. 2. The enemy had six hundred foot-soldiers, (and) two thousand horse-soldiers. 3. The husbandman gives twenty-five eggs to the wretched sailor. 4. There were on (in) the oak many thousand acorns. 5. On the sixth month of the year, in the seventh hour, there were in the city three thousand Germans. 6. The general leads into the city the twentieth legion and the third part of the thirtieth legion. 7. A century was the sixth part of a cohort; a cohort (was) the tenth part of a legion. 8. Once a legion had three thousand soldiers. 9. There were then in the legion six thousand foot-soldiers (and) three hundred horse-soldiers. 10. Once March was the first month of the year, November (was) the ninth, (and) December the tenth. 11. The old soldier had thirty-three wounds.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

- 85 The following adjectives (most of them capable of being used as Pronouns) are declined regularly (like *bōnus*) in the Plural, and in all cases of the Singular, except the Gen. and Dat.; but (like the Pronouns) they make the Gen. Sing. in *-ius* (*-ūs*) or *-riūs*, and the Dat. Sing. in *-i*:

1. *-ius* (*-ūs*).
Ūnus, one, one only.
Ullus, any.²
Nullus, no, not any, none.
Sōlus, alone.
Tōtus, whole.

2. *-riūs*.
Alter, Gen. *altēriūs*, one
 (of two), the other (of two).
Ūter? utr-ius? which (of
 the two)?
Neuter, *neutr-ius*, neither.

- 86 *Ālius*, other, makes the Neut. Sing. in *-ud*. When twice used co-ordinately (i.e. so that *and*, *but*, &c., might be inserted), it means, in the Sing., one . . . another, or, in the Plur., some . . . others; and *alter* . . . *alter* mean, similarly, one of the two . . . the other of the two.

¹ Why is *Febrūārīi* (mensis) Gen.? Ans. governed by *pars* understood. You must repeat "*unus dies est pars*" with *dūdētrīcēsima*.

The pupil may henceforth (with the aid of Appendix VI.) write the Latin day of the month on his exercise.

² *Ullus* is only used in (1) negative and (2) comparative sentences, or in (3) questions that expect a negative answer.

- (1) *He blames one thing, (and) praises another.* *Ālīud culpāt, ālīud laudāt.*
 (2) *Some overcome, (but) others are overcome.* *Ālīi sup̄erant, ālīi sup̄erantur.*
 (3) *He gives one of the two sisters a pear, the other an apple.* *Alt̄eri s̄or̄orūn p̄irūn, alt̄eri p̄ōmūn dat.*

<i>Ālius, other.</i>				<i>Nullus, no.</i>		
	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Singular.</i>	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ālius	ālīā	ālīud	Nullus	nullā	nullum
Voc.	<i>Wanting</i>			[Nulle	nulla	nullum]
Acc.	Ālīum	ālīam	ālīud	Nullum	nullam	nullum
Gen.	Ālius	ālīus	ālīus	Nullius	nullius	nullius
Dat.	Ālīi	ālīi	ālīi	Nulli	nulli	nulli
Abl.	Ālīo	ālīā	ālīo	Nullō	nullā	nullō

88 When *ālius* is repeated *not co-ordinately* (see Par. 86), it is sometimes construed as follows :—

Some women praise some things, others praise others. *Mul̄iēres ālīae ālīa laudant.*

The Nom. of *ālius* has *ī*, the Gen. has *ī*:

One man praises one man's conduct, another man another's. *Ālius ālius mōrēs laudat.*

89 Note *alt-ērīus*, but *ut-rīus*; so *asp-ērī*, but *pulch-ri*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

90 Adjectives signifying *nearness, dearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.*, and their opposites, govern the Dative.

1. *Utri senum filia viam monstrat?*¹ 2. *Neutrius exercitus dux timidus erat.* 3. *Uni soli tot militum dux coronam dat.*²
 4. *Fratrum optimorum alter alterius filium valde amat.*
 5. *Pater alteri filiorum equum validissimum, alteri censem dat.* 6. *Mulieres aliae alia clamant.* 7. *Milites (88) alius agros, alius armenta et equos laudant.* 8. *Mater puellis dona diversa dat; alii dat aurum, alii argentum.* 9. *Nemini*

91 ¹ *Senum* is Gen., governed by *utri*. But the Gen. after *uter*, neuter, *unus*, &c. and also after the Numerals generally, is often called a *Partitive Genitive*, because it implies a *part* belonging to a larger number or whole.
² What sort of a Gen. is *militum*? *Soli* agrees with *uni*, which (85) is used as a Pronoun.

molestus erat; nullius mores culpat.¹ 10. Pater majora dona filiae quam ulli filiorum dat.² 11. Homo avarus est, neque (18) ulli carus.² 12. Utrique genti facile (34) erat belli mala vitare (36a).

1. Which of the (two) brothers is the dearer to (their) mother?
2. The man is very worthless (68), and not dear to any of the citizens.
3. To one of the (two) brothers he gives blame; to the other praise.
4. To neither of the leaders was the cowardice of the armies pleasing.
5. Virtue is agreeable to one, pleasure (is agreeable) to another.
6. One (man's) constancy, another (man's) prudence, is praised by the leader.
7. To one alone of the women does the queen give praise.
8. He gives to (his) brother a better gift than to any (87) of his sisters.
9. Some had (82) shields, others had swords; (but) no one had horses.
10. The woman was very worthless, and (18) not dear to any of (her) sisters.
11. The butterfly lives one day.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

1. FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

I, me, &c.

Plural.

We, us, &c.

Nom.	Egō	Nōs
Acc.	Mē	Nōs
Gen.	Mēi	Nostri ³ (-trum)
Dat.	Mihī	Nōbīs
Abl.	Mē	Nōbīs

2. SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

Thou, thee, &c.

Plural.

Ye, you, &c.

N. and V.	Tū	Vōs
	Tē	Vōs
	Tui	Vestri ³ (-trum)
	Tibi	Vōbīs
	Tē	Vōbīs

3. THIRD PERSON.

To express *he, she, it*, use is made of the Adjective (1) *is, m., that (man)*, (2) *ea, f., that (woman)*, (3) *id, n., that (thing)*.

92 ¹ Nullius, nullo are used for *nēmīnis* and *nēmīne*:

From *nēmo* let no never see
Nēmīnis and *nēmīne*.

93 ² In what sort of sentences is *ullus* used? Why is it used (87) here?
³ The Genitives Plural *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are used only in such phrases as "*nēmo nostrum, vestrum, no one of us, of you; the wisest of us; some of us, &c.*" It is then called a Partitive Genitive: see above, Par. 70, 91. *Nostri, vestri* are really Adjectives in Gen. Sing. agreeing with a Noun understood: *mēmor est nostri, He is mindful of our (business) i.e. of us.*

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>He</i>	<i>She</i>	<i>It</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>Those</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Is</i>	<i>ēā</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>Ei (ii)</i>	<i>cae</i>	<i>ēā</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ēum</i>	<i>ēam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>Ēos</i>	<i>ēas</i>	<i>ēā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>Ēorum</i>	<i>ēārum</i>	<i>ēōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>Eis (iis)</i>	<i>eis (iis)</i>	<i>eis (iis)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ēo</i>	<i>ēā</i>	<i>ēo</i>	<i>Eis (iis)</i>	<i>eis (iis)</i>	<i>eis (iis)</i> ¹

- 94 The Gen. *eius*, *eōrum*, is often used for *his*, *her*, *their*: "*liber eius*," *his*, or *her book*; "*eōrum liber*," *their book*.

4. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

This Pronoun has no Nominative nor Vocative, and the Plural is the same as the Singular.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Acc. Sē</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself</i> ²	<i>themselves</i>
<i>Gen. Sui</i>	<i>of "</i> " "	<i>"</i>
<i>Dat. Sibi</i>	<i>to or for "</i> " "	<i>"</i>
<i>Abl. Sē</i> ²	<i>by (17), with, from "</i> " "	<i>"</i>

EXERCISE XXIX.

I (or *we*), *thou* (or *ye*), *he* (or *they*) are said to be respectively the First, Second, and Third Persons. All ordinary Nouns are said to be in the Third Person (see page 237).

The form of the Verb in Latin must be altered to suit the Person as well as the Number of its Subject:

Person.	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st <i>I love,</i>	(<i>ēgō</i>) <i>ām-o</i>	<i>We</i> } <i>love,</i>	{ (<i>nōs</i>) <i>āmā-mus</i>
2nd <i>Thou lovest,</i>	(<i>tū</i>) <i>āmā-s</i>		
3rd <i>He loves,</i>	(<i>is</i>) <i>āmā-t</i>		

- 95 RULE.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person.

All the Verbs that make the 3rd Pers. Sing. in *-at* (such as *sūpēra-t*, *lauda-t*, &c.), are changed in the same way as *āmo* above: but *da-t* has the *a* short, *dāmus*, *dātis*.

¹ The quantity of the *e* in *ei*, *eis* is doubtful.

² Instead of *sē* there is sometimes used the emphatic form *sēsē*. The pupil must be prepared hereafter to find that *sē* is used in some instances for *he*, *him*. But, for the present, it will be only used for *himself*, *herself* &c. (never for *thyselves*, *yourselves*).

96 *Ūnus* is sometimes used in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun to mean *alone* or *only* :—

Only *Tullius loves me.*

Ūnus *Tullius* *mē* *āmat.*

1. *Ego eum amo.* 2. *Tu eius fratrem amas.* 3. *Nos eorum fratrem amamus.* 4. *Vci eius sorores amatis.* 5. *Dona eius mihi uni (96) grata sunt.* 6. *Agri agricolarum eis grati sunt.* 7. *Mater illum amat, ego eum laudo.* 8. *Matri filius poma dat, ego eum laudo.* 9. *Poma talia mihi grata non sunt; ego percis eā do.* 10. *Tu mihi et ei dona meliora quam eis das.* 11. *Vos eorum dona laudatis, eorum (dona) culpatis.* 12. *Omnes sese amant.* 13. *Nemo non sibi benignus est.*

1. *I love her, she loves me.* 2. *Thou lovest her¹ father.* 3. *Ye love their (94) gifts.* 4. *We love them, ye love us.* 5. *They give us better gifts than (they give) to him.* 6. *His patience is pleasing to me.* 7. *Their patience is pleasing to him.* 8. *Her constancy is pleasing to them.* 9. *No one blames himself.* 10. *His folly is pleasing to thee (96) alone.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

97 The Genitives *ēius, ēorum*, are used for *his, her, their*; but the Genitives *mēi, tūi, nostri, vestri, &c.*, are hardly ever used for *my, thy, our, your, &c.* For this purpose the following Pronominal Adjectives are used :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Mēus</i>	<i>mēā</i>	<i>mēum</i>	<i>my, mine</i>
<i>Tūus</i>	<i>tūā</i>	<i>tūum</i>	<i>thy, thine</i>
<i>Noster</i>	<i>nostrā</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>our, ours</i>
<i>Vester</i>	<i>vestrā</i>	<i>vestrum</i>	<i>your, yours</i>
<i>Sūs</i>	<i>sūā</i>	<i>sūum</i>	<i>his own, her own, its own, their own</i>

98 *Eius* and *Sūs*. Note the difference. *Sūs* may be used (for the present) where you can insert *own* in the English.

- (1) *The mother loves her (own) son.* *Māter filium sūum āmat.*
- (2) *Gaius and his brother love me.* (See page 328.) *Gaius et frātēr ēius mē āmant.*
- (3) *I love her son.* *Āmo ēius filium.*

¹ Note the ambiguity in Latin: *eius* is used both for *her* and for *his*. In practice, of course, the ambiguity would be generally removed by the context. On the other hand, the ambiguity of the English *their* is removed by the Latin use of *ēorum* and *ēarum*.

- 99 *Ēgo, tū, is, nōs, &c., are generally omitted as the Subjects of a Verb: āmās, thou lovest, āmāmus, we love, &c.*
- 99a But if emphasis is intended to be laid on the Pronouns, they are inserted: "*Ēgo tō ūmo, tū mō nōn ūmās.*"

EXERCISE XXX.

- 100 A question is asked by *nōnne, num* or *-nē*; *-nē* is added to, and emphasizes, *the first word in the Sentence.*

Do you blame me?

Tūnē mē culpās?

Do you blame ME?

Mēnē culpās?

- 101 *Nōnnē?* (i. e. *nōn-nē?*) expects *yes*; *num?* expects *no*.¹

Does he not blame me?

Nōnnē mē culpāt?

He does not blame me, does he?

Num mē culpāt?

- 102 RULE.—Adjectives signifying *mindfulness, knowledge, or forgetfulness and ignorance*, take the Genitive.

1. Mercator sua laudat (32), aliena culpāt, 2. Puer vobis carus est; nonne sororem eius umatis? 3. Non omnes semper sui memores sunt. 4. Puellae patrem non habent: omnes eis benigni sunt. 5. Nonne omnes sibi benigni sunt, aliorum immemores? 6. Amici mei Tullium valde amant, et semper eius memores sunt. 7. Soror tua, O amice, patrem suum non amat. 8. Nos sumus vestri memores; sed nemo vestrum nostri memior est.² 9. Mater tua non est tibi carior quam meus pater mihi.³ 10. Laetamus aliena (34), nostra non curamus. 11. Cur non agros vestros curatis, agricolae ignavissimi? 12. Tunc, O filiarum pessima, patris tui virtutem culpās? 13. Nunc tu, vir ignarus, viam aliis monstras? 14. Interdum sui immemior (16a) est.

1. ⁴ Balbus is not mindful of us; but (67) we love him. 2. No one of us praises his folly. 3. The girl is dear to us; we love her

¹ With *cūr? why? quis? who?* and other interrogatives, *-nē, nōnne, num*, are omitted: *Why does he not blame? Cūr nōi culpāt?* When *nōnne* and *num* are used in direct questions, they generally stand at the beginning of the Sentence.

² What case is *vestrum*, and why? Why not *vestri*? What case is *nostri*, and why? Why not *nostrum*? See Par. 93.

³ *Mihi* is Dat., governed by "*cārus* (est)" understood.

⁴ Before doing this exercise, the pupil should read through all the sentences and ask which of the Pronominal Adjectives of the 3rd Pers., *his, her, their, &c.*, can have *own* added to it. Whenever *own* can be added, *sūus* is the word to be used. But of course this does not apply to *Pro* and *own* of the 3rd Pers. (*my own, your own*), which are to be rendered *meus, &c.*

exceedingly. 4. Thy sister does not love her father. 5. His brothers do not love their father. 6. Ye praise the fields of others, ye do not take care of your (own) (fields). 7. Our sisters are dearer to us, O most cruel (men), than your brothers to you. 8. Do ye, (being) ignorant of the way, point-out the way to us, O most foolish (men)? 9. Why dost thou blame thy father, and dost not (18) praise his virtue? 10. The generals overcome the anger of the soldiers by their wisdom.

103

DEMONSTRATIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

1. Illē, that (yonder); pl. those.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illud	illi	illae	illā
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illā
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Abl.	illo	illā	illo	illis	illis	illis

2. Istē, that (near you, or of yours), often used contemptuously; declined like illē.

3. Hic (-ī or -i), this (near me); pl. these.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hō	Hi	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hos	has	haec
Gen.	Huius	huius	huius	Horum	harum	horum
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic	His	his	his
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hō	His	his	his

4. Ipsē, -self, himself, herself, itself; pl. themselves.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum ¹	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	Ipsū	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	Ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	Ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipso	Ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Note that ipsē differs from illō only in the Neut. Nom. Singular.

5. *Idem*, *the same* (declined like *is*; but *is-dem* is written *idem*, *id-dem* is written *idem*, and *m beforo -dem* is changed into *n*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Idem	ēadem	idem	Iidem	ēaedem	ēādem
Acc.	Eūdem	ēandem	dem	Eosdem	ēasdem	ēādem
Gen.	Eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	Eorundem	ēarundem	ēorunde:
Dat.	Eidem	eidem	eidem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
Abl.	Eodem	ēādem	ēodem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem ¹

EXERCISE XXXI.

- 104 [Do not, for the future, use *thou* or *ye* in translating the Exercises, unless the language is poetical. *You* in English is commonly used of the Singular Number, and will be so used in future Exercises; it should therefore be rendered by *tu*, not by *vos*, unless the context shows that it is Plural].

- 105 *Ipsē* is an Adj., agreeing in Gender, Number and Case with (1) a Noun or Pronoun understood; or (2) a Noun or Pronoun expressed.

- (1) *(She) herself loves me.* Ipsa mē amat.
 (2) *I give this to you yourself, O daughter.* Tibi ipsi, O filia, hūc do.
 (3) *The queen herself loves.* Rēgina ipsa amat.

1. Non idem labor eisdem semper iucundus est. 2. Amicus iste fratrem suum non amat. 3. Huic equum, illi canem, isti asinum pigrum agricola dat. 4. In te ipso fons est lœtitiæ. 5. Non idem donum agricolis et nautis gratum est. 6. Viti-osi vitium ipsum amant. 7. Homeri et Vergilii opera vobis nota sunt; ille² Græcus erat, hic Romanus. 8. Eorundem agricularum agri non semper pariter fertiles sunt. 9. Num amicorum ipsorum mores culpatis? 10. Cur huic mulieri dona meliora quam ipsi matri tuæ das? 11. Vestis eadem eidem mulieri non semper grata est. 12. Alexandri et Darii nomina nota sunt omnibus: illi laudem, huic miseri-cordiam dāmus.² 13. Quis centum (31) annos vivit?

1. *That gift of-yours is more pleasing to you yourself than to Balbus.* 2. *We all love the same native-land.* 3. *You, O friends, love the same (things), the same danger terrifies*

106

¹ For *eisdem* there is sometimes used *isdem*.

² (1) *Ille...* (2) *hic*, when thus used together, mean (1) *that which is furthest, first-mentioned...* (2) *that which is nearest, last-mentioned*: hence (1) *the former...* (2) *the latter*.

107. 4. *This man we love, this man's conduct we praise.*
 5. *The same-things are not always pleasing to the same-persons*
 (31). 6. *Why do you give larger gifts to this woman than to your*
own mother (trans. *to your mother herself*)? 7. *The children*
of the same parents are not always equally beautiful. 8. *The*
same vice is worse in a learned man than in an unlearned.
 9. *Do you blame us, O foolish (man)? In you yourself is*
the cause of these evils. 10. *Do you give to yourself the best*
gifts? 11. *Do you blame us the whole (85) day (long) (31)?*

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107

 1. *Quī, which (man, woman, thing); who; that.*

Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cuius	cuius	cuius-	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	Quībus	quībus	quībus ¹
Abi.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībus	quībus	quībus ¹

The Relative in Latin often (1) precedes its Antecedent, and sometimes (2) is placed with it like an Adjective.

- (1) *He whom all love is praised by all.* Quem omnes amant is ab omnibus laudatur.
 (1) *What, or that which, some praise, others blame.* Quōd alii laudant id alii culpant.
 (2) *The friends whom (or what friends) he has, he praises.* Quōs amicos habet, laudat.²

108 RULE.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.³

You yourself, sister, who love others, do not love me. Tū ipsa, sōror, quae alios amās, me nōn amās.
You, brothers, who blame me, praise Tullius, who himself praises me. Vōs, frātres, qui me culpātis, Tullium laudātis, qui ipse me laudat.

109

¹ Quībus is sometimes contracted into quīs.

² Here the Antecedent is repeated, "quos amicos habet (eos amicos) laudat"; and it may be said that quos agrees (like an Adj.) with the repeated Antecedent, but has for its Antecedent "eos amicos" understood.

09a

³ N.B. In Gender, Number, and Person—but not necessarily in Case.

- 110** 2. The Interrogative Pronoun *quīs* differs in form from the Relative Pronoun merely in the Nom. Sing. Masc. and Neuter: *quīs*? *who*? *quid*? *what*? The rest of its cases are the same as those of the Relative Pronoun:

Who gives you this?

Quīs tibi hūc dat?

What do you give me?

Quid mibi dās?

- 111** The Interrogative Adjective *quī* is the same as the Relative in every case:¹

*What has he done? What
misdeed has he committed?*

*Quid fecit?
commisit?*

*Quōd facinus
commisit?*

EXERCISE XXXII.

- 112** RULE.—Adjectives signifying nearness, e.g. *vicīnus*, *near* (*to*), *finītīmus*, *bordering on*, *proxīmus*, *nearest*, or *next* (*to*), are followed by the Dative.

1. Qui aliis viam monstrat hunc alij iure (38) laudant. 2. Qui sibi benigniores (65) sunt, ei non semper ab amicis laudantur. 3. Te, O soror, quae haec dona mihi das, maxime laudo. 4. Quis hos milites ducit? Quod periculum eos terret? 5. Ego, O fratres, qui vobis dona optima do, nonne sum vobis carissimus? 6. Cuius verba me culpant eum non laudo. 7. Quibus rex dona dat, eos non semper amat. 8. Quae pericula patrem terrent, ea nonne filii timent? 9. Agricola arbores serit quarum fructum ipso non gustat.² 10. Cui patria cara est is bonus civis est. 11. Minus istae quibus agricolae timidi terrentur, militem non terrent. 12. In urbo, quae mari proxima erat, nautae plurimi erant: huc imperator suos (34) ducit. 13. Belgae, quorum agri Gallis finitimi sunt, a Caesare bello superantur.²

1. You, O women, who (108) praise injustice (i.e. unjust-things) are paying (trans. giving) the penalty of your folly. 2. To you, O sister, who blame your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift. 3. Those whose (113a) conduct is depraved, you do right not to praise (trans. you rightly do not praise). 4. His mother, who loves you exceedingly, praises you too much. 5. Why do you err, (you) who point out the way to them? 6. What are you tasting, O boys? What fruit delights you? 7. We who overcome the nations bordering-on us, are overcome by the

113
113a

¹ *Quīs* is sometimes an Adj., chiefly with persons: *quīs rex*? *what king*?
² Note that the Relative in the Genit. precedes the Noun that governs it: "quarum fructum," not "fructum quarum."

nation next to the Belgians. 8. The general leads his (men) into a plain which was nearer and larger. 9. You, O soldiers, are entering this city, which the enemy (pl.) at the same (30) time enter. 10. Friends love those who love (their) friends. 11. Who is this (man) whose blame terrifies you? ¹

THE VERB.

114 Latin Verbs are divided into Four Classes called Conjugations. In the third Conjugation the Active Infinitive Present ends in -ĕre, in the rest in -re. That part of the word which comes before -re or -ĕre is called the Stem, and the last letter of the Stem distinguishes the Conjugation.

			<i>Act., Inf., Pres.</i>
1.	First, or A	Conjugation	āmā-re, to love
2.	Second, E	"	mōnē-re, to advise
3. (a)	Third, Consonant	"	rēg-ĕre, to rule
(b)	" U	"	minū-ĕre, to diminish
4.	Fourth, I	"	audī-re, to hear

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārĕ,—to love. Stem: āmā-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amo, I love, or am loving	<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āmūs, We love, or are loving
2. Am-ās, thou lovest, or art loving	2. Am-ātīs, ye love, or are loving
3. Am-āt, he loves, or is loving.	3. Am-ant, they love, or are loving.

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābo, I shall love	<i>Pl.</i> Am-ābīmūs, We shall love
Am-ābīs, thou wilt love	Am-ābītīs, ye will love
Am-ābīt, he will love.	Am-ābunt, they will love.

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābam, I was loving	<i>Pl.</i> Am-ābāmūs, We were loving
Am-ābās, thou wast loving	Am-ābātīs, ye were loving
Am-ābāt, he was loving.	Am-ābant, they were loving.

¹ For additional elementary exercises on the Relative, see p. 186.

² The Imperf. also means *I used-to-love, thou wast-used-to-love, he used-to-love, &c.* It has other meanings, which must be learned by practice.

4. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Am-āvi, I have loved,</i>	<i>Pl. Am-āvimus, We have loved.</i>
<i>or I loved</i>	<i>or we loved</i>
<i>Am-āvisti, thou hast loved,</i>	<i>Am-āvistis, ye have loved,</i>
<i>or thou lovedst</i>	<i>or ye loved</i>
<i>Am-āvit, he has loved,</i>	<i>Am-āverunt, they have</i>
<i>or he loved.</i>	<i>or am-āvērē¹ loved, or</i>
	<i>they loved.</i>

5. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-āvēro, I shall</i>	<i>Am-āvērimus, We shall</i>
<i>Am-āvēris, thou wilt</i>	<i>Am-āvēritis, ye will</i>
<i>Am-āvērit, he will</i>	<i>Am-āvērint,² they will</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-āvēram, I had loved</i>	<i>Am-āvērāmus, We had loved.</i>
<i>Am-āvērās, thou hadst loved</i>	<i>Am-āvērātis, ye had loved</i>
<i>Am-āvērāt, he had loved.</i>	<i>Am-āvērant, they had loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ā, Love thou.</i>	<i>P. Am-ātē, Love ye.</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.³

<i>S. Am-āto, Thou must love</i>	<i>P. Am-ātōtē, Ye must love</i>
<i>Am-āto, he must love.</i>	<i>Am-antō, they must love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.⁴

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Am-em, I may love</i>	<i>Am-ēmūs,⁵ We may love</i>
<i>Am-ēs, thou mayst love</i>	<i>Am-ētis, ye may love</i>
<i>Am-ēt, he may love.</i>	<i>Am-ent, they may love.</i>

116 ¹ As in English *r* is omitted in *o'er, ne'er*, so in Latin *-vi-* and *-ve-* are sometimes omitted where no ambiguity would be caused. Thus *āmāvisti, āmāverunt*, &c. become *āmavisti, āmavunt*, &c.; but *āmāvimus, āmāvere*, cannot be contracted into *āmāmus, āmāre*, because these contractions would be liable to be confused with the *Pres. Indic.* and *Pres. Infin.*

² The usual pronunciation is *āmāveris, āmāverimus*; but the *i* is sometimes long.

117 ³ The Tense distinction between the Forms of the Imperative is very doubtful. The forms in *-o* are generally reserved for legal language: see Par. 122. *Ne* is seldom expressed by the Imperative, see Par. 163, 164.

118 ⁴ This Mood is sometimes called the Conjunctive. The meanings *I may, love* and *I might love* are seldom attached to the Subjunctive without the accompanying conjunction *ut* (*that*).

118a ⁵ *Amēmūs*, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us love*.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-ārem, I might love</i>	<i>Am-ārēmūs, We might love</i>
<i>Am-ārēs, thou mightst love</i>	<i>Am-ārētis, ye might love</i>
<i>Am-ārēt, he might love.</i>	<i>Am-ārent, they might love.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-āverim, I may</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>	<i>Am-āverimūs, We may</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>
<i>Am-āveris, thou mayst</i>		<i>Am-āverētis, ye may</i>	
<i>Am-āverit, he may</i>		<i>Am-āverint, they may</i>	

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-āvissem, I should</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>	<i>Am-āvissemūs, We should</i>	} <i>have loved</i>
<i>Am-āvisseēs, thou wouldst</i>		<i>Am-āvisseētis, ye would</i>	
<i>Am-āvisset, he would</i>		<i>Am-āvissent, they would</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.¹

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF. }	<i>Am-ārē, to love.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF. }	<i>Am-āvisse, { to have loved.</i>
FUTURE. {	<i>Am-ātūrūs { to be about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. <i>Am-andī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
Dat. <i>Am-andō,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
Acc. <i>Am-andū,</i>	<i>the loving</i>
Abl. <i>Am-andō,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Am-ātum,²</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Am-ātū,²</i>	<i>in loving.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. <i>Am-ans, -antis, &c.,</i>	<i>[loving.]</i>
FUTURE. <i>Am-ātūrūs (ā, um),</i>	<i>[about to love.]</i>

¹ This part of the Verb is sometimes spoken of as the *Verb Infinitive*, and not as the *Infinitive Mood*.

² The Supines are really Nouns used only in the Acc. and Abl.; (1) the Supine in -um after Verbs of Motion, (2) the Supine in -u with a few Adjectives, Exercise LXXIV.

Hence *āmātum* can never be used (as *amāre* is, Par. 34) for the Subject of a Verb.

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem : mōnē-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eo, ¹	<i>I advise, or am advising</i>	Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou adviseest, or art advising</i>	Mōn-ētīs,	<i>ye advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises, or is advising.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, or are advising.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	Mōn-ēb'mūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbītīs,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīt,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advis- ing.²</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised¹. or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistīs,	<i>ye have advised, or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt,	<i>they have advised, or -uērē, { or they advised.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-nēro, I shall	} have advised.	Mōn-uērīmūs, We shall	} have advised.
Mōn-nērīs, thou wilt		Mōn-uērītīs, ye will	
Mōn-nērīt, he will		Mōn-uērint, they will	

¹ The quantity of the e before o, and of u before i is not marked, because it is an invariable rule in Latin that a vowel before another vowel is short: see Appendix VII., p. 230.

² The Imperf. also means *I used-to-advise, thou wast-wont-to-advise, he used-to-advise, &c.*

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-uëram, <i>I had advised</i>	Mön-uëramüs, <i>We had advised</i>
Mön-uëräs, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mön-uërätis, <i>ye had advised</i>
Mön-uërät, <i>he had advised.</i>	Mön-uërant, <i>they had advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-ë, <i>Advise thou.</i>	Mön-ëtë, <i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mön-ëto, <i>Thou must advise</i>	Mön-ëtötë, <i>Ye must advise</i>
Mön-ëto, <i>he must advise.</i>	Mön-ento, <i>they must advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eam, <i>I may advise</i>	Mön-eämüs, <i>We may advise¹</i>
Mön-eäs, <i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mön-eätis, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mön-eät, <i>he may advise.</i>	Mön-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ërem, <i>I might advise</i>	Mön-ërëmüs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mön-ërës, <i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mön-ërētis, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mön-ërët, <i>he might advise.</i>	Mön-ërent, <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-uërim, <i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>	Mön-uërimüs, <i>We may</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mön-uëris, <i>thou mayst</i>		Mön-uëritis, <i>ye may</i>	
Mön-uërit, <i>he may</i>		Mön-uërint, <i>they may</i>	
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-nissem, <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>	Mön-uissēmüs, <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mön-nissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>		Mön-nissētis, <i>ye would</i>	
Mön-nissöt, <i>he would</i>		Mön-nissent, <i>they would</i>	
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised</i>

¹ Mönëämus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us advise*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	}	Mōn-ērē, <i>to advise.</i>
PRES. and PLUPERF.		Mōn-uissē, <i>{to have advised.</i>
FUTURE.	{	Mōn-ītūrūs <i>{to be about to advise.</i>
		essē,

GERUND.

Gen.	Mōn-endī, <i>of advising</i>
Dat.	Mōn-endō, <i>for advising</i>
Acc.	Mōn-endum, <i>the advising</i>
Abl.	Mōn-endō, <i>by advising.</i>

SUPINES.

Mōn-ītum,	<i>to advise.</i>
Mōn-ītū,	<i>in advising.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT	Mōn-ens, -entis, &c., <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE.	Mōn-ītūrūs (ā, um), <i>about to advise.</i>

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—*to rule.* Stem : rēg-.

INDICATIVE MOOD

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-o, <i>I rule, or am</i>	} ruling.	Rēg-īmūs, <i>We rule, or are</i>
Rēg-īs, <i>thou rulest, or art</i>		Rēg-ītīs, <i>ye rule, or are</i>
Rēg-īt, <i>he rules, or is</i>		Rēg-unt, <i>they rule, or are</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Rēg-am, <i>I shall rule</i>	}	Rēg-ēmūs, <i>We shall rule</i>
Rēg-ēs, <i>thou wilt rule</i>		Rēg-ētīs, <i>ye will rule</i>
Rēg-ēt, <i>he will rule.</i>		Rēg-ent, <i>they will rule.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rēg-ēbam, <i>I was ruling</i>	}	Rēg-ēbāmūs, <i>We were ruling</i>
Rēg-ēbās, <i>thou wast ruling</i>		Rēg-ēbātīs, <i>ye were ruling</i>
Rēg-ēbāt, <i>he was ruling.</i>		Rēg-ēbant, <i>they were ruling.</i> ¹

¹ The Imperf. also means *I used-to-rule, thou wast-wont-to-rule, he used-to-rule, &c*

4 PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-I,	<i>I have ruled, or I ruled</i>	Rex-īmūs,	<i>We have ruled, or us ruled</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst</i>	Rex-istīs,	<i>ye have ruled, or ye ruled</i>
Rex-īt,	<i>he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>	Rex-ērunt, or rex-ērē,	<i>they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>

5 FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ēro,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-erīs,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	Rex-erītīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
Rex-erīt,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-erint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	Rex-ērāmūs,	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-erās,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	Rex-erātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-erāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-ē,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	Rēg-ītē,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
--------	-------------------	----------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rēg-īto,	<i>Thou shalt or must rule</i>	Rēg-ītōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must rule</i>
Rēg-īto,	<i>he shall or must rule.</i>	Rēg-unto,	<i>they shall or must [rule.]</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>	Rēg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule¹</i>
Rēg-as,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	Rēg-ātīs,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rēg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rēg-ērem,	<i>I might rule</i>	Rēg-ērēmūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	Rēg-erētīs,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rēg-erēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rēg-erent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ērim,	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>	Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>
Rex-erīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>		Rex-erītīs,	<i>ye may</i>	
Rex-erīt,	<i>he may</i>		Rex-erint,	<i>they may</i>	

¹ Rēgāmūs, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us rule.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-issem, <i>I should</i>	} have ruled.	Rex-issēmūs, <i>We should</i>	} have ruled.
Rex-issēs, <i>thou couldst</i>		Rex-issētis, <i>ye would</i>	
Rex-issēt, <i>he would</i>		Rex-issent, <i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.		GERUND.	
PRRS. and IMPRR.	} Rēg-ērē, <i>to rule.</i>	Gen. Rēg-endī,	<i>of ruling</i>
PRRF. and PLUPERF.		Dat. Rēg-endō,	<i>for ruling</i>
	} Rex-issē, { <i>to have ruled.</i>	Acc. Rēg-endum,	<i>the ruling</i>
		Abl. Rēg-endō,	<i>by ruling.</i>
FUTURE.	} Rec-tūrūs { <i>to be about to rule.</i>		

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	<i>to rule.</i>
Rec-tū,	<i>in ruling.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Rēg-ens, -entis, &c.,	<i>[ruling.]</i>
FUTURE. Rec-tūrūs (ā, um),	<i>[about to rule.]</i>

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvī, auditum, audirē,—*to hear.* Stem: audī-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

And-io, <i>I hear, or am</i>	} hearing.	And-imūs, <i>We hear, or are</i>	} hearing
And-īs, <i>thou hearest, or art</i>		And-itīs, <i>ye hear, or are</i>	
And-īt, <i>he hears, or is</i>		And-iunt, <i>they hear, or are</i>	

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

And-iam, <i>I shall hear</i>	And-iēmūs, <i>We shall hear</i>
And-iēs, <i>thou wilt hear</i>	And-iētīs, <i>ye will hear</i>
And-iēt, <i>he will hear.</i>	And-ient, <i>they will hear</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

And-iēbam, <i>I was hearing</i>	And-iēbāmūs, <i>We were hearing</i>
And-iēbās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>	And-iēbātīs, <i>ye were hearing</i>
And-iēbāt, <i>he was hearing.</i>	And-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i> ¹

¹ The Imperf. also means, *I used-to-hear, thou wast-wont-to-hear, he used-to-hear, &c.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivī,	<i>I have heard, or I heard</i>	Aud-ivīmūs,	<i>We have heard, or we heard</i>
Aud-ivistī,	<i>thou hast heard, or thou heardst</i>	Aud-ivistīs,	<i>ye have heard, or ye heard</i>
Aud-ivīt,	<i>he has heard, or he heard.</i>	Aud-ivērunt,	<i>they have heard, or they heard.</i>
		or -ivērē,	

5. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>	Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>thou wilt</i>		Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye will</i>	
Aud-ivērit,	<i>he will</i>		Aud-ivērint,	<i>they will</i>	

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēram,	<i>I had heard</i>	Aud-ivērāmūs,	<i>We had heard</i>
Aud-ivērās,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	Aud-ivērātīs,	<i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-ivērāt,	<i>he had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-ī,	<i>Hear thou.</i>	Aud-ītē,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
---------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-īto,	<i>Thou must hear</i>	Aud-ītōtē,	<i>Ye must hear</i>
Aud-īto,	<i>he must hear.</i>	Aud-īunto,	<i>they must hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>	Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear¹</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātīs,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>	Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētīs,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear</i>	Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>	Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We may</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>thou mayst</i>		Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye may</i>	
Aud-ivērit,	<i>he may</i>		Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>	

¹ Audīāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us hear*.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Audīvissem, <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>		Aud-īvissemūs, <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
Aud-īvisseēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>			Aud-īvisseētis, <i>ye would</i>	
Aud-īvisseēt, <i>he would</i>			Aud-īvissent, <i>they would</i>	
	} <i>heard.</i>		} <i>heard.</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	} Aud-īrē,	<i>to hear.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF.		
	} Aud-īvisse,	<i>to have heard.</i>
	} Aud-ītūrūs	<i>to be about</i>
FUTURE.		
	essē,	<i>to hear.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendī, <i>of hearing</i>
Dat. Aud-iendō, <i>for hearing</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum, <i>the hearing</i>
Abl. Aud-iendō, <i>by hearing.</i>

SUMMES.

Aud-ītum, <i>to hear.</i>
Aud-ītū, <i>in hearing.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Aud-iens, <i>-entis,</i>
<i>[&c., hearing.]</i>
FUTURE. Aud-ītūrūs (<i>ā, um</i>),
<i>[about to hear.]</i>

121 In the Fourth, (as in the First) Conjugation, the omission of *v* causes the following

CONTRACTED FORMS.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT
Audii	Audiimns	Audiero		Audieram
Audiisti (audisti)	Audiistis (audistis)	Audieris, &c.		Audieras
Audiit	Audiērunt	Audierit, &c.		Audierat, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.		PERFECT.
Audiissem (audissem)	Audiissemus (audissemus)	Audierim
Audiisses (audisses)	Audiissetis (audissetis)	Audieris
Audiisset (audisset)	Audiissent (audissent)	Audierit, &c.

INFINITIVE-PERFECT.

Audiisse (audisse).

THE LATIN PERFECT.

The Latin Tenses are inferior to the English in fulness as will be seen from the following Table:

Capto, I catch.

	Simple or Indefinite.	Incomplete.	Complete.
Present.	<i>I catch</i> capto	<i>I am catching</i> capto	<i>I have caught</i> CAPTĀVI ¹
Future.	<i>I shall catch</i> captābo	<i>I shall be catching</i> captābo	<i>I shall have caught</i> captāvero
Past.	<i>I caught</i> CAPTĀVI	<i>I was catching</i> captābam	<i>I had caught</i> captāveram ²

[22 The Latin Perfect, *captāvi*, has to express two English Tenses, and though it is always called "Perfect," i.e. *complete*, it is really not always Perfect or Complete, but:

1. Sometimes *Complete Present*, *captāvi*, *I have caught*.
2. Sometimes *Simple Past*, *captāvi*, *I caught*.

¹ That this Present Complete Tense, *I have caught*, is really a Present (though the result of a past action) may be seen from such a sentence as "*I have caught this fish*," which means "*I have (present) this fish—in my pocket, basket,*" &c. Until the pupil clearly understands that the English Complete Present is a *Present* and not a *Past* Tense, he will never intelligently master the rule for the Latin Sequence of Tenses.

² Besides these, other columns might have been added by substituting "been catching" for "caught" in the third column: *I have been catching*, *I shall have been catching*, *I had been catching*, and by substituting "about to catch" for "catching" in the second column.

These two meanings of the Latin Perf. are called (1) "the Perfect with *habe*," (2) "the Perfect without *habe*."

EXERCISE XXXIII.

123 **APPOSITION.**—When two Nouns (or a Noun and Pronoun) are placed together without a Conjunction, so that one describes the other, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and both are in the same case.

124 When a Noun is in Apposition to a Name, the Name stands *second in English*, but *first in Latin*.

<i>The renowned general Balbus overcomes the enemy.</i>	<i>Balbus, imp̄rator clārissim⁹ (70), hostem sup̄erat.</i>
<i>I will give a book to the industrious boy Tullius.</i>	<i>Tullio, puēro diligentissim⁹, librum dōnābo.</i>

125 "Ir" WITH ENGLISH PRESENT often refers to *Future time*, and must then be translated by Latin Fut. Simple or Fut. Perfect :

I will give it if he asks. *Dābo si rogābit (or -āverit).*

1. *Sidera iter nautis monstrabant.* 2. *Hieme nautae neſtatem laudabunt.* 3. *Dābo librum ei, ſi rogabit.*¹ 4. *Nonne puellam diligentem laudabitis?* 5. *Qui nos culpatis, nonne vos ipſos emendatis?* 6. *Cur me vituperabatis (32), vos ipſos laudabatis?* 7. *Agricolae ngrum, equum militi donabimus.* 8. *Judici, viro juſtiſſimo,*² *rex injuſtus inimicus erat.* 9. *Tulliae, puellae optimae, cur non praemium donas?* 10. *Nemo Germanorum, gentis fortiſſimae, tam pravos mores laudat.*³

1. *You, O women, who praised (108) injuſtice (34), will rightly pay the penalty.* 2. *To you, O ſiſter, who blamed your brother, (your) brother himſelf gives this gift.* 3. *Thoſe whoſe morals are depraved, you were right in not praiſing (trans. you rightly did not praiſe).* 4. *His excellent mother (trans. his mother, a moſt excellent woman), who loved you exceedingly, praiſed you too-much.* 5. *Will you point out the way to us, (you) who your-*

125a ¹ The Latin Future, after *ſi*, muſt be translated by English Present.

126 ² Lit. *the judge, a very juſt man*, but in English we ſay *the very juſt judge*, or, more commonly (70), *the juſt judge*. Why is *viro* Dat.? Ans. *Dat. in Appoſition with judici.* Why is *gentis* (Sent. 10) Genitive?

126a ³ In Appoſition, write the literal English firſt and the idiomatic English afterwards: e.g. "*Germanis, genti fortiſſimae*" lit., *to the Germans, a very brave race*, i.e., *to the brave race of the Germans*. N.B.—Two Nouns in Appoſition need not be of the ſame Number.

et *cc* often *err*? 6. *We used to praise the conduct of the* (126) *in* *centurion* *Tullius*. 7. *I shall not punish the boy if he* *in* *proves* (125) *his conduct*. 8. *They will not err if the leader* *point* *out the way to them*.

EXERCISE XXXIV.¹

127 If the Subject consists of two Nouns or Pronouns, the Verb is in the Plural; but the Verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third.

1. Si tu et frater tuus peccaveritis (125a), leges vos castigabunt.
2. Iudicem, qui multo iudicaverat, ego et frater meus graviter culpavimus.
3. Piscator et nauta, qui iter militibus antea non traversant, jam ipsi erraverunt.
4. Milites ferro ignique agros regis sui vastaverunt.
5. Hieme, si venti flaverint, nautae mare formidabunt.
6. Cur Tullium, hominem innoxentissimum, castigavistis?
7. Agriculae stultissimi aestate calorem, hieme frigus culpaverunt.
8. Rex militibus, indigni, dono (28), equos pulcherrimos donaverat.
9. Nonne vobis haec dona ego et Tullius donavimus?
10. Graeci Trojanos equo ligneo, dono pernicioso (126a) superaverunt.
11. Qui virtutem in maximo simulavere, ei jam maxime erravere.
12. Quos quondam castigastis, ei iterum peccarunt.

- ¹ 1. *You and I have presented excellent gifts to his mother.*²
2. *Why did the unjust judge Tullius* (126) *chastise the innocent Balbus* (trans. *Balbus, a most innocent man*)?³
3. *In winter, O husbandmen, you had blamed the cold, in summer the heat.*
4. *The king had given a horse to the same soldier whom he had before blamed.*
5. *If you overcome* (trans. *shall have overcome*) *the enemy, O soldiers, all will praise you.*
6. *Did* (127b) *not you and Tullius blame the kind Balbus?*
7. *The women dreaded the sea because the winds had blown violently.*
8. *Did not you, O Greeks, present to the Trojans the destructive gift of a wooden horse* (trans. *a wooden horse, a most destructive gift*)?
9. *Why did you, who pointed out the road to others, yourselves err?*
10. *You and Balbus blamed Alexander, the most illustrious of generals.*

¹ For this and future Exercises the pupil must look out the words in the Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies at the end of the book.

² In English we say "you and I," in Latin the order is reversed, "Ego et tu."

³ The English Simple Past inserts *did*, when used negatively or interrogatively: "you blamed"; but "*did* you blame?" "you *did* not blame." But all three are expressed by the Latin Perfect.

127a

127b

THE INFINITIVE.

128

The Infinitive (though not declinable like a Noun) is nevertheless used as the Subject or Direct Object of a Verb :

*To err is human.
Boys like to jump.*

*Errāre (nom.) humānum est.
Pueri saltāre (acc.) amant.*

The Infinitive, although used as Subject or Object, may itself have an Object, and may be modified by an Adverb.

*The woman desires to get wealth.
To have gained fame honourably
is sweet.*

*Mulier divitias pārāre optat.
Fāmam hōnestē pārāvisse
dulcē (34) est.*

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Peccare facile est, mores emendare difficillimum (est). 2. Quis non divitias comparare optat? 3. Saltare dulce est puellis, senibus autem molestissimum. 4. Aestare omnes nare amamus.¹ 5. Melius est virtutem quam aurum parare. 6. Amicum amare praesentem dulce est; desiderare absentem est tristissimum.¹ 7. Peccare leve est plerisque pueris; senibus peccavisse est acerbissimum. 8. Pericula superare saepe durum est; superasse semper dulcissimum est.
1. *It is easier to blame than to praise. 2. To whom is it not pleasant to swim in summer? 3. It is sad for an old man to have sinned. 4. To all it is most pleasant to have overcome dangers by wise counsels. 5. Most men desire to get gold and silver. 6. You and I love to walk by night; Tullius and his (98, 2) brother love to walk by day. 7. It is very easy to swim; it is very difficult to swim well. 8. To have erred is sad; to err is sadder.*

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, PROHIBITIONS.

129

The word for *not* in commands is *nē*. But this is seldom used with the Present Imperative except in Poetry, and seldom with (what is sometimes called) the Future Imperative, *except in legal forms*. Consequently, for the negative Imperative—

¹ Omnes agrees with "nos" understood.

² Absentem agrees with "amicum" understood

RULE.—Use *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive of the Second Person, and with the Present Subjunctive of other Persons.¹

	<i>Singular.</i>	
<i>Do not love.</i>		<i>Nē āmāvēris.</i>
<i>Let him not love.</i>		<i>Nē āmet.</i>
	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Do not love.</i>		<i>Nē āmāvērītis.</i>
<i>Let them not love.</i>		<i>Nē āment.</i>

The First and Third Persons Plural of the Subjunctive can be used, with or without *nē*, in an Imperative sense :

<i>Let us (not) love.</i>	<i>(Nē) āmēmus.</i>
<i>Let him amend his conduct.</i>	<i>Ēmendet mōres.</i>

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. *Emendate mores vestros.*
2. *O tempora, O puer, patri.*
3. *Ne sotes poenam vitent.*
4. *Ne castigaveritis insontem; ne mortuum culpaveritis.*
5. *Huic magistratui omnes cives ohtemperanto.*
6. *Amenius amicos, inimicos ne vitupereinus.*
7. *Præceptor discipulos verberibus paucis castigato.*
8. *Regem, si injustus est, ne tu laudaveris.*
9. *Virgines Vestales ignem curanto.*
10. *Judicem justum laudā; injustum culpā, sed ne vituperaveris.*

1. *Let us love absent friends.*
2. *Let us prepare arms; let not the enemy overcome us.*
3. *Take-care-of his children, O friends; do not blame the dead.*
4. *Do not appease the gods, O foolish (men), with victims; appease them with pious deeds.*
5. *Let (legal) ten maidens carry the image of Diana.*
6. *Let us praise virtue, let us not punish the good.*
7. *Tullius is guilty; let him not avoid punishment.*
8. *Let us not blame those-who-are-worthy (i.e. the worthy) of (28) praise (5a).*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—I.

(Expressing purpose.)

The Subjunctive Mood (besides other uses which will be hereafter mentioned) is used when a Verb is *subjoined* to another Verb, in order to express purpose.

¹ The Subjunctive, when not subjoined to some principal Verb, is sometimes called the Conjunctive; and some use the term Conjunctive in all instances instead of Subjunctive. For the method of expressing a prohibition by *nōli* with the Infinitive, see Par. 160.

131 In such cases, *that* or *in order that* is expressed by *ut*; *that* . . . not, by *nē*

132 The Tenses of the Subjunctive are:

(1) *Present, after (a) Pres. (whether Simple or Complete); after (b) Future Indic., and after (c) Imperative.*

(2) *Past, after Past Tenses :*

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. (a) <i>I punish, or
have punished¹</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{he may} \\ \text{amend} \\ \text{his} \\ \text{conduct.} \end{array} \right.$ | (a) <i>Castigo, or
Castigāvi</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{puerum ut} \\ \text{mores emendat.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| (-) <i>I shall punish</i> | | (b) <i>Castigābo</i> | |
| (c) <i>Punish</i> | | (c) <i>Castigā</i> | |
| 2. (a) <i>I punished</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{he might} \\ \text{amend} \\ \text{his} \\ \text{conduct.} \end{array} \right.$ | (a) <i>Castigāvi</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{puerum ut} \\ \text{mores} \\ \text{emendāret.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| (b) <i>I was punishing</i> | | (b) <i>Castigābam</i> | |
| (c) <i>I had punished</i> | | (c) <i>Castigāveram</i> | |

133 * CAUTION.—The precise meaning of the ambiguous word *castigāvi* cannot be ascertained until we see whether it is followed by the Present or Imperf. Subj. If it is followed by the Present, it must be rendered *I have punished*; if by the Imperf., *I punished*.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Nauta sidera servabit ne ex itinere erret. 2. Urbem rex aedificabat ut in eā quattuor millia civium habitarent. 3. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocent. 3a. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocarent. 4. Agricola agros araverat ut segetem sibi pararet. 5. Parate arma, cives, ut hostem propulsetis. 6. Cives arma celeriter paraverant ne milites urbem expugnarent. 7. Castigavi te ut mores emendes. 8. Senex in horto ambulavit ut floribus se (35) pulcherrimis delectaret. 9. Rex judicem injustum capite multavit ut ceteri judices recte judicent.² 10. Balbum praemio decoravi ut litteras amet, Tullium heri (*adv.*) casti-

¹ *I have punished* is really a (complete) Present Tense: Par. 122, note.

² See caput in Vocab.: capite may be parsed as Abl. of Instr., as it is here used to denote the punishment of death.

gavi ne iterum peccaret. 11. Germanos, gentem ferocissimam (126a), armis propulsate, ne fines vestros vastent. 12. Aliis equis aliis arma donemus (118), ne viam hostibus monstrent.

1. *Let us lay-waste the lands of the enemy that they may not fight a second time.* 2. *The citizens will point out the way for us that we may not err.* 3. *We pointed out the way for the beautiful maiden (124) Tullia that she might not err.* 4. *Our (men) will build for you, O Tullius (13), a great house, that your friends may dwell in it.* 5. *Let us build a temple and prepare victims that we appease Jupiter.* 6. *We have prepared arms that we may repulse the enemy.* 7. *We chastised the boy that he might improve his (98) conduct.* 8. *He had preserved the letter of (his) sister that you might not blame her.* 9. *Why do you not walk in the garden that you may delight yourselves with the scent of the beautiful flowers (5a)?* 10. *He was hastening into the garden that he might show the flowers to his friends.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—II.

(Expressing a Dependent Question.)

Hitherto the Subjunctive in Latin has been expressed by the English *may* or *might*; we now come to idioms where the ordinary English *Indicative* has to be expressed by the Latin Subjunctive.

- 134** 1. A DIRECT OR INDEPENDENT QUESTION is a question in the words of the speaker :

Does he love me?

Does he not love me?

Num mē amat?

Nōne mē amat?

- 135** 2. AN INDIRECT OR DEPENDENT QUESTION is one that is the Subject or Object of a Verb (called the Principal Verb) :

I will ask {whether he loves me.

{whether he does not love me.

Interrogābo {num mē amet.

{nōne mē amet.

- 136** RULE.—An Indirect or Dependent Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive.

The Tense, in an Indirect Question, depends on the Tense of the Principal Verb; and the rule is, as above

(132), that *Present Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Present Tenses of the Indicative, and Past Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Past Tenses of the Indicative.*

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|------------------------|----------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Ask | { | (a) whether they love, | Interrogā | { | (a) num mē |
| I ask. | | or are loving me. | Interrogō | | āment. |
| I will ask | | (b) whether they loved | Interrogābo | | (b) num mē |
| I have asked | | me ¹ | Interrogāvi | | āmāverint. ² |
| | | (a) whether they | | | |
| | | loved, or | | | |
| 2. I was asking | { | were lov- | Interrogābam | { | (a) num mē |
| I asked | | ing me. | Interrogāvi | | āmārent. |
| I had asked | | (b) whether they | Interrogāveram | | (b) num mē |
| | | had loved | | | āmāvissent. ² |
| | | me. | | | |

137 (1) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is either Imperative, or Indic. Pres., Fut., or "Perf. with *have*"—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Pres. Subj., or Perf. Subjunctive.

138 (2) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is Indic. Imperf., Pluperf., or "Perf. without *have*" (i.e. Simple Past)—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Imperf. Subj., or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

139 *Quidem* (67) *on the one hand*, is often followed by the enclitic *vēro*, *however*, *but yet* (to be distinguished from *vērē*, *truthfully*). *Ēquidem*, a form of *quidem*, is often used with the First Person in the Nom. to mean *I on the one hand*, i.e. *I at all events, I for my part*.

A. 1. Hodie quidem paremus (118a) arina; cras vero hostem propulsemus. 2. Tu quidem me interrogas quid fecerim; ego vero nihil respondeo. 3. Balbo quidem omnia monstravi; tibi autem nihil. 4. Quæro cur fratrum alterum quidem laudes, alterum autem culpes. 5. Equidem hoc affirmo, tu vero unus (96) negas. 6. Interrogat cur mihi quidem multa des, Tullio autem nihil.

¹ A common error is to write "*āmārent*," in l. b., "because the English is not *have loved*, but *loved*;" but the Latin Perf. Subj. (like the Latin Perf. Indic.) represents *loved*, as well as *have loved*.

² Do not translate the Latin Subjunctive in a Dependent Question by *may*, *might*, *could*, *should*, &c.; in a Dependent Question, it must be translated by the English Indicative.

140 Quisquē, quaequē, quodquē (*pron. form quicquē*), *each*, often follows a Superl. (with a Sing. Verb) to denote *all* :

*All the worst men deny this.
This is denied by all the best
citizens.*

*Pessimus quisquē hōc nēgat.
Hōc ab optimō quōquē ci-
vium nēgātur.*

B. 1. Interrogabimur num miles fidem servaverit.¹ 2. Equidem rogo nunc puer vera narraverit; tu vero nihil affirmas. 3. Regina interrogavit num fabri aedes aedificavissent (*or aedificassent*). 4. Renuntiate mihi, O exploratores, num hostis in eo loco insidias parat. 5. Miles centurionibus non renuntiavit num hostes proelium pararent (*were preparing*). 6. Valde dubito num nuntius vera narraverit. 7. Sapientissimus quisque nostrum (93) dubitabat num milites vera narrarent. 8. Nonno rogabis puerum num ita peccaverit? 9. Explorabamus num hostes huc properarent. 10. Ne dubitemus, O anici, num hostes arma parent. 11. Si nobis renuntiabitis quo in loco hostes insidias parent, fortissimum quemque civium convocabimus ut eos propulemus. 12. Rogavit patrem num domum (139b) pararet ut nos in ea habitarem.

1. *I for my part will ask whether the enemy laid-waste our territories; but the messenger will not relate the truth (i.e. true things).* 2. *He asked whether the enemy took the city by storm.*² 3. *Bring-back-word to me, O friend, whether the enemy is hastening hither.* 4. *Will you not ask all (140) the bravest of our-men whether they prepared arms?* 5. *Call-together the citizens that the enemy may not lay-waste our lands.* 6. *I had asked your father whether he had built a home that your brothers might dwell in it.* 7. *I doubt whether the enemy has laid waste these lands.* 8. *Let us explore whether the enemy is hastening hither.* 9. *You were asking the boy whether he had thus sinned.* 10. *They asked whether he had not (135) called-together the citizens.*

140a ¹ Note that in this and similar sentences (where the Perf. Subj follows the Pres. or Fut. Indic.) there is often an ambiguity. It may mean "whether the soldier kept his word," or "whether the soldier has kept his word." Both translations should be given.

140b ² Here, for *took*, may be read *had taken*; and therefore the Pluperf. Subj. may be used. N.B.—Whenever, after a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the English Simple Past, e.g. *took*, may be replaced by the English Complete Past, e.g. *had taken*, the Pluperf. Subj. may be used in Latin. The Imperf. Subj. might mean *was taking*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

141 *Not even* is *nē...quidem*: but *nē* must be separated from *quidem* by the word which *even* modifies:

(1) *Not even you will deny this.* *Nē tū quidem hūc nūgābis.*¹

(2) *Not even the smallest tree.* *Nē mīnima quidem arbor.*¹

141a The Latin for *even* (without a negative) is *vēl*, or *ētiam*, coming before the word emphasized.

This is clear even to the blind, *Haec ētiam caecis āperta;*
easy even for boys. *haec vēl pūeris fācīlīa.*²

142 RULE.—Some Verbs signifying (1) *pleasing, obeying, helping*, (2) *displeasing, disobeying, and harming*, take the Dative.

1. *Dolere inutile est.* 2. *Graviter dolebam quod (conj.) tu, O fili, pārentibus tuis non pāres.* 3. *Pueri patribus pārento.* 4. *Leges justae bonis civibus placebunt.* 5. *Milites ducem timebant, qui plurimos eorum (91) minis et suppliciis crudelissimis terruerat.* 6. *Nunc quidem monemus; mox vero, verberibus nisi pārebis, te coercebimus.* 7. *Ne tu, senex benevolentissime, pessimum exemplum pueris (129) praeberis.* 8. *Epaminondas exemplum optimum omnibus imperatoribus praeiuit.* 9. *Cui non avium cantus placet, eum ne cithara quidem movebit.* 10. *Cur puellam eam minis terretis, quam nemo docuit, cui nemo exemplum bonum praeiuit?* 11. *Senioribus ne displicueris; patri matriquē obtempera.* 12. *Alexander, victor clarissimus, Poro, Indorum regi, veniam dedit.*³

1. *To teach is more useful than to accept.* 2. *Why did you not set a better example to your son?* 3. *Do not terrify this girl with threats.* 4. *If you obey your parents, your children will obey you.* 5. *Not even the most costly banquets will please the sick (men).* 6. *Do not displease your mother, O boys; obey (your) elders, who advise you well.* 7. *You, who terrify others, yourself fear all things.* 8. *He does not obey even his own (141, 2)*

142 ¹ N.B.—(a) In this phrase alone it is allowable to use *nē* with the Indicative Mood. (b) *Quidem*, without *nē*, never means *even*. (c) In translating *nē...quidem*, be careful to put *even* before the word that precedes *quidem*: *not even you, not even the smallest.*

142d ² *Sunt*, (or *est*), is often omitted where the omission causes no ambiguity.

³ Why is *Pōro* Dat.? Why is *rēgi*? See Par. 123.

father. 9. *Those whom you were advising were wiser and better than those whom you had not advised.* 10. *You are destroying, O soldiers, a most prosperous city with fire and sword.*

EXERCISE XL.

The Perfects of some Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -vi instead of -ui: but the parts of Verb *after* u and i are always the same, e.g. *dēleo, dēlēvi*:

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mōnu-</i>	} -i, -isti, -it, &c.
	<i>dēlēv-</i>	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>mōnu-</i>	} -eram, -eras, -erat, &c.
	<i>dēlēv-</i>	
<i>2nd. Fut.</i>	<i>mōnu-</i>	} -ero, -eris, -erit, &c.
	<i>dēlēv-</i>	

1. Interrogabo civem nonne legibus pareat. 2. Interrogavi regis filium cur non melius exemplum ceteris militibus praeberet. 3. Coerce linguam istam ne forte tibi noceat. 4. Sapientes corpus exercebant ut inentem sanam habeant. 5. Renuntia ei num milites jus agricolis nostros terruerint. 6. Interrogavi fortissimum quemque (140) militum nonno hostes urbem jam delevissent. 7. Num dulce est olim multa habuisse, nunc habero nihil? 8. Qui legibus parebit eum loges non torrebunt. 9. Ne tu invidiam timueris; sed virtute malevolos, invidos modestia coerce. 10. Plurimum pecuniae eidem mulieri donavit quam antea minis terruerat.¹ 11. Barbari tantam urbem habent quantam ipsi non habemus.² 12. Dux tantum pecuniae donavit militibus quantum rogaverunt. 13. Interrogabo adolescentem cur hesternae nocte tam crudelibus minis fratrem meum terruerit.

1. *Do not restrain a young-man too much lest he obey you, (but) not virtue.* 2. *Why did you not restrain the young-men (127b) that they might obey their parents?* 3. *Since not even punishment terrified him, certainly threats will not terrify him.* 4. *Why do you not obey him to whom you owe so-much?* 5. *Ask whether the young-man whose (118a) death is now known to us was older than my brother.* 6. *I did not terrify the boy with threats, lest (the) work should become-distasteful to him.* 7. *I asked the brave centurion Tullius whether the arrow had hurt him.* 8. *Let us give rewards to all (140) the bravest (trans. each most*

¹ Why is pecuniae Gen.? See Par. 71, and add tantum and quantum as taking Partitive Genitives.

² So great a city as we ourselves have not, i.e. a greater city than we have.

brave) of the soldiers that they may set an example to the rest. 9. Do you now terrify with threats her to whom you gave so large a sum (trans. so-much) of money? 10. The unjust king Balbus had (86) one (man's) silver, another (man's) lands, another (man's) cattle.

EXERCISE XLI

Several Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in English may be regarded as implying a purpose, and hence:

143 RULE.—Verbs of asking, commanding, advising, and striving, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the Subjunctive.¹

Take care to teach him, i.e. in order that you may teach him. Carā *ut* eum dōcēās.

He asked me not to hasten. Rōgāvit mē *nē* prōpērārem.

143a N.B.—As the translation of English *to* by the Latin Inf. is one of the commonest errors of beginners, it is well to recollect that the English Infinitive is *never to be rendered by the Latin Infinitive except where (128) it is the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

1. Imperavit agricolis imperator ut frumentum compararent.
2. Curate ut prima vigilia adventum hostium expectetis.
3. Admonuit nos senex ut parentibus nostris semper parere-mus.
4. Rogabo adolescentem ut junioribus exemplum melius praebeat.
5. Ne optimus quidem praeceptorum omnia docebit.
6. Sapientissimus quisque curabit ut linguam coerceat.
7. Quotiens imperavi tibi ut mores emendes!
8. Cave ne viam aliis monstres, ipse tamen erres.
9. Orabat explorator, homo mendacissimus (126a), ut sibi veniam darem.
10. Quantum cuique debetis, tantum curate ut detis.
11. Imperavit dux militibus ne mercatorem detinerent.

1. Give-orders to the soldiers to prepare their arms.
2. He gave-orders to the spies not to show these-things to the king.
3. Our parents advised us to await the arrival of friends.
4. Tullius asked me to teach his (98) children.
5. I beg you to grant

¹ This Rule is sometimes remembered by the following rhyme:

"With ask, command, advise, and strive,
By *ut* translate Infinitive."

pardon to the wicked Balbus. 6. Have you not again and again advised that fellow (iste) to restrain his tongue? 7. If you teach (125), take care to teach well. 8. Take care that you do not displease those whom you are bound (dobeo) to please.¹ 9. On the fourth day we gave-orders to him to call-together three thousand (806) soldiers.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

- 144** Verbs of *preventing* are followed by *quo-mīnus* (*by-which-the-less*) and the Subjunctive.

I have hindered the man from speaking, lit. by-which-the-less he may speak. *Prōmīnem prōhibēi quōmīnus dicat.*

- 145** The words *nōn est dūbium quīn*, *it is not doubtful but that*, i.e. *there is no doubt that*, are followed by the Latin Subjunctive, (though the English is Indicative):

There is no doubt that he said this (N.B. not may have said). *Nōn dūbium est quīn laeo dixerit.*

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses must be observed. *Like follows like*: (see Par. 137).

There was no doubt that he feared (N.B. not would fear). *Nōn dūbium erat quīn timeret.²*

EXERCISE XLII.

- 146** Et sometimes means *even* or *also*:

• “Good morning.” “Good “Salvē,” (lit. “Be well.”)
morning to you too.” “Salvē et tu.”

1. Aut discite aut discedite: sors tertia hīc nulla est. 2. Nostri, si urbem fortiter defendent, hostem facile vincent. 3. Si tu scribes, ego legam. 4. Prohibui istum quominus vincat. 5. Multa dicere facilius est quam multa discere. 6. Non

¹ What is the government of *whom*?

145a ² Probably the *doubt* is regarded as a kind of *prevention*; but instead of *quōmīnus*, there is used an old form of *quo*, viz. *quī*, followed by *ne*, the two words *quī-ne* being contracted into *quīn*.

145b As regards the Tense to be used after “*nōn dūbium erat quīn*,” the Pluperf. should be used when (but only when) *had* is, or could be, inserted in the English: *there was no doubt that the woman (had) killed him*, “*nōn erat dūbium quīn mulier eum interfecisset.*”

dubium est quin hostes aciem jam instruant : instruito et (146) vestram, centuriones. 7. Liberi Deos quotidie orabant ut pater tuto (adv.) viveret.¹ 8. Caesar materiam parabat ut Rhenum ponte jungeret. 9. Num vera dicis? Matremne terruisti? Nonne igitur rubes? 10. Scribamus diligenter, ne nos praeceptor culpet. 11. Hastas in terra figite, milites. 12. Non dubium erat quin cives urbem fortiter defenderent.

1. *I advise you to depart.* 2. *There is no doubt that the wise learn daily.* 3. *They asked us to fix our spears in the earth.* 4. *If you read (125), (my) friends, (99a) I will write.* 5. *It is often more useful to learn than to speak.* 6. *We shall conquer the enemy, if you (99), O citizens, defend your city.* 7. *The leader will take care to draw up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Say what-is-true (trans. true-things), my friends; let us not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things).* 9. *There was no doubt that the boys wrote carefully.* 10. *I will hinder that-fellow from conquering.*

EXERCISE XLIII.

(Vincō, vincio, fingo, figo.)

- 147** Almost all Superlatives, and many Positives, in -us, -a, -um, make Adverbs in -ē, e.g. celerrimē, difficillimē, tardē.
- 148** Almost all Comparatives in -ior use the Nent. in -ius as an Adverb: tardius, more (rather, too) slowly; diligentius, more (rather, too) diligently.
- 149** The Adverbs, like the Adjectives (64), have more than one meaning: thus, tardius, besides meaning (1) more slowly, may also mean (2) rather slowly, or (3) too slowly.
1. Mettū, Albanum imperatorem, equi distraxerunt. 2. Non dubium est quin Caesar multa milia Gallorum vicerit. 3. Quis dubitabat quin centurio, homo crudelissimus, captivos vinxisset? 4. Caesar Rhenum ponte junxit, (32) aciem summa celeritate instruxit. 5. Si celerrime scribes, amici tui fortasso difficillime legent. 6. Interrogabo hominem num has litteras scripserit. 7. Interrogavi patrem nonne dilexisset duos liberorum, ceteros neglexisset. 8. Nonne commentus collegisti? Nonne equites peditesque contraxisti? 9. Non dubium erat quin errores alios correxisset, alios neglexisset. 10. Falsano finxisti, o perfidissimorum obsidum filii? 11. Centurio militem interrogabat eum hastam in terra fixisset. 12. Mene interrogas, mi fili, eum hoc dixerim?

¹ Quotidie is more correctly spelt cottidie or cotidie.² Mi is the irregular Vocative Masc. Sing. of meus.

1. *Do not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things), my son.* 2. *I will ask him whether (his) leader bridged the river.* 3. *Do not write the letter too-quickly (149) lest your friends read it with-very-great-difficulty (use adverb).* 4. *There is no doubt that he wrote this letter.* 5. *There was no doubt that the general had collected supplies, (and) had drawn (his) army together.* 6. *Take care, my friend, to correct those errors of-yours; do not (5a) neglect even (141) one (error).* 7. *Have you asked the centurion why the soldiers fixed their spears in the earth?* 8. *There was no doubt that the hostages had feigned what-was-false.* 9. *Ask the centurion why he bound the captives.* 10. *I hindered the boy from exulting; but there was no doubt that he had conquered.*

EXERCISE XLIV.

151 RULE.—Cum, when, if followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect, generally requires the Subjunctive Mood.¹ "

1. Interrogabo num puer versus heri didicerit. 2. Hostes, cum tuba cecinisset, in campum descenderunt. 3. Statui puerum corrigere ut diligenter disceret. 4. Dux, cum exercitum collegisset, in Galliam contendit. 5. Orabunt imperatorem milites ut aciem instruat. 6. Non dubium est quin hostes jam in urbem irruperint, aedificia igni absumant, omnia clamore et caedo turbent. 7. Quod (*trans. as if* quod *were* hoc) cum intelligerem, statim interrogabam nuntium cur haec non antea dixisset. 8. Correxī errores eius ne amicis suis temeritate sua graviter noceret. 9. Interrogabat imperator nonne jussa sua neglexissem, num murum fortiter defendissem?
1. *When I heard this (i.e. which things when I had understood), I determined to obey (142) the general.* 2. *Correct these errors, my (151) son, lest they injure your friends.* 3. *When he had collected supplies, the general closed the gates of the city.* 4. *What do you say, (my) friends? Do you ask me why I neglected this task?* 5. *There was no doubt that traitors had closed the gates of the two citadels.* 6. *Who hindered the citizens from defending the wall?* 7. *When the trumpet sounded (i.e. had sounded), not even the most cowardly of the soldiers neglected the signal.* 8. *At-the-time-when my friend (152) was hastening into the city, I was walking in the garden.*

151a ¹ With these Tenses, cum generally implies not simply *at-the-time-when*, but *because* (or at least some logical connection), and "Cum causal is followed by the Subjunctive."

152 But when cum simply means *at-the-time-when*, it may be followed by the Indicative Imperfect or Pluperfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLV.

Dum vos dormitis, hostes castra muniunt. 2. Audistisne clamorem hostium qui, jam vino pleni, captivum male custodiunt? ¹ 3. Qui bene servit patriae, ei (*dat.*) cives libenter servient. 4. Non dubium est quin te pater optime crudiverit (9a). 5. Qui (107, 1) bene corpus tuum vestiisti, bene nutristi, nonne tu etiam mentem tuam simili cura erudies? ² 6. Cives legibus obediunt. 7. Mors mihi spiritum, non vitam finiet. 8. Interroga te cur hesternae nocte captivum tam male custodiveris. 9. Non dubium erat quin hostes castra diligenter munissent. 10. Audite alios (*others*) ut alii te audiant. 11. Ne tu punieris puellam: patrem eius puniamus, qui poena dignus est. 12. Mater rogavit me ne puellam punirem.

1. *Do you sleep? O foolish men, while the enemy are bursting into the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the soldiers guarded the captive badly.* 3. *Why did you not train the boy better that he might obey (his) elders.* 4. *I ask you why you punished the innocent child Tulliola (124).* 5. *Let us ask the judge not to punish the boy, who is undeserving of punishment.* 6. *You who nourished your children's bodies with so great care, will you not, O my friends, train also their minds?* 7. *We who had never obeyed our parents (108), punished our children because they did not obey us.* 8. *Train your mind that you may learn very-many (things).* 9. *When we had fortified our camp, the enemy descended into the plain (5a).* 10. *Have you asked the boy whether he has lost his books?*

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Vēnio, rēpērio.)

1. Imperator cum tandem nostros vicisset, plurimos gravissima catena vinxit. 2. Serius (149) venistis: comites enim vestri hesternae nocte venerunt. 3. Interrogas cur aurum non reppereris: non repperisti, quia in hac terra aurum non est. 4. Non dubium erat quin serius venissent; sed rex eis veniam dedit. 5. Si forte cras venies, fortasse quod amisisti reperies. 6. Quamdiu dux ille vixit, nostri (34) vicerunt. 7. Archimedes multa et mira invenit. ³ 8. Inter-

¹ Vino may be parsed, for the present, as *Acc. of Instr.*: but see Par. 275.

² Though *nōnne* and *num* generally stand first in a Direct Question, they are sometimes preceded by the Clause containing the Relative Pronoun: see Exercise XXXIII, Sentence 5.

³ In English we do not translate *et* coming between *multus* and another co-ordinate Adjective, e.g. "*multa et pulchra*," *many beautiful things*.

rogavi centurionem cur captivos tam gravi catena vinxisset
 9. Jam omnia parabam ut venirem. 10. Ne tu huc veneris :
 nam, si venies, non facile discedes.

1. *Why, O most cruel of men, did you bind with so heavy a chain the innocent (126) Ballus?*
2. *The woman came rather late, but the king granted her pardon.*
3. *We conquered those who lived in that plain.*
4. *There is no doubt that they did not find gold in this land.*
5. *I asked why they came (145b), but no-one heard me.*
6. *I found yesterday night (30) what (i.e. that which) I had lost.*
7. *Will he not tell me why he came here?*
8. *Haet thou come at-length, O best of ours?*

THE VERB *Sum*, *I am*.

Sum, *ſū*, *fūtūrū*, *essē*,—to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sum, I am</i>	<i>Plur. Sūmūs, We are</i>
<i>Es, thou art</i>	<i>Estis, ye are</i>
<i>Est, he is.</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēro, I shall be</i>	<i>Plur. Ērīmūs, We shall be</i>
<i>Ēris, thou wilt be</i>	<i>Ēritis, ye will be</i>
<i>Ērit, he will be.</i>	<i>Ērunt, they will be.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēram, I was</i>	<i>Plur. Ērāmūs, We were</i>
<i>Ērās, thou wast</i>	<i>Ērātis, ye were</i>
<i>Ērāt, he was.</i>	<i>Ērant, they were.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuī, I have been, or I was</i>	<i>P. Fuīmūs, We have been, or we were</i>
<i>Fuistī, thou hast been, or thou wast</i>	<i>Fuistis, ye have been, or ye were</i>
<i>Fuīt, he has been, or he was.</i>	<i>Fuērunt } they have been, or or fuērē } they were.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuëro, I shall have been</i>	<i>P. Fuërimüs, We shall have been</i>
<i>Fuëris, thou wilt have been</i>	<i>Fuëritis, ye will have been</i>
<i>Fuërit, he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuërint, they will have been.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuëram, I had been</i>	<i>P. Fuëramüs, We had been</i>
<i>Fuëras, thou hadst been</i>	<i>Fuëratīs, ye had been</i>
<i>Fuërat, he had been.</i>	<i>Fuërant, they had been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ės, Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur. Ėstē, Be ye.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Estō, Thou shalt or must be</i>	<i>Plur. Estōtē, Ye shall or must be</i>
<i>Estō, he shall or must be, or let him be.</i>	<i>Sunto, they shall or must be, or let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sim, I may be</i>	<i>Plur. Simüs, We may be¹</i>
<i>Sis, thou mayst be</i>	<i>Sitis, ye may be</i>
<i>Sit, he may be.</i>	<i>Sint, they may be.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Essem or förem, } I might be</i>	<i>P. Essēmüs or föremüs, } We might be</i>
<i>Essēs or föres, } thou mightst be</i>	<i>Essētīs or företīs, } ye might be</i>
<i>Essēt or föret, } he might be.</i>	<i>Essent or förent, } they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuërim, I may have been</i>	<i>Fuërimüs, We may have been</i>
<i>Fuëris, thou mayst have been</i>	<i>Fuëritīs, ye may have been</i>
<i>Fuërit, he may have been.</i>	<i>Fuërint, they may have been.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuissēm, I should</i>	<i>Fuissēmüs, We should</i>
<i>Fuissēs, thou wouldst } have</i>	<i>Fuissētīs, ye would } have</i>
<i>Fuissēt, he would } been.</i>	<i>Fuissent, they would } been.</i>

¹ Simus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us be*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	} Essē,	to be.
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,		
	} Fuissē,	to have been.
INFINITIVE FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs essē, or fōrē,	to be about to be.
PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,	about to be.

EXERCISE XLVII.

- Nos Angli sumus, vos estis Galli, ille Germanus est.
- Fuit Troja; fuere Mycenae; tu, Roma, etiam nunc es.
- Nisi ego dux vester (125) ero, victores non eritis.
- Amici eius quondam divites fuerant: tum vero erant pauperrimi.
- Dictorum eius, O pueri, este semper memores.
- Judices justi sunt.
- Gratus esto, puer, si amicos benignos habere optas.
- Ne fueris, O soror, eis molesta qui tibi benevolentissimi semper fuerunt.
- Contentus ero, O iudices, si vos justii fueritis.¹
- Interrogavit num iudices justii essent.
- Cura, rex magne, ut sis munificentior (68a).
- Ego et tu laetissimi sumus.
- Prudentes este ut benefici sitis.

- You and I have been (127) very poor.*
- We (99a) were in the city; he and his brother were in the field.*
- Had you not been ungrateful, sister, to those who were formerly most benevolent to you?*
- If you are (i.e. shall have been) joyful, I shall be most joyful.*
- Take care not to be troublesome to the benevolent.*
- I asked the boy whether he was younger than his [own] brother.*
- There is no doubt that Tullius was very ungrateful.*
- Be brave, O soldiers, that ye may be fortunate.*
- You will be happy, (my) friends, if you are (125) always contented.*
- There was no doubt that Tullius had formerly been very rich, but was now very poor.*

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

- 154 The Participle is partly like an Adjective, in that it agrees with a Noun or Pronoun, and partly like a Verb, in that it may govern an Object.²

The citizen slew the king (when he was, or who was) about to destroy the city with fire.

Civis rēgem urbem jam igni absumptūrum interfecit.

The darts were troublesome to our men (while they were, or who were) waiting for help.

Tēla nostris mōlesta ērant auxiliū expectantibus.

¹ Not if you shall have been just (125). But optas (Sent. 7) is Present, because it refers to Present time.

² The Participle must often be translated by a Conjunction *when*, *while*, &c., or by the Relative Pronoun.

THE DEPENDENT FUTURE INTERROGATIVE.

155 It has been shown above (Par. 136) how to turn a Direct Question in the Past or Present Tenses into an Indirect Question, by changing the Indicative Tenses into corresponding Subjunctive Tenses. But, as there is no Subjunctive Future, we cannot thus turn a Direct Question in the Future, *Will he come?* "*Num veniet?*" into an Indirect Question, *I ask whether he will come.*

For this purpose we employ a form compounded of the Verb *sum*, and the Participle in -rus: *ventūrus sum*, *I am about to come*; *ventūrae sunt*, *they (fem.) are about to come*; *ventūrus fuerās*, *you had been about to come*, &c.

Hence *Will she come?* or *Is she about to come?* becomes, when changed into an Indirect Question:

<i>Ask</i>	} whether the woman is about to come.	<i>interrogā</i>	} <i>num mūlier ventūra sit.</i>
<i>I ask</i>		<i>Interrogō</i>	
<i>I will ask</i>		<i>Interrogābo</i>	
<i>I have asked</i>		<i>Interrogāvi</i>	
<i>I was asking</i>	} whether the woman was about to come	<i>Interrogābam</i>	} <i>num mūlier ventūra esset.</i>
<i>I asked</i>		<i>Interrogāvi</i>	
<i>I had asked</i>		<i>Interrogāveram</i>	

EXERCISE XLVIII.

156 The Latin for *when* in questions, whether dependent or independent, is not *cum* but *quando*.

When will he come?

Quando veniet?

Let us inquire when he will come.

Quaerāmus quando ventūrus sit.

1. Interrogavi puellam num matri obeditura esset.
2. Filium, parentes nutriturum (154a), cur culpas?
3. Obsidibus, haec audientibus, non placuit in urbem venire.¹
4. Interrogate sorores vestras quando patri obediturae sint.
5. Hostibus, jam urbem intransibus, nox molesta erat.
6. Tibi, O puella, graviter erraturae, pauca dicam.
7. Arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, frigus nocuit.
8. Praeceptorī, optime docenti, discipulorum stultitia multum displicuit.
9. Nonne audis patris tui

¹ The Subj. of placuit is venire, see Par. 128. Parse obsidibus; see Par. 142

verba, te culpantis, te in meliora revocantis? 10. Ecce, veniunt gladiatores, principem salutaturi. 11. Non erat dubium quin pauca dictura esset. 12. Vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus es?

1. The speech of the general was troublesome to our men, (since they were) not then expecting an attack. 2. You, (being) yourself about-to-err, blame your brother (who is) erring. 3. You, who are destined soon to ask help (trans. you, soon about-to-ask help) in-vain, now despise your friends (who are) affording help. 4. You ought to hear the voice of your friends (who are) chiding you (and) recalling you to the path of virtue. 5. There was no doubt that his daughter was on the point of coming, i.e. about-to-come. 6. Why, O pupils, did you displease your teacher, (though he was) teaching you most-excellently? 7. When we heard this, we resolved to obey the general (trans. (it) pleased us, hearing these things, to obey, &c.). 8. When will you obey your friends (who are) giving you many gifts and about-to-give you more (gifts)? 9. Let us ask his sisters whether they are going to obey (i.e. about-to-obey) (their) father. 10. The frost destroyed very many vines (when they were) just (jam) about-to-put-forth (their) fruit.

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmōr, āmātūs sum, āmārī, —to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Am-ōr,</i>	<i>I am loved</i>	<i>Am-āmūr,</i>	<i>We are loved</i>
<i>Am-ārīs or</i>	<i>} thou art loved</i>	<i>Am-āmīnī,</i>	<i>ye are loved</i>
<i>ām-ārē,</i>		<i>Am-antūr,</i>	<i>they are loved.¹</i>
<i>Am-ātūr,</i>	<i>he is loved.</i>		

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Am-ābōr,</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>Am-ābīmūr,</i>	<i>We shall be loved</i>
<i>Am-ābērīs or</i>	<i>} thou wilt be loved</i>	<i>Am-ābīmīnī,</i>	<i>ye will be loved</i>
<i>āmābērē,</i>		<i>Am-ābuntūr,</i>	<i>they will be loved.</i>
<i>Am-ābitūr,</i>	<i>he will be loved.</i>		

¹ Cicero rarely uses *āmāre* for *āmārīs*. It is liable to be confused with the Imper. Passive, as well as with the Pres. Inf. Active.

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ābār,	{ I was being loved (115)	Am-ābāmūr,	{ We were being loved
Am-ābārīs or ām-ābārē	{ thou wast being loved	Am-ābāmīnī,	{ ye were being loved
Am-ābātūr,	{ he was being loved.	Am-ābantūr,	{ they were being loved.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs sum or fuī,	{ I have been loved, or was loved	Am-ātī sūmūs or fuīmūs,	{ We have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātūs ēs or fuistī,	{ thou hast been loved, or wast loved	Am-ātī estīs or fuistīs,	{ ye have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātūs est or fuīt,	{ he has been loved, or was loved.	Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	{ they have been loved, or were loved ¹

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēro or fuēro,	{ I shall have been loved	Am-ātī ērimūs or fuērimūs,	{ We shall have been loved
Am-ātūs ērīs or fuērīs,	{ thou wilt have been loved	Am-ātī ēritīs or fuēritīs,	{ ye will have been loved
Am-ātūs ērit or fuērit,	{ he will have been loved.	Am-ātī ērunt or fuērint,	{ they will have been loved.

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēram or fuēram,	{ I had been loved	Am-ātī ērāmūs or fuērāmūs,	{ We had been loved
Am-ātūs ērās or fuērās,	{ thou hadst been loved	Am-ātī ērātīs or fuērātīs,	{ ye had been loved
Am-ātūs ērāt or fuērāt,	{ he had been loved.	Am-ātī ērant or fuērant,	{ they had been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ārē,	Be thou loved.	Am-āmīnī,	Be ye loved.
---------	----------------	-----------	--------------

¹ The Latin Perfect Passive may sometimes be translated by *is, are*: The man is slain, *homo interfectus est*. Hence, when *is, are* imply that an action is completed, translate by the Latin Perfect.

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

<i>Am-ātōr,</i>	<i>Thou must be loved</i>	}	<i>Am-antōr,</i>	{ <i>They must be loved.</i>
<i>Am-ātōr,</i>	<i>he must be loved.</i>			

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Am-ēr,</i>	<i>I may be loved</i>	}	<i>Am-ēmūr,</i>	<i>We may be loved</i>
<i>Am-ērīs or</i>	<i>thou mayst be</i>		<i>Am-ēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye may be loved</i>
<i>ām-ērē,</i>	<i>loved</i>		<i>Am-entūr,</i>	<i>they may be loved</i>
<i>Am-ētūr,</i>	<i>he may be loved.</i>			

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-ārēr,</i>	<i>I might be loved</i>	}	<i>Am-ārēmūr,</i>	<i>We might be loved</i>
<i>Am-ārērīs or</i>	<i>thou mightst be</i>		<i>Am-ārēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye might be loved</i>
<i>ām-ārērē,</i>	<i>loved</i>		<i>Am-ārentūr,</i>	<i>they might be loved.</i>
<i>Am-ārētūr,</i>	<i>he might be loved.</i>			

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-ātūs sim</i>	}	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>Am-ātī simūs</i>	}	<i>We may have</i>
<i>or fuērīm,</i>		<i>loved</i>	<i>or fuērīmūs,</i>		<i>been loved</i>
<i>Am-ātūs sis</i>		<i>thou mayst have</i>	<i>Am-ātī sitīs</i>		<i>ye may have</i>
<i>or fuērīs,</i>		<i>been loved</i>	<i>or fuērītīs,</i>		<i>been loved</i>
<i>Am-ātūs sīt</i>		<i>he may have</i>	<i>Am-ātī sint</i>		<i>they may have</i>
<i>or fuērīt,</i>		<i>been loved.</i>	<i>or fuērīnt,</i>		<i>been loved.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs essem or fuissem,	{ I should have been loved	Am-ātī essēmūs or fuissēmūs,	{ We should have been loved
Am-ātūs essēs or fuissēs,	{ thou wouldst have been loved	Am-ātī essētīs or fuissētīs,	{ ye would have been loved
Am-ātūs essēt or fuissēt,	{ he would have been loved.	Am-ātī essent or fuissent,	{ they would have been loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	<i>Am-ārī,</i>	<i>to be loved</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	<i>Am-ātūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,</i>	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātum irī (not declined),</i>	<i>to be about to be loved.¹</i>

¹ For an explanation of *āmātum irī*, see Exercise LXXIV.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	<i>Am-ātūs (-a, -um), loved or having been loved.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	<i>Am-andūs (-a, -um), meet to be loved.</i>

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneōr, mōnītūs sum, mōnērī—to be advised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Mōn-eōr,</i>	<i>I am advised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēmūr,</i>	<i>We are advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ērīs,</i>	<i>{ thou art ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye are advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ētūr,</i>	<i>vised</i>	<i>Mōn-entūr,</i>	<i>they are advised.</i>
	<i>he is advised.</i>		

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Mōn-ēbōr,</i>	<i>{ I shall be ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbīmūr,</i>	<i>{ We shall be ad-</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbērīs or</i>	<i>vised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbīmīnī,</i>	<i>vised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbērē,</i>	<i>{ thou wilt be</i>		<i>ye will be ad-</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbītūr</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbuntūr,</i>	<i>vised</i>
	<i>{ he will be ad-</i>		<i>they will be ad-</i>
	<i>vised.</i>		<i>vised.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Mōn-ēbār,</i>	<i>{ I was being ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbāmūr,</i>	<i>{ We were being</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbārīs or</i>	<i>vised (115)</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbāmīnī,</i>	<i>advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbārē,</i>	<i>{ thou wast being</i>		<i>ye were being</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbātūr,</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbantūr,</i>	<i>advised</i>
	<i>{ he was being</i>		<i>they were being</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Mōn-ītūs sum</i>	<i>{ I have been ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ītī sūmūs</i>	<i>{ We have been</i>
<i>or fuī,</i>	<i>vised, or was</i>	<i>or fuīmūs,</i>	<i>advised, or were</i>
	<i>advised</i>		<i>advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ītūs ēs</i>	<i>{ thou hast been</i>	<i>Mōn-ītī estīs</i>	<i>{ ye have been ad-</i>
<i>or fuistī,</i>	<i>advised, or</i>	<i>or fuistīs,</i>	<i>vised, or were</i>
	<i>wast advised</i>		<i>advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ītūs est</i>	<i>{ he has been ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ītī sunt,</i>	<i>{ they have been</i>
<i>or fuīt,</i>	<i>vised, or was</i>	<i>fuērunt, or</i>	<i>advised, or</i>
	<i>advised.</i>	<i>fuērē,</i>	<i>were advised.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs ēro	I shall have	Mön-ītī ērimūs	We shall have
or fuēro,	been advised	or fuērimūs,	been advised
Mön-ītūs ēris	thou wilt have	Mön-ītī ērītis,	ye will have been
or fuērīs.	been advised	or fuērītīs,	advised
Mön-ītūs ērit	he will have	Mön-ītī ērunt	they will have
or fuērīt,	been advised.	or fuērīnt,	been advised.

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūsēram	I had been	Mön-ītī ērāmūs	We had been
or fuēram,	advised	or fuērāmūs,	advised
Mön-ītūs ērās	thou hadst	Mön-ītī ērātīs	ye had been ad-
or fuērās,	been ad-	or fuērātīs,	vised
	vised		
Mön-ītūs ērāt	he had been	Mön-ītī ērant	they had been
or fuērāt,	advised.	or fuērant,	advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-ērē,	Be thou advised.	Mön-ēmīnī,	Be ye advised
----------	------------------	------------	---------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mön-ētōr,	Thou must be advised	Mön-entōr,	They must be ad-
Mön-ētōr,	he must be advised.		vised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eār,	I may be ad-	Mön-eāmūr,	We may be ad-
	vised		vised
Mön-eārīs	or thou mayst	Mön-eāmīnī,	ye may be ad-
mön-eārē,	be advised		vised.
Mön-eātūr,	he may be	Mön-eantūr,	they may be ad-
	advised.		vised.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ērēr,	I might be	Mön-ērēmūr,	We might be
	advised		advised
Mön-ērērīs	or thou mightst	Mön-ērēmīnī,	ye might be ad-
mön-ērērē,	be advised		vised
Mön-ērētūr,	he might be	Mön-ērentūr,	they might be
	advised		advised.

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs sim or fuērīm,	{ I may have been advised	Mön-ītī sīmūs or fuērīmūs,	{ We may have been advised
Mön-ītūs sīs or fuērīs,	{ thou mayst have been advised	Mön-ītī sītās or fuērītās,	{ ye may have been advised
Mön-ītūs sīt or fuērīt,	{ he may have been ad- vised	Mön-ītī sint or fuērint,	{ they may have been advised.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs essem or fuissem,	{ I should have been advised	Mön-ītī essēmūs or fuissēmūs,	{ We should have been advised
Mön-ītūs essēs, or fuissēs,	{ thou wouldst have been advised	Mön-ītī essētīs or fuissētīs,	{ ye would have been advised
Mön-ītūs essēt or fuissēt,	{ he would have been advised.	Mön-ītī essent or fuissent,	{ they would have been advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Mön-ērī,	to be advised.
PERF. and PLUP.	Mön-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,	to have been ad- vised.
FUTURE.	Mön-ītum īrī (not declined),	to be about to be advised.
PERFECT.	Mön-ītūs (-a, -um),	advised, or having been advised.
GERUNDIVE.	Mön-endūs (-a, -um),	meet to be advised.

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectūs sum, rēgī,—to be ruled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-ōr,	I am ruled	Rēg-īmūr,	We are ruled
Rēg-ērīs,	thou art ruled	Rēg-īmīnī,	ye are ruled
Rēg-ītūr,	he is ruled.	Rēg-untūr,	they are ruled.

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Rĕg-ār,	or {	<i>I shall be ruled thou wilt be ruled he will be ruled.</i>	Rĕg-ēmūr,	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
Rĕg-ērīs			Rĕg-ēmīnī,	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
rĕg-ērē,			Rĕg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ētūr,				

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ēbār,	{	<i>I was being ruled (115) thou wast being ruled he was being ruled.</i>	Rĕg-ēbāmūr,	{	<i>We were being ruled ye were being ruled they were being ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ēbārīs or			Rĕg-ēbāmīnī,		
rĕg-ēbārē,			Rĕg-ēbantūr,		
Rĕg-ēbātūr,					

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs sum or fuī,	{	<i>I have been ruled, or was ruled thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>	Rec-tī sāmūs or fuīmūs,	{	<i>We have been ruled, or were ruled ye have been ruled, or were ruled they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ēs or			Rec-tī estīs or		
faistī,			fuistīs,		
Rectūs est or			Rec-tī sunt, fuērunt, or		
fuīt,			fuērē,		

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ĕro or fuĕro,	{	<i>I shall have been ruled thou wilt have been ruled he will have been ruled.</i>	Rĕc-tī ĕrīmūs or fuĕrimūs,	{	<i>We shall have been ruled ye will have been ruled they will have been ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ĕrīs or fuĕrīs,			Rec-tī ĕrītīs or fuĕritīs,		
Rec-tūs ĕrīt or fuĕrīt,			Rec-tī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,		

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ĕram or fuĕram,	{	<i>I had been ruled thou hadst been ruled he had been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ĕrāmūs or fuĕrāmūs,	{	<i>We had been ruled ye had been ruled they had been ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ĕrās or fuĕrās,			Rec-tī ĕrātīs or fuĕrātīs,		
Rec-tūs ĕrāt or fuĕrāt,			Rec-tī ĕrant or fuĕrant,		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-ērē,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>		Rĕg-īmīnī,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
----------	-----------------------	--	------------	---------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rĕg-ĭtôr,	{ Thou must be ruled	
Rĕg-ĭtôr,	{ he must be ruled.	Rĕg-untôr, They must be ruled.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-âr,	or {	I may be ruled	Rĕg-âmŭr,	We may be ruled
Rĕg-ârĭs		thou mayst be ruled	Rĕg-âmĭnĭ,	ye may be ruled
rĕg-ârĕ,		he may be ruled.	Rĕg-antŭr,	they may be ruled.
Rĕg-âtŭr,				

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ĕrĕr,	or {	I might be ruled	Rĕg-ĕrĕmŭr,	We might be ruled
Rĕg-ĕrĕrĭs		thou mightst be ruled	Rĕg-ĕrĕmĭnĭ,	ye might be ruled
rĕg-ĕrĕrĕ,		he might be ruled.	Rĕg-ĕrĕntŭr,	they might be ruled.
Rĕg-ĕrĕtŭr,				

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tŭs sĭm	{	I may have been ruled	Rec-tĭ sĭmŭs or	{	We may have been ruled
or fuĕrim,		thou mayst have been ruled	fuĕrimŭs,		ye may have been ruled
Rec-tŭs sĭs or		he may have been ruled.	Rec-tĭ sĭtĭs or		they may have been ruled.
fuĕrĭs,			fuĕrĭtĭs,		
Rec-tŭs sĭt or			Rec-tĭ sĭnt or		
fuĕrĭt,			fuĕrint,		

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tŭs essem	{	I should have been ruled	Rec-tĭ essĕmŭs	{	We should have been ruled
or fuĭssem,		thou wouldst have been ruled	or fuĭssĕmŭs,		ye would have been ruled
Rec-tŭs essĕs		he would have been ruled.	Rec-tĭ essĕtĭs		they would have been ruled.
or fuĭssĕs,			or fuĭssĕtĭs,		
Rec-tŭs essĕt			Rec-tĭ essĕnt		
or fuĭssĕt,			or fuĭssĕnt,		

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Rĕg-ĭ,	to be ruled.
PERF and PLUP.	Rec-tŭs (-a, -um) essĕ or fuĭssĕ,	to have been ruled
FUTURE.	Rec-tum ĭrĭ (not declined),	to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	Rec-tūs (-a, -um),	<i>ruled or having been ruled.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Rēg-endūs (-a, -um),	<i>meant to be ruled.</i>

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, audītūs sum, audīrī,—to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard</i>	Aud-imūr,	<i>We are heard</i>
Aud-īrīs,	<i>thou art heard.</i>	Aud-īmīnī,	<i>ye are heard</i>
Aud-ītūr,	<i>he is heard</i>	Aud-iuntūr,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iār,	or { <i>I shall be heard</i> <i>thou wilt be heard</i> <i>he will be heard.</i>	Aud-iēmūr,	<i>We shall be heard</i>
Aud-iērīs		Aud-iēmīnī,	<i>ye will be heard</i>
aud-iērē,		Aud-ientūr,	<i>they will be heard.</i>
Aud-iētūr,			

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbār,	{ <i>I was being heard (115)</i> <i>thou wast being heard</i> <i>he was being heard.</i>	Aud-iēbāmūr,	{ <i>We were being heard</i> <i>ye were being heard</i> <i>they were being heard.</i>
Aud-iēbārīs or		Aud-iēbāmīnī,	
aud-iēbārē,		Aud-iēbantūr,	
Aud-iēbātūr,			

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs sum	{ <i>I have been heard, or was heard</i> <i>thou hast been heard, or wast heard</i> <i>he has been heard, or was heard.</i>	Aud-ītī sūmūs	{ <i>We have been heard, or were heard</i> <i>ye have been heard, or were heard</i> <i>they have been heard, or were heard.</i>
or fuī,		or fuīmūs,	
Aud-ītūs es or		Aud-ītī estīs or	
fuistī,		fuistīs,	
Aud-ītūs est		Aud-ītī sunt,	
or fuīt,		fuērunt, or	
		fuērē,	

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūs ēro or fuēro,	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	Aud-itī ērimūs or fuērimūs,	<i>We shall have been heard</i>
Aud-itūs ēris or fuēris,	<i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	Aud-itī ēritīs or fuēritīs,	<i>ye will have been heard</i>
Aud-itūs ērit or fuērit,	<i>he will have been heard</i>	Aud-itī ērant or fuērint,	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūs ēram or fuēram,	<i>I had been heard</i>	Aud-itī-ērāmūs or fuērāmūs,	<i>We had been heard</i>
Aud-itūs ērās or fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>	Aud-itī ērātīs or fuērātīs,	<i>ye had been heard</i>
Aud-itūs ērāt or fuērāt,	<i>he had been heard.</i>	Aud-itī ērant or fuērant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-irē,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>	Aud-imīnī,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
-----------------	-----------------------	-------------------	---------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-itōr,	<i>Thou must be heard</i>	Aud-iuntōr,	<i>They must be heard.</i>
Aud-itōr,	<i>he must be heard.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iār	<i>I may be heard</i>	Aud-iāmūr,	<i>We may be heard</i>
Aud-iārīs or	<i>thou mayst be heard</i>	Aud-iāmīnī,	<i>ye may be heard</i>
aud-iārē,		Aud-iantūr,	<i>they may be heard.</i>
Aud-iātūr,	<i>he may be heard.</i>		

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-irēr,	<i>I might be heard</i>	Aud-irēmūr,	<i>We might be heard</i>
Aud-irērīs or	<i>thou mightst be heard</i>	Aud-irēmīnī,	<i>ye might be heard</i>
aud-irērē,		Aud-irentūr,	<i>they might be heard.</i>
Aud-irētūr,	<i>he might be heard.</i>		

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs sim or fuērim,	{ I may have been heard	Aud-ītī simūs or fuērimūs,	{ We may have been heard
Aud-ītūs sis or fuēris,	{ thou mayst have been heard	Aud-ītī sītīs or fuēritīs,	{ ye may have been heard
Aud-ītūs sīt or fuērit,	{ he may have been heard.	Aud-ītī sint or fuērint,	{ they may have been heard.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūsessem or fuissesem,	{ I should have been heard	Aud-ītī essēmūs or fuissēmūs,	{ We should have been heard
Aud-ītūs essēs or fuissēs,	{ thou wouldst have been heard	Aud-ītī essētīs or fuissētīs,	{ ye would have been heard
Aud-ītūs essēt or fuissēt,	{ he would have been heard	Aud-ītī essent or fuissent.	{ they would have been heard.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Aud-irī, -	to be heard.
PERF. and PLUP.	Aud-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,	to have been heard.
FUTURE.	Aud-ītum irī (not declined),	to be about to be [heard.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Aud-ītūs (-a, -um),	heard or having been heard.
GERUNDIVE.	Aud-iendūs (-a, -um),	meant to be heard.

EXERCISE XLIX.

157a If two Subjects are connected by Disjunctive Conjunctions, e.g. *vēl*, or (*if you please*), or (*rather*), *aut* or (*else*), the Verb generally agrees with the latter of the two.

<i>What man or what monster committed this crime?</i>	<i>Qui hōmo, vēl quae bēlūa hōc facinus commisit?</i>
<i>Either you or Tullius said this.</i>	<i>Aut tū aut Tullius haec dixit.</i>

- Equus ab auriga domabitur (32), mox aurigam dorso portabit.
- Cum ut Tullia, puella pulcherrima, floribus a matre ornetur.
- Si urbem incendit, quemodo in tanto incendio servabimini?
- Interrogavi civem quomodo urbs servaretur.
- Curavit sacerdos ut hae divitiae in aedem Jovis portarentur.
- Si animum recreabis, nihil obstat quominus saneris.
- Cura ut a medico saneris, qui te facillime sanabit, si

tu ei obtemperabis. 8. Agri tui qui nunquam antea vastabantur, jam vastabuntur, nisi nobis iter monstraveris. 9. Curabit dux ut a me servemini nisi jussa mea neglexeritis. 10. Portae urbis omni cura firmantur ne ab hostibus subito¹ superemur. 11. Curato ne, impetum non expectantes, ab hoste superemini. 12. Nisi a medico sanabere (125), num tibi aurum argentumque utilia erunt?

1. *The land of the Germans, which was never (115) wont-to-be laid-waste before, was laid waste by our men.* 2. *While we are being overcome by disease, our allies are being overcome by the enemy.* 3. *The leader took care that the citizens should be preserved.* 4. *Take care that the gates of the city are strongly-guarded, (trans. strengthened with a guard), that our men may not be overcome by the enemy.* 5. *What enemy, or (rather) what danger (111) prevented this wealth from being carried (use quōminus, see Par. 144) into the temple?* 6. *Our men, not expecting an attack, were being overcome by the enemy.* 7. *We shall be cured (17) by this medicine if we obey the physician's precepts.* 8. *How will you be preserved, (my) friends, in this great (trans. so-great) conflagration?* 9. *The priests were-taking-pains that the temple should be adorned by the servants with very-many flowers.* 10. *Let us take-care that the gates of the city are (143) strongly-guarded*

PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL TENSES.

- 158** The Participle Passive agrees with its Noun in Number and Gender.

The enemy, having been overcome, are fleeing, i.e. have been overcome and are fleeing.

Hostes sup̄erāti fūgiūnt.

They burn the city (when it had been) taken, i.e. they take and burn the city.

Urbem captam incendunt.

- 159** *N.B.*—Note how the English *and* can be expressed by the Latin Passive Participle.

- 159a** The Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of *amor*, both in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, are not really independent Tenses of *amor*, but rather Tenses

- 160** ¹ *Sūbito* is an Adv. Adj. in -us, -a, -um, and -or, -a, -um, mostly make Adv. in -ē; but there are exceptions: *tūto, safely; cito, quickly; &c.*

of the Verb *sum* joined to forms of the Passive Participle *āmātus* which must agree with some Noun or Pronoun :

The town is taken.

Oppidum captum est.

The girls will have been adorned.

Puellae ornatae fuerint.

EXERCISE L.

161 If two or more Subjects are (1) animate beings of different genders, their Adjective or Participle is Masculine ; (2) if inanimate, generally Neuter Plural.

(1) *His father and mother have been slain.* Pater eius et mater interfecti sunt.

(2) *Anger and avarice were more powerful than authority.* Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant.

1. Interroga num pater meus et mater a Tullio servati sint (9a).
 2. Imperator, cum hostium equites jam turbati fuissent, pedites facile fugavit. 3. Oppidum ipsum ab hoste expugnatum est, sed arx virtute ducis nostri est servata. 4. Si equites superati fuerint (125a), quomodo pedites servabuntur? 5. Cur tanto auri pondere ornatae estis, mulieres stultissimae? 6. Murus et porta a sacerdote centum aureis statuīs, ducentis argenteis, ornata fuerant. 7. Hostis, tandem superatus, ab imperatore nostro fugatus est. 8. Agri pauperum agricularum a crudelissimis hostibus ferro atque igni vastati sunt. 9. Hostes superati sunt, urbes quinquaginta expugnatae, segetes omnes vastatae (32). 10. Non dubium erat quin iter hostibus a proditore monstratum fuisset.

1. *Have the wall and the gate been stormed by the enemy (101)?*
 2. *Ask whether the wall and the gate have been preserved by the citizens.* 3. *The town is stormed (i.e. has been stormed) : our men are overcome.* 4. *The bridge, having been preserved by the husbandmen, had been pointed out to us by the spy.* 5. *There was no doubt that two hundred ships of war had been preserved by the enemy.* 6. *The shower was troublesome to the enemy (who were) now put-to-flight.* 7. *Did you not owe everything (trans. all things) to Tullius, by whom your very life had been preserved?* 8. *Having been praised by all the best citizens (140), will you and your sister, (150) my (dear) Tullius, commit this great (i.e. so great) crime (101)?*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LI.

- 162** The Passive is sometimes used impersonally in Latin where we use the Active :

All laughed, lit. it was laughed by all. *Ridēbātur āb omnībūs.*

The enemy had fought bravely, lit. it had been fought bravely by the enemy. *Pugnātum ērat heriter āh hostībūs.*

- 163** The Neuter of the Passive Participle in -ndus (commonly called the Gerundive) is very frequently used in this impersonal way, the Agent being expressed by the Dative :

I must fight, lit. it is meet to be fought to, or for, me. *Pugnandum est mīhi.¹*

Ought you not to remain? *Nūnc tībi mānendum est?*

1. Cum ne periculo terrearis. 2. Justorum iudicium animi neque minis neque a rege ipso movebuntur. 3. Cives, ab imperatore territi, in sua quisque domo manserunt.² 4. Quid obstabat vobis quominus a praeceptore doceremini? 5. Magister curavit ut omnia vere a servis suis responderentur. 6. Non dubium est quin puer optimo doceatur. 7. Curato ut corpora puero- rum bene exerceantur. 8. Agricola fluctibus terrebat, quos nauta ridebat. 9. Cum haec tanta (trans. *this great*) tempestas impenderet, flebatur ab agricolis, a nautis ridebatur. 10. Imperatori, captivos interroganti nonne cruciatus time- rent, a regina nostra fortissimo responsum est. 11. Nobis flendum est, vobis et hostibus exultandum. 12. Hostes jam superatos, et in urbem fugientes, equitatus noster paene delevit.

1. *There is no doubt that two-hundred cities were utterly destroyed by the cruel general Balbus (124).* 2. *We must fight bravely that the enemy may not (131) take the city by storm.* 3. *Fighting*

- 164** ¹ If the Verb e.g. *pāreo* governs a Dat., "*pārendum est nobis*" would be ambiguous, meaning either *obedience must be paid to us, or by us*. This ambiguity is avoided by using *ā* with the Abl. to express the Agent:

We must obey the magistrate. *Magistrātū ā nobis pārendum est.*

- 165** ² *Quisquē* is Nom. Sing. in Apposition to *cives*. Note that in this phrase, *they came, returned, each to his &c., nūus always precedes quisquē.*

was kept up briskly (trans. *it-was-fought briskly*) *by the Germans, that our men, terrified by the multitude of the darts, might retire into the city.* 4. *There is no doubt that the master will exercise* (155) *the bodies of the slaves.* 5. *Why must you weep?* Ought (163) *not you* (101) *rather to fight that your fields may not be laid waste by the enemy?* 6. *There is no doubt that answer-was-made most-bravely by our leader.* 7. *I took care that the city might be filled with-soldiers that you might not be terrified by the danger.* 8. *We ought not to be terrified in this great danger* (trans. *this so-great danger*). 9. *Our men, when-they-could scarcely sustain the charge of the enemy* (trans. *scarcely sustaining*) *and (were) almost fleeing, were recalled by the voice of (their) brave* (70) *leader.* 10. *What tyrant, or* (157a) *what* (111) *danger, will prevent* (144) *us from remaining in our city?*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LII.

- 166 *I am on the point of conquering.* In *eo sum ut vincam.*
I was on the point of conquering. In *eo eram ut vincērem.*

RULE.—When an Active Verb governing a Dative is turned into the Passive, it retains the Dative but is used impersonally. Thus, *all obey you*, *omnes tibi pārēbunt*; but:

167. *You will be obeyed by all, i.e.* Tibi *ab omnibus pārēbūtur*
it will be obeyed to you by all. (not *tū pārēberis*).

1. Qui non, puer, regitur, is, senex, non bene reget.¹ 2. Nisi te ipsum (125a) viceris, hostes a te inutiliter vincentur. 3. Cura ne falsa a te fingantur. 4. Curabant senes ut a filiis suis recte viveretur. 5. Cum nostri in eo essent ut urbem intrarent, subito portae clausae sunt. 6. Non dubium est quin exercitus, fortiter pugnans, ab hostibus oppressus sit. 7. Cavendum est ne ab hostibus contemnamini. 8. Interrogavisti nonne conjuratio alteri consuli a tribus testibus detecta esset. 9. Rhenus fluvius a Cæsare ponte eo tempore jungebatur. 10. Castra a vobis milibus militum, viris acerrimis, defenduntur. 11. Liber ille a liberis meis summa diligentia scribitur. 12. Quid obstat quominus agri colantur, quoniam mox hostes in fugam vertentur? 13. Tunc agros colis qui, quotiens colentur, totiens ab hostibus vastabuntur?

¹ Puer is Nom., in Apposition with qui, *he who, when (or as) a boy, &c.*

1. *The town will be defended bravely by the citizens.* 2. *Take care that the gates are shut and that the city is guarded (trans. strengthened with a guard).* 3. *If the river (125) is bridged by the enemy, you will be in great danger, citizens.* 4. *Do you (tu), the partner¹ of our plans, give-orders that the conspiracy shall be disclosed (pres. subjunct.)?* 5. *I asked my children whether the books were being written by them.* 6. *There was no doubt that the fields, formerly laid-waste by the enemy, were now being cultivated.* 7. *If you, (when) a boy, obey your parents, you will be obeyed, when old, by your children (trans. it-will-be-obeyed to you (when) an old-man).* 8. *Our men are on the point of putting the enemy to flight.* 9. *The enemy were on the point of being put to flight by our men.* 10. *If the conspiracy is disclosed (125) to-morrow, the city will be preserved by you.*

EXERCISE LIII.

1. *Cur non auxilium mittere statuitis?* 2. *Interrogandum est nobis num epistola a puero scripta sit.* 3. *Interrogandum erat mulieri quando epistolae a pueris scriptae essent.* 4. *Non erat dubium quin duci (142) nostro placuisset legatos mittere.* 5. *Cum jam agri diligentissime culti fuissent, subito segetes omnes imbris absumptae sunt.* 6. *Quid obstabat quominus oppidum defenderetur?* 7. *Urbem hanc, a duobus millibus civium defensam, decem milia hostium obsederunt.* 8. *Quare vos, quingenti viri, ab hostibus ducentis victi estis?* 9. *Interrogavi nonno a sene pueri semper dilecti essent, nonno memoria eius ab illis etiam tum coleretur.* 10. *Fabula, si a poeta docte scripta fuerit, omnibus placebit.* 11. *Cum jam naves plurimae ab imperatore collectae essent, exploratores ad Britanniam quinto die missi sunt.* 12. *Jam acies instructa erat, jam pedites ad proelium parati (142 d); cum subito legati ab hostibus pacem petituri missi sunt.*
1. *There is no doubt that the letter was written by his sister.* 2. *What prevented the fields from being cultivated?* 3. *When the enemy had now been conquered, the husbandmen determined to cultivate the fields.* 4. *There was no doubt that the old man's memory had been cherished (lit. cultivated) by those whom he had taught.* 5. *Let us ask the poet why he did not compose (lit. write) a better story.* 6. *The king asked the general why he had not himself drawn up the line-of-battle with greater care (lit. more-diligently).* 7. *Our ambassadors were sent a-second-time into the city to seek for peace (lit. about-to-*

¹ In what case should *partner* be? See Par. 123.

seek). 8. *The spears of the soldiers, fixed in the earth, shewed the camp of the enemy.* 9. *Which of the two (85) daughters was especially loved (diligo) by (her) father?* 10. *If he violates (125) this law, let him (129a) be driven into exile.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

168 When the Gerundive is used as an Adjective, it still takes the Dative of the Agent; (if (164) there is no ambiguity:)

The boys } are (fit) to be punish- Puëri } sunt **mīhi** pūniend } -i.
girls } ed by me. Puellae }
I must learn this. Haec **mīhi** discenda sunt. } -ae.

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Audiendi sunt nobis exploratores; nam hostium urbes clam muniuntur. 2. Quid obstat quominus extra urbem corpus sepeliatur? 3. Curandum erat legatis ut bellum pace finiretur. 4. Interrogabo Numidam num leones in Africa reperiantur. 5. Puniēris, nisi cito veneris. 6. Cur tam deformibus vestibus vestiebamini? 7. Patri a quo nutrimini, vestimiri, educamini, nonne parebitis? 8. Mortui extra (see Vocab. extrā) urbem sepeliuntur. 9. Tertia nocte a nostris dormiebatur, ab hostibus castra muniebantur. 10. Ab eo vincere qui nuper a te ipso vinciebatur.

1. *There is no doubt that lions are found in Africa.* 2. *Will you not obey, O most ungrateful boy, the father by whom you were clothed, nourished, (and) educated?* 3. *Let us take care that war may be terminated by peace.* 4. *The spies of the enemy must be punished by us.* 5. *What prevents the camp from being fortified by our men (144)?* 6. *The dead used-to-be-buried by the ancients outside the city.* 7. *On the fourth day, my son, you will be heard by the judges.* 8. *You were being patiently heard by all: why did (127b) you not yourself (105) hear me?*

EXERCISE LV.

1. Hae urbes nobis muniendae sunt. 2. Cum corpora mortuorum sepulta essent, arcem optime munitam hostes nobis tradiderunt. 3. Reperti sunt leones quinque; de (about) tigribus nihil auditum (est). 4. Nisi melius vestita fuerit (125a); mulier frigus vix tolerabit. 5. Nutriendus est nobis pauperimus ille puer qui a patre ipso non nutritus est. 6. Cur tandem, O puellae, matris immemores estis? Nonne estis ab illa nutritae? Nonne (142d) vestitae? Nonne summa diligentia¹ educatae? 7. Ego, si finitum fuerit bellum, in

¹ Diligentia is Abl. of Manner: see Exercise LXXIX.

Italiam veniam. 8. Tria milia captivorum, a nostris vincti,¹ clam evaserunt. 9. Qui a patre tuo nutritus es, nonne tu patrem, jam senem, ipso nutries? 10. Non dubium erat quin castra hostium clam diligentissime munita essent.

1. *I asked whether the bodies of the dead had been buried.* 2. *Will (it) not please you to nourish those by whom you yourselves have been nourished?* 3. *There is no doubt that very many lions have been found in Africa.* 4. *Those who have been bound by you, O soldiers, have secretly escaped.* 5. *The story which had been beautifully written by the poet did not please the king.* 6. *Take-care that you are clothed with a thick garment, that the cold may not (131) hurt you.* 7. *She was heard by the same judges by whom his sisters had already been heard.* 8. *What have you found, my friend, which has not already been found out by others (5a)?²*

THIRD CONJUGATION IN I.

Căpio, cēpi, captum, cāpērē,—*to take.*
(stem: cāp-, or cāpi-.)

When the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. of the Third Conjugation ends in -io, it (1) drops the i before i and ē,³ but (2) retains it otherwise, e.g. before a, o, ē, and u.

Thus (1) cāp-imus, cāp-ere, cāp-ē.

But (2) cāpi-am, cāpi-o, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-unt.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cāpi-o, cāp-īs, cāp-īt, cāp-imus, cāp-ītis, cāpi-unt.

Fut. Cāpi-am, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-et, cāpi-ēmus, cāpi-etis, cāpi-ent.

Imperf. Cāpi-ēbam, cāpi-ēbas, cāpi-ēbat, cāpi-ēbamus, cāpi-ēbatis, cāpi-ēbant

Regular Tenses. { *Perf.* Cāp-i, Cāp-isti, &c.
 Pluperf. Cāp-eram, Cāp-eras, &c.
 Future Perf. Cāp-ēro, Cāp-ēris, &c.

¹ Vincti is Masc. Nom. agreeing with a Masc. Nom., *men* or *captives*, implied in *milia*.

² For easy Exercises on the Regular Verbs, see pp. 173—175.

³ The only exception is the 3rd Pers. Sing. of the Fut. Indic. cāpi-ēt, which follows the form of the other persons, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-ēmus, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. cǎp-ě, cǎp-ite,
Fut. cǎp-ito, cǎp-ito, cǎp-ītōte, cǎp-into.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎpī-am, cǎpī-as, cǎpī-at, cǎpī-amus, cǎpī-atis,
 cǎpī-ant,

Imperf. Cǎp-ěrem, cǎp-ěres, cǎp-ěrct, cǎp-ěremus, cǎp-
 ěrētis, cǎp-ěrent,

Regular
Tenses.

{ *Perf.* Cǎp-ērīm, cǎp-ērīs, &c.
Pluperf. Cǎp-issem, cǎp-isses, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Cǎp-ěre, *Perf.* Cǎp-isse *Pres.* Cǎpiens, *Fut.*
 Capturus.

GROUND.
 Cǎp-endi.

SUPINES.
 Captum, captu.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

(Only the Present and Present-Derived Tenses are given below.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎpī-or, cǎp-ēris, cǎp-itur, cǎp-īmur, cǎp-īmini, cǎpī-
 untur.

Fut. Cǎpī-ar, cǎpī-ēris (-ērē), cǎpī-ētur, cǎpī-ēmur, cǎpī-
 ēmini, cǎpī-entur.

Imperf. Cǎpī-ēbar, cǎpī-ēbaris (-bārē), cǎpī-ēbatur, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎp-ěre, cǎp-īmini.
Fut. Cǎpī-tor, cǎpī-untor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎpī-ar, cǎpī-āris, cǎpī-ātur, &c.

Imperf. Cǎp-ērer, cǎp-ērīs, cǎp-ērētur, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD

Cǎp-i.

BVCL 12904



475.2
 A26V

EXERCISE LVI.

169 A prohibition is often expressed by the Imperative Sing. *nōlī* or Plur. *nōlīte*, *be unwilling* :

Do not flee, i.e. be unwilling to flee. Nōlī, or nōlīte, fūgēre.

170 The Ablative of the Gerund is used instrumentally :

Water hollows the rock by falling. Aqua saxum cāvat cādendo.

1. Cape pira quoniam cupis, sed noli piro meae quatiendo nocere.
2. Si haec scripseris, mox cupies non scripsisse.
3. Interrogavit num, haec facientes, recte et sapienter faceremus.
4. Accipe trecentos denarios, si dederit; ducentos ne acceperis.
5. Curate ut versus vestri Nasonem sapiant.
6. Nolite fugere, O milites; fodiendum est, non fugiendum, ut castra muniamus.
7. Si quaeris monumentum, circumspice.¹
8. Noli, O iudex, injusta facere: nonne te oravit rex ut iustitiam semper respiceres?
9. Miles, jam telum coniecturus, hostem jacentem aspexit.
10. Interrogavi qualia animalia multiplices fetus parorent.²

1. *Have-regard-to* virtue; *do not have-regard-to* the commands of a tyrant.³
2. *There was no doubt that he received five hundred denarii, and was (155) about-to-receive two thousand denarii.*
3. *When the youth beheld his father, he cast away his dart.*
4. *Flee, O friends; do not look round.*
5. *The leaders asked what we desired to do.*
6. *What prevents his verses from savouring of Maro (see Maro in Vocabulary)?*
7. *What (i.e. that which) they did, they took care (143) to do well.*
8. *You will make your discourse accurate by writing, learned by reading.*

EXERCISE LVII.

171 *Whether . . . or, in (a) Independent, as well as in (b) Dependent Questions, can be expressed by (1) utrum . . . ān; (2) -nē . . . ān:*

(a 1) *Is this true or false?*

Utrum haec vĕra ān falsa sunt?

(a 2). *Was he white or black?*

Albusnē ān āter ērat?

¹ These words are inscribed on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's; quaeris refers to present, not (125) to future time.

² From what two Verbs may parorent come, the quantity being left unmarked? What Case does each govern?

³ Note that *have-regard-to* is one Verb in Latin governing an *Accusative Case*.

- (b1) *We must enquire whether this is true or false.* Quærendum est utrum hæc vëra sint an falsa.
 (b2) *It is uncertain whether he was black or white.* Incertum est albusnë an ater fuërit.¹

72 Or not in Interrogatives may be rendered by annön or necnë:

Ask: whether he will come or not. Quacrë utrum venturus sit necnë (or annön).

73 N.B. (1) Aut and vël (157a) are not to be used in Dependent or Independent Questions.

174 (2) When *whether* is not followed by *or*, num (135) is generally used instead of utrum.

175 (3) The Rule (136) for Sequence of Tenses *always holds*.

1. Præceptor dubitabat tunc an Tullius rem melius gereret.²
2. Dux, cum jam proelii, vel potius caedis, finem fecisset, urbem incenderat.
3. Aut pugnandum est aut cedendum, milites.
4. Hunc vicum barbari oppidum vel urbem appellavere.
5. Milites cum jam spolia vel prædam rapuissent cupierunt urbem incendere.
6. Latona dicitur uno partu Apollinem et Dianam peperisse.³
7. Quærendum est utrum regina an filius eius bellum acrius gesturus sit.
8. Arma nobis capienda sunt në (not -në) tyrannus, vel tyranni milites, bona nostra diripiant.
9. Hæc cum imperator aspexit, constituit aut aciem statim instruere aut clam nocte discedere.
10. Cum pedites nostri fugissent, naves tempestate quassae fuissent, urbes ab hostibus direptae, statim magna pars nostrorum pacem petere cupiebat.
11. Quærendum est per (by means of) exploratores utrum urbs ab hostibus incensa sit necne.

76 ¹ Both in Independent and Dependent Questions (c) an is sometimes used without utrum or -në preceding; and in Dependent Questions (d) -në is sometimes used for *or*, without a preceding particle.

It is uncertain whether he was the son or grandson of Tullius. Tullius nëpöna fuerit Tullii incertum est.

176a ² The disjunctive an disjoins tū from Tullius and causes gërëret to agree with Tullius; tū may be parsed as "the subject of gërëres understood;" see Par. 157a.

77 ³ Dicitur, with a Personal Subject, should generally be rendered in English impersonally, *it is said that Latona, &c.*

1. *Who doubted whether you or your brother had made these verses?*
 2. *We must either depart or learn.* 3. *Let us make an end of this war or (rather) insurrection.* 4. *The general ordered the soldiers to hurl their darts against (in gov. acc.) the enemy.*
 5. *Either we shall carry on this war prosperously or we shall be driven into exile.* 6. *There was no doubt that the queen, or (rather) her son, had waged that war very-prosperously.*
 7. *It was doubtful whether the general had seen the horse-soldiers, or (whether) ignorant of their arrival, he had drawn up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Let us ask whether the men will come on the third or fourth day.* 9. *It is uncertain whether the city has been stormed or not.* 10. *Who doubts whether the queen will (155) carry on the war in winter (5a)?*

PREPOSITIONS.

- 178 1. The following Prepositions take the Ablative, and no other Case :

A , āb (before a vowel), <i>by, from.</i>	Ē , (ex before a vowel), <i>out of.</i>
Absequē (rare), <i>without.</i>	Pālam , <i>openly, in the presence of.²</i>
Clām , <i>secretly, without the knowledge of.¹</i>	Prae , <i>before, in comparison with, (with a negative because of.)³</i>
Cōram , <i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō , <i>before, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for.</i>
Cum , <i>with.</i>	Sine , <i>without.</i>
Dē , <i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	Tēnus (after its Case), <i>as far as.⁴</i>

These Prepositions are sometimes committed to memory in the following rhyme :

A, or **āb**, and **ex** or **ē**
Cum, **pālam**, **cōram**, **clām** and **dē**
Tēnus, **sine**, **prō**, and **prae**
 Always govern the Ablative.

¹ **Clām** is used by the Comic Authors with the Accusative.

² **Pālam** is used as a Preposition only after Cicero, and mostly by poets.

³ **Prae** is rarely used by Cicero to mean *because of* except with *non*, *vix*, &c.: *I am not able to speak for sorrow*, *Prae maerore loqui nōn possum.*

⁴ **Tēnus** governs the Abl. Sing.; but with a Plural Noun, more often takes the Genitive, *Alpium tēnus*, *as far as the Alps*: but the Gen. Pl. construction is not found in the prose of Cicero.

EXERCISE LVIII.

RULE.—Cum is affixed to tē, mē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quībus: mēcum, (*not* cum mē) nōbīscum, quōcum, &c.

1. Puer inde a pueritia cum matre vixerat, quae ab Italia ad Graeciam se receperat. 2. Pecuniam mihi reddidit quam ipse a fratre meo, proximo anno, coram patre meo acceperat. 3. Irruperunt clam imperatore milites cum gladiis, eum scutis; qui (*see* 'qui') cum me vehementissime increpuissent, equidem cum constantia respondi. 4. Tu quidem Rheno tenus regnabis, filius autem tecum regnabit. 5. Alpium tenus omnes gentes vicerat. 6. Verbo tenns te adjuvabit, ro ipsa nihil faciet.¹ 7. Ira sino viribus inutilissima est. 8. Pro obsidibus causam egit Tullius; cui (*i.e.* et oi, *see* Par. 298, I) pro tantis eius laboribus gratias Allobroges egorunt. 9. Palam populo sine misericordia jugulatus est. 10. Tibi, O amice, pro omnibus amicis beate, ego, hominum miserrimus, pro lacrimis vix scribo. 11. Nos pro patria pugnantem deiecit de Capitolio (32), jam ex urbo eiecit. 12. Multis de² causis cupio tecum de hac re deliberare.

1. *In-the-presence-of his father the youth deliberated with me concerning this matter.* 2. *Let us return thanks to the worthy Balbus, who pleaded our cause with (181) zeal before the king.* 3. *There was no doubt that he had conquered all Asia as-far-as Taurus.* 4. *From a boy he had lived in Greece.* 5. *Since the general forbids (us), let us fight for (our) country without his knowledge.* 6. *He was slain by the soldiers in-the-sight-of the people.* 7. *From Italy I shall retire to Greece, and my son will travel with-me.* 8. *Tullius, who pleaded for us, replied to these charges with indignation.* 9. *I scarcely write for tears: having been driven out-of (my) native-land into exile.* 10. *What will anger without wisdom effect for us?*

PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

ADLATIVE.		ACCUSATIVE.	
In,	meaning rest in	In,	meaning into, to, towards
Sūb,	„ rest under	Sūb,	„ motion from below, ³
Sūper,	„ concerning.	Sūper,	„ above, over, upon. ⁴

¹ Rē is Adverbial Abl.; see Par. 182.

² 'From many reasons,' i.e. 'for many reasons.'

³ The form sūbter (hardly, if at all, found, except in poets and late prose writers), meaning extension under, generally takes the Acc. but sometimes the Abl. in poetry.

⁴ Sūper, meaning above, also takes the Abl. in poetry, and in Caesar.

EXERCISE LIX.

- 181** RULE.—The *Manner* of an action may be expressed (1) by the Abl. of a Noun, with an *Adjective* attached to it; (2) by the Abl. following *cum*.

He spoke with, or in, anger; I replied with the greatest firmness.

Ille quidem cum ira locutus est; ego vero summā constantiā respondi.

N.B. The Abl. without an *Adj.* or *Prep.* is used to denote *Instrument*, but not *Manner*.

- 182** Some exceptional Ablatives of Nouns are used (without Adjectives) adverbially, e.g. *jūre*, *rightly*; *ordīne*, *in order*; *spēciē*, *in appearance*; *rē* or *rē ipsa*, *in fact*, &c. They may be parsed as *Adverbial Ablatives*.

1. In Italia paulisper manserat, mox in Galliam contendit. 2. In eo loco a Samnitium imperatore Romani sub jugum missi sunt. 3. Sub oculis patris ipsius filii ambo interfecti sunt. 4. Sub oculos nobis¹ dūcē columbae venerunt. 5. Equites sub factu teli nondum erant; pedites jam sub ictum venerant. 6. Super navem turrem extruxeramus. 7. Super hac re cupieram vobiscum deliberare. 8. Vūlus super vūlus centurio fortissimus acceperat. 9. Judaea, provincia turbulenta, sub Pontio Pilato tum erat. 10. In ore omnium Persarum tunc erat Alexandri humanitas. 11. Nioba dicitur a Sophocle, poeta Atheniensi, in saxum ab Apolline mutata esse. 12. Dux aliquid de stipendio equitum dempsit.
1. The wisdom of Socrates was the talk (trans. was in the mouth) of all the Athenians. 2. There is no doubt that he will deliberate with you about this matter. 3. Why, O foolish man, did you send the Romans under the yoke, (since you were) soon about-to-pay the penalty of (your) deed by death? 4. If this comes under your notice (trans. eyes), do not neglect (it). 5. Above the wall let us erect a very high tower, that our men may not be under fire. 6. By-this-time two cohorts of our men had come under the fire of the enemy. 7. It is said that Daphne was changed (trans. Daphne is said to have been changed) into a laurel by Apollo. 8. How-long did you remain in Italy, and what do you say of (i.e. concerning) that country? 9. The Romans, who subtracted a part from his

¹ Lit. for us under eyes, i.e. under our eyes. Why is nobis Dat.? See PAR. 7.

kingdom, presented to him, (in return) for this (part), a new province. 10. There is no doubt that the brave centurion Balbus received wound on wound.

183

PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE ALONE.

Ad,	to.	Juxtā,	{ near, hard by, next to.
Adversūs,	towards, against.	Ōb,	{ in front of (rare), on account of.
Antē,	before.	Pēnēs,	{ in the hands of.
Apūd,	{ at, near, among, in the house of, in the pre- sence of, in the pages of.	Pēr,	{ through.
Circā, circum,	around.	Post,	{ after. ¹
Circitēr,	about.	Praetēr,	{ besides, beyond.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Prōpē,	{ near.
Contrā,	{ against, con- trary to.	Proptēr,	{ close to, on ac- count of.
Ergā,	{ towards (only of the feelings).	Sēcundūn,	{ following, in ac- cordance with.
Extrā,	outside of.	Suprā,	{ above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	{ across.
Intēr,	between, among.	Ultrā,	{ on the farther side of.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versūs,	{ towards (in the direction of). ²

184

The various meanings of the Propositions (only a few of which have been given above) must be learned by practice. But some help may be gained by remembering that most Propositions can be used to denote some THOUGHT, such as that of *cause, obstacle, superiority, &c.*, besides denoting relations of *PLACE* and *TIME*. Thus *ōb* meant originally (1) *in front of*, but it means more commonly (2) *on account of*; *pēr* means (1) *through*, of *SPACE*, but it also means (2) *throughout* or *during*, of *TIME*, and (3) *through*, of *MEANS*, or *owing to*, of *CAUSE*; *antē* means (1) *before*, of *TIME*, “*before*

¹ *Pōnē*, an old form of *pōtē*, is used as an adverb by Virgil, but is rarely used as a Preposition except by ante-classical and post-classical authors.

² *Versus* usually follows the name of the place to which motion is directed: *in the direction of Ambracia, Ambrāciam versus*. Sometimes *ad* is inserted before the name of the place: *ad Oceanum versus*. *Versus* and *adversus* have old forms *versum* and *adversum*.

185

daybreak;" (2) *before*, of PLACE, "*before the gates*;" (3) *before*, of ESTIMATION, "*He loved Balbus before, or above, the rest.*"

EXERCISE LX.

186 *Ād*, *to* or *towards*, is used to denote *purpose*, with the Acc. of (1) the Gerund, or (2) if the Verb is used *transitively* in English, the Acc. of the *Gerundive Adjective*.

(1) *This will be useful to drink-* Hoc *ād* bibendum atilū erit.
(*ing*).¹

I am prepared to fight(ing). Ād pugnandum parātus sum.

(2) *This is useful for cultivating the fields, i.e. towards the fields being hereafter cultivated.* Hoc est *ād* agros cōlendos atilū (*not ād agros cōlendum*).

1. Postquam ad multam noctem pugnatum est, ad castra uterque exercitus revertit.² 2. Qui apud me manserant, ii apud iudices rei facti sunt.³ 3. Apud antiquos (sic apud Ciceronem scriptum est) mos erat anto lucem surgere, negotia anto voluptatem ponere. 4. Post paucos dies videbo te cum manibus tuis post tergum vinctis ad carcerem reductum. 5. Citra Alpes erat Gallia Cisalpina; ultra Alpes, Gallia Transalpina. 6. Phaothon, Phoebi filius, quum per aethera patris sui equos paulisper egisset, do curru dejectus est. 7. Ob oculos mihi mors est; hanc poenam superbiae meao jure do.⁴ 8. Hoc contra jus fasquo est, trans Euphratem exercitum tuum in pace trajicero.⁵ 9. Interfecti sunt hostium supra viginti milia.⁶ 10. Hoc est infra tuam dignitatem. 11. Tela haec ad eminus (*adv.*) feriendum sunt utilissima. 12. Vallis ad pugnandum nostro equitatui parum apta erat.⁷

187 ¹ In Old English *to* was followed by a Gerund resembling the form *drinking*, not by an Infinitive.

188 ² Trans "after the battle *had* gone on," and remember that *postquam* with the Latin Perfect (not Pluperfect) represents the English *had*.

Also distinguish carefully between the Conjunction *postquam*, *when* or *after (that)*, and the Preposition *post*.

³ Look out *rēus*.

⁴ Why is *jūrē Abl.*? See Par. 182.

⁵ "Trajicere . . . exercitum" is in Apposition to *hōc*.

⁶ *Hostium* is Gen. governed by *milia*. The Nom. *to interfecti sunt* is *hostes understood*, or some other Masc. Nom. implied from the context.

⁷ *Equitātui* is *Dat. of Advantage*, see Par. 7.

1. Among the ancients it was the custom to rise before dawn and to dine in the evening (30). 2. Why have you led your army across the Euphrates? 3. In-the-pages-of Cicero we read many (things) (that are) truly, all (things) tastefully expressed (i.e. said). 4. When he had been accused in-the-presence-of the judges he was led to prison. 5. Bread is useful even for quenching thirst. 6. This water is not fit to drink. 7. Why do you do these things against the law of-man and of-God? 8. It is right to place business before pleasure. 9. Have not these things come under your notice (i.e. eyes)? 10. During (per) two nights, in this great (i.e. so-great) storm, death was before our eyes.

EXERCISE LXI.

189 *Intēr se* (expressing all reciprocal relations) means among themselves; together; with, between, or from, one another.

Cicero's children are very loving among one another. *Cicērōnis pŭeri āmant intēr se.*

These things do not agree together, or disagree from one another. *Haec intēr sē rēpugnant, or contrāria sunt.*

1. Imperatori, penes quem est imperium, jam adversus Gallos bellum moventi, debes parere. 2. Inter urbem et campum fossa erat, per quam amnis quondam fluxerat. 3. Tullius, quem praeter modum stultissimus quisque laudat (140) neminem praeter sese amat.¹ 4. "Qui per alium facit, facit per se." 5. Per tres annos vitam in insula quadam propter Siciliam egit. 6. Quaedam propter sese expetenda sunt. 7. Hoc inter sese disputant philosophi: sed inter disputationes et facta quantum (adv.) interest! 8. Centurio noster, qui hanc ob causam extra teli jactum suos retinebat, cum extra culpam esset (151 a), non punitus est. 9. Quando hanc tantam eius benevolentiam erga te agnosces? 10. Nonne quaerendum est nobis quomodo hae sententiae inter sese contrariae sint? 11. Via una praeter fluminis ripam erat; altera inter duos altissimos montes; tertia per silvam ad urbem ducebat.

1. He who loves no one besides himself is himself loved by no one (92). 2. Virtue is to-be-sought on-account-of itself.² 3. How

¹ Which is the Principal Verb? The Antecedent of quem? The subject of laudat? See *Hints on Construing*, Appendix III., p. 216.

² To-be-sought, i.e. meet-to-be-sought.

great a-difference-is (there) between hopes and deed. 4. The general took-care to keep his soldiers out of shot. 5. Our road (led) beside the walls of the city, the other (86) led through a small wood, across a stream. 6. The judgment is in your hands: When (156) will you judge? 7. Who do you beyond measure praise the foolish (126) Tullius? 8. Labianus will hasten in-the-direction of the Rhine. 9. When will you send our cavalry against the enemy, who are now fighting amongst one another? 10. I ask you, my friends, how virtue and vice are contrary (161) to one another. 11. For this cause we prepared an ambush in a wood, which was near (prōp) the town.

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

190 FORMATION.—(1) The Present Tenses of Verbs compounded of a Preposition and a Verb usually change a or e of the Verb into i: thus, from *fāciō* we have *dēficiō* *sufficiō*, (i.e. *sub-ficiō*), *conficiō*, (i.e. *cum-ficiō*), &c., and from *lēgo* we have *dēlēgo*, *collēgo*, (i.e. *con-lēgo* or *cum-lēgo*), &c.¹ But the perfects remain unchanged: *dē-fēci*, *suf-fēci*, *de-lēgi*, *collēgi*, &c.²

191 (2) The Verb *prōd-est*, it is profitable, retains *d* before all forms of *sum* beginning with a vowel, but drops it before all beginning with a consonant.

Prōd-est; *prōd-erat*; *prōd-erit*; *prōd-esse*.
Prō-sum; *prō-fuit*; *prō-fuerat*; *prō-fuerit*.

192 CONSTRUCTION.—Verbs compounded with Prepositions mostly either (1) take a Dative of the Indirect Object, or, (2) they repeat the Preposition with the Case proper to the Preposition.

(1) *He took a ring from me.* *Ānūlum mīhi dētraxit.*

(2) *He took a ring from my finger.* *Ānūlum dē dīgīto mōo dētraxit.*

¹ But there are exceptions: e.g. *intellēgo* (not *intelligo*) is the correct form.

193 ² Three compounds of *-lēgo* make the Perf. in *-lexi*, (1) *dilligo*, I care; (2) *neglēgo*, neglect; (3) *intellēgo*, understand.

194 The Compounds of *sum*, e.g. *ādest*, *īnest*, *intērest*, &c., all : like a Dative :

Help me, Jupiter !

Adēs mīhi, Juppīter.

195 Note the following use of *ābest* :

I am, or shall be, within a very little of falling, lit. very little is absent by-which-not (145a) I fall.

Minīmum ābest, or ābērit, quā cādām.

I was within a very little of falling.

Minīmum āfuit (not abfuit) quā cādērem.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. Non prodest tibi flere. 2. Non dubium est quin tributum viciis impositum sit (9a). 3. Nostri urbi murum circumdederunt. 4. Cur non ei gladium eripuisti? 5. Alexander ipse his proeliis interfuit. 6. Minimum afuit quin urbs ab hostibus caperetur. 7. Romani Armeniam stultissimo illi regi detraherent. 8. Interrogabo cur huic tam forti oquiti equum detraxerit (9a). 9. Non dubium erat quin frumentum civibus deesset. 10. Hoc (Nom.), cum militibus nostris summum terrorem inieciisset, imperator Tullium docimae legioni praefecit. 11. Ob hanc causam frumentum exercitui defuturum erat. 12. Tu, qui me isti hodie postponis, cras antepones. 13. Oro te ne tales condiciones victae genti imponas.

1. *There was no doubt that the enemy had surrounded their camp with a ditch (i.e. set-round the camp a ditch).* 2. *The camp was within a very little of being taken by the enemy.* 3. *I asked the leader how-much (of) tribute (71) he was about-to-impose-on the conquered city.* 4. *That old soldier has taken-part-in twenty-two battles.* 5. *You are within a little of committing a very-great wickedness.* 6. *Why did you snatch-from me the last hope I had (trans. the hope which I had last, 'last to agree with 'which')?* 7. *These words of the general displeased the king : who withdrew from him a large part of the army.* 8. *I will ask him why he imposed-on us these hard (trans. these so hard) conditions.* 9. *By-this-time all hope was gone (i.e. was absent) from us.* 10. *Conquered (pass. part. agrees with 'Balbus') by this great calamity, Balbus was within a very little of surrendering the city.*

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

- 196 There is no regular Perfect Participle *Active* in Latin, so as to express the English *having killed*. Latin has therefore to use the *Passive* Participle in the Ablative, thus:

*The barbarians, the citizens
having been killed (by them)
set the city on fire i.e. the
barbarians, having killed the
citizens, set the city on fire.*

Barbāri, cīvībus interfectis,
urbem incendērunt,

The Noun and Participle thus expressing some *circumstance in connection with the principal Verb*, are put in the Ablative (which is the ordinary Case to express *manner* and *circumstance*, as well as *instrument*, see Par. 181); and this Ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute cannot always be rendered by the English Active, e.g.

*The citizens having been slain,
the city was set on fire.*

Cīvībus interfectis, urbs incensa est.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. Caesar, Rheno trajecto, constituit in Galliam se recipere.¹
2. Hostes, castris relictis, in suos fines subito se receperunt.
3. Brutus, filiis suis a se ipso interfectis, culpam non effugit.
4. Hieme barbari, missis legatis, pacem ab imperatore petiverunt.
5. Imperator, direpto a barbaris templo, statuit urbem eorum incendere.
6. His auditis nostri clamorem tollunt, et trajecto amne impetum in hostem faciunt.
7. Tarquinio ex urbe expulso, consules imperium susceperunt.
8. Imperator, re feliciter gesta, tributum victae genti imposuerat.
9. Exposito exercitu Caesar equitatum ante se mittit.
10. Non dubium est quin, cognito hostium adventu, terror ingens nostros invasurus sit.

¹ In this exercise the Ablative Absolute should be translated in two ways, 1st, literally, *the Rhine having been crossed (by him)*, and 2nd, according to the English idiom, *having crossed the Rhine* or *when he had crossed the Rhine*. In subsequent Exercises the second or true English translation may suffice.

1. *The enemy having made a charge (i.e. a charge having been made by the enemy), our men for-a-short-time retreated.*
2. *Having disembarked (his) cavalry, Cæsar gave-orders-to (his) foot-soldiers to leap down into the water, i.e. the cavalry having been disembarked, Cæsar gave, &c.*
3. *There is no doubt that our leader, having ascertained the number of the enemy, will quickly retire.*
4. *Having carried on the war most-prosperously, the general was praised by all (his) countrymen.*
5. *The city having been plundered, the citizens determined to declare war against the barbarians.*
6. *After slaying the three hundred hostages (i.e. the three hundred hostages having been slain) the barbarians had no hope of peace.*
7. *The general, having imposed this heavy tribute (trans. this so-great tribute having been imposed) on the conquered nation, restored to them the cities he had taken.¹*
8. *Cotrus, king (123) of the Athenians, having been slain, those who were besieging Athens retired in-haste (181)*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (continued).

197. The Ablative Absolute is also used (1) with Active Present Participles, and (2) with a few Nouns or Adjectives.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>When the sun sets, lit. the sun setting, lions leave their caves.</i> | <i>Sole occidente, lēones antra linquunt (p. 207).</i> |
| (2) <i>While Tullius was king, lit. Tullius being king.</i> | <i>Tullio rēge.</i> |
| <i>While I am alive, i.e. I being alive.</i> | <i>Mē vīvo (adj.).</i> |
| <i>In my judgment, i.e. while I am judge.</i> | <i>Mē jūdīce.</i> |

198 N.B.—When the Noun with which the Participle agrees can be made the *Subject* or *Object* of a Verb, the *Ablative Absolute* must not be used. Thus, *While the general was leading on his men he was transfixcd by an arrow*, must not be rendered “*Impērātōre milītes dūcento (īs) sīgittā transfixus est,*” but “*Impērātor, milītes dūcens, sīgittā transfixus est,*” or else “*Impērātōrem, milītes dūcentem, sīgittā transfixit.*”

198a ¹ Note that the Relative, when omitted in English, must be inserted in Latin: *the cities (which) he had taken.*

*Dionysius having been banished,
(he) taught boys.¹*

*Dionysius, ex urbe pulsus,
pueros docebat (not, Diō-
nysio pulso.)*

*Having at last found the boy,
Tullius sent him back to his
(the boy's) friends.*

*Puerum tandem repperit Tullius
ad amicos eius remisit
(not, Pūero reperto . . T.
eum remisit.)*

EXERCISE LXIV.

1. Hostes, me duce, facillime vincetis. 2. Trecentos obsidum, quos in armis cepimus, vinctos statim interfecimus. 3. Filia, matre nequiquam misericordiam implorante, jugulata est. 4. Mulier, nequiquam misericordiam implorans, coram rege jugulata est. 5. Tullius, reclamante optimo quoque civium, in exilium pulsus est. 6. Trajecto fluvio, Snerorum fines intrabimus; a quibus, me iudice, nobis acerrime resistetur (167). 7. Gaio haec dicente, omnes tacebant; itaque Tullius, nullo reclamante, ab exilio revocatus est. 8. Cacsare et Bibulo consulibus, hoc templum prope viam Latinam aedificatum est. 9. Non igitur dubium est quin Alpibus trajectis Hannibal in Italiam descensurus sit. 10. Itaque, his compertis, consentientibus civibus, magistratus omnia ad resistendum (186) paraverunt.

1. *By your own judgment (i.e. you yourself being judge) your brother has conducted this war unsuccessfully.* 2. *The barbarians, having immediately slain the hostages, determined to stir up a war against us.* 3. *The daughter was led before the king, while the mother in vain protested (i.e. the mother in vain protesting).* 4. *The general having been pierced with an arrow, the enemy determined to deliver him to us (198).* 5. *The bridge having been broken-down, we determined to withdraw from Germany into Gaul.* 6. *During-the-reign-of Tarquin, great buildings were erected in the city.* 7. *There is no doubt that our general, having ascertained the arrival of the enemy, will immediately retire.* 8. *The excellent Tullius (126) was recalled to his country, on the fourth day, no one (92) protesting (against it.)*

¹ The *he* is very often (though incorrectly) inserted even in modern English; but it must be omitted in Latin.

EXERCISE LXIV.*

(Recapitulatory.)

In eo eramus ut vinceremur. 2. Curate ne ab hostibus opprimamini. 3. Si urbem ipsi incenderitis, nemo vestrum parvabitur. 4. Murus et arx ab equitibus capta sunt. 5. Et (g.) et tu ab optimo quoque civium laudati sumus. 6. Urbem captam Balbus, dux crudelissimus, incenderit. 7. Ne tu injustos, Tulli optime, laudaveris. 8. Quod scelus commisit? Quid morte dignum fecit? 9. Num tu, puer jam duodecimi annos (31), natus octo vel novem horas dormis? 10. Interrogastine num in oppido mulier mansura sit? 11. Balbum, plura fortasse dicturum, hastae equitum transfecerunt. 12. Quid huic arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, tantum (*adv.*) nocuit? 13. Huius tantae calamitatis vel in memoria nobis semper erit ingratisissima. 14. Interrogat quando ventura sit (32)? num in animo habeat biduum in oppido manere? 15. De Tullio valde dubito num vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus sit. 16. Balbus, homo parum (*adv.*) contentus, aliena laudat, sua semper culpatur. 17. Cur tibi, nostri imminenti, tot dona damus? 18. Ab optimo quoque civium responsum est. 19. Nobis (192) pro patria pugnantibus homo ignavissimus ob ignaviam suam ipsum ultimam eripuit. 20. Minimum auit quin urbi fossam circumdaremus. 21. Non est dubium quin Balbus decimae legioni praefectus fuerit.

DEPONENT VERBS.

- 199 A few Verbs (called Deponent) have a Past Participle with Active meaning. These Verbs, though having an *Active meaning*, yet have a *Passive form* in all the Tenses and in the Past Participle, as hortor, *I exhort*, hortabor, *I will exhort*, hortatus, *having exhorted*.
- 200 Besides the Passive forms, every Deponent Verb has also the Active forms of the *Participles*, *Supines*, and *Gerunds*: hortans, hortaturus, *exhorting*, *about to exhort*, &c.
- 201 The Deponent Gerundive, e.g. hortandus, *meant to be exhorted*, is used like the Gerundive of an ordinary Verb.¹

¹ The Past Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are sometimes used Passively, as, adeptus, *having been obtained*, from adipiscor.

VERBS.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, *speak*, like rēgōr.

IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīrī, *divide*, like audiō.

III.			IV.		
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, Lōqu-ŕis (ŕc), &c.	<i>I speak, or am speaking. thou speakest. &c.</i>	Part-lōr, Part-ŕis (ŕc), &c.	<i>I divide, or am dividing. thou dividest. &c.</i>	INDICATIVE MOOD.
<i>Pres. Simple.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>I shall speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I shall divide.</i>	
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>I was speaking.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I was dividing.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>I have spoken, or I spoke.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I have divided, or I divided.</i>	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>I should have spoken.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I should have divided.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>I may speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I may divide.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>I might speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I might divide.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>I may have spoken.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I may have divided.</i>	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>I should have spoken.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>I should have divided.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>Speak thou.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>Divide thou.</i>	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
<i>Future.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>thou shalt, or must speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>thou shalt, or must divide.</i>	
<i>Pres. & Imp.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>to divide.</i>	INFINITIVE MOOD.
<i>Perf. & Plup.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>to have spoken.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>to have divided.</i>	
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>to be about to speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>to be about to divide.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>speaking.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>dividing.</i>	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>about to speak.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>about to divide.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>having spoken.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>having divided.</i>	
<i>Gerundive.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>merito to be spoken</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>merito to be divided</i>	
<i>Supines.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕ, &c.	<i>to speak. to be spoken.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>to divide. to be divided.</i>	
<i>Gerund.</i>	Lōqu-ŕ, &c.	<i>of speaking. &c.</i>	Part-ŕ, &c.	<i>of dividing. &c.</i>	

EXERCISE LXV.

202 The Participle can be used (like the Adjective, Par. 34) to agree with *men* understood: *victis parvè, spare the conquered*; *fugientes æquò, follow those-who-are fleeing*.¹

1. Non dubium est quin regina filius suus hortata sit (9a). 2. No mentitus sis, mi fili. 3. Interrogabam puerum cur asini vocem imitaretur. 4. Pygmalion, diu imaginem contemplantus, tandem eam spirantem mirabatur. 5. Courtes parva, homo ignavissimus minora perficiebat. 6. Non dubium est quin miranda perfecturus sis, nisi tyranni exemplum imitaberis. 7. Hortandus est tibi frater ne pessimi istius amici exemplum imitetur.² 8. Deos veneramini, imitamini parentes. 9. Diu dolum meditatus tandem servis suis imperavit ut armati gladiis Tullium nocte sequerentur. 10. O divinam illam vitam voluptatem (202) aspernantium, sequentium virtutem!³

1. Virtue is to be followed for its own sake (i.e. on account of itself). 2. Having imitated the bad from (his) impulse, the boy made himself very like (66) the bad. 3. The life of those-who-follow (trans. those-following) virtue is most happy. 4. Attempt great things, that you may at least accomplish small things. 5. Having long contemplated the stars, the philosopher did not see the well at (ad) his feet. 6. Why, O ye traitors, do ye meditate plots? How-often shall I entreat you not to (143) lie-in-wait-for the consul? 7. In vain do you revere the gods, most deceitful of men, (while) meditating snares for the innocent (7). 8. Ah! the happy life of those-who-scorn wealth and do not (18) suffer poverty.

203 RULE.—Obliviscor, reminiscor, recordor, misereor, commonly govern the Genitive.⁴

204 ¹ Note that "iis victis" would mean "them, since they are conquered," and "eos fugientes," "them, while, or since, they are fleeing;" and generally a Latin Participle, in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun, may be rendered by an English Conjunction (151a).

205 ² When an ordinary and a Pronominal Adjective both agree with the same Noun the Pronominal Adjective generally comes between the ordinary Adjective and the Noun: *That distinguished man, clarissimus illò vir*.

206 ³ The Accusative is commonly used with O in exclamation (not in address), and may be called the *Exclamatory Accusative*.

⁴ These Verbs were once reflexive, *I forget-myself, remember-myself, pity-myself of*, &c. Compare the French "*se plaindre*," *to pity*, and in Old English, *I remember myself of*.

Distinguish between (1) *misereor*, -eri, *I show-pity-to*, which governs an Acc., and (2) *misereor*, -eri, *I feel-pity-for*, which governs a Genitive.

207 RULE.—Fungor, fruor, ūtor, vescor, pōtior, govern the Ablative.¹

EXERCISE LXVI.

1. Non dubium est quin mulier oratione liberrima usa sit (9a).
 2. Interrogabam barbaros num pane vescerentur, nonne ferarum pellibus pro vestitu uterentur.
 3. Miserere Balbi, viri justissimi, quem nemo adhuc miseratus est.
 4. Recordare uxoris tuae; no liberorum oblitus sis, in te uno spem ponentium.
 5. Vastaudi sunt agri gentis illius crudelissimae quae nihil veneratur, nullius miseretur.
 6. Regno potitus, promissorum statim oblitus est.
 7. Qui magistratibus functi erant, eos, capta urbe summo honore affecimus.
 8. Dum vita fruimini, nolite (169) virtutis oblivisci.
 9. Sagacitate eorum ad nostram utilitatem utimur.
 10. Cur nullius ipse miseritus, nostra misericordia frui cupis?
1. *To remember past evils is sometimes pleasant.* 2. *There is no doubt that very-many enjoy the memory of past evils.* 3. *You should eat (i.e. it-is-to-be-eaten) that you may live; you should not live that you may eat.* 4. *Let us use the opportunity which the enemy have afforded us.* 5. *If you do not (i.e. unless you shall) show pity to the conquered, beware lest you yourselves suffer the same fate [trans. same (things).]* 6. *Having suffered adversity, the woman will peculiarly [i.e. before (ante) others] enjoy prosperity.* 7. *I will ask whether he discharges his duty well or (171) ill.* 8. *Do not forget, (as) an old-man, those precepts which you learned (as) a boy.*²

EXERCISE LXVII.

1. Nisi res adversas experiemur patientiam non discemus.
2. Loquere pauca, multa discere.
3. Parentes et verendi et amandi sunt.
4. Plurima pollicentibus ne tu credideris.³
5. Forte leo et asinus et vulpes, partituri praedam, de partibus sortiebantur.⁴
6. Dux noster, cives captae urbis clementer allocutus, pavorem omnium minuit.
7. Nocte proficiscamur ne hostis nos videat.
8. Nonne scelus fatemini? Fatendum est, si poenam effugere cupitis.
9. Quid tibi videtur? Qui pro

¹ These Verbs were also once reflexive, e.g. fruor, *I enjoy myself with*; vescor, *I feed myself with*; ūtor, *I employ myself with*.

² Old-man is in Apposition with you the Subject of forget.

³ Pollicentibus is not Abl.; see Par. 202.

⁴ Vulpēs is feminine; why therefore is partitūri masc.; See Par. 161. N.B. Latin inserts et between each pair of a list of Nouns or omits et between each; English inserts it only before the last

The lion, the ass, and the fox. Lēo, (et) āsinus, (et) vulpēs.

patria moritur nonne is laude dignus est?¹ 10. Cohorti jam ex urbe proficiscenti sex aquilae, omen optimum,² visae sunt (*appeared*). 11. Non dubium erat quin mulier fame et siti inortua esset. 12. Adepti libertatem, nonne contenti eritis nisi et (146) imperium adipiscemini?

1. *Did not pain seem the greatest of evils (73) to the disciples of Epicurus?* 2. *Take care to obtain liberty.* 3. *Having confessed this, do you dare to remain in the city?* 4. *The general made every preparation (i.e. prepared all things) that he might set-out on the next day.* 5. *The woman was within a very little (194) of dying of (Lat. Abl.) hunger and thirst.* 6. *When-they-had-conversed (154a) together (189) they determined to set-out at night.* 7. *Do not draw-lots about the booty, O soldiers, since-you-are (i.e. being) about-to-obtain a greater booty by fighting.* 8. *Trust one-who-has-experienced (202) (it) : he-who promises much (i.e. many things) performs little (i.e. few things).* 9. *I asked the rich Balbus when (156) he was going to enjoy (i.e. was about-to-enjoy) the riches which he had (subjunctive) obtained.* 10. *What prevented you from confessing the truth (i.e. true things)?*

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

208

1. OBJECT-CLAUSES.—When a Principal Sentence, *e.g. he is mistaken*, becomes the Object of a Verb, *e.g. believe, declare, &c.*, there are two ways of expressing the change in English *but only one in Latin, viz., the Accusative and Infinitive*:

I declare (1) that he is mistaken.

I declare (2) him to be mistaken.

Dīco ĕum errāre.

Here *errāre* is “the Infinitive depending on *dīco*”; and *ĕum* is “the Subject of the Infinitive *errāre*,” (*i.e. ĕum* is so related to *errāre* that, *if errāre* were in the Indicative, *ĕum*, or rather *īs*, *would be* its Subject or Nominative).

209

2. SUBJECT-CLAUSES.—The same construction, *viz., Accusative and Infinitive*, is used in Subject-Clauses: *That-he-is-in-error, is certain*, (or, *It is certain that he is in error*),

¹ What is the antecedent (Par. 107) of *qui*?

² The punctuation shews that *ōmen* is not Nom. after *sunt*: what Case is it then (123)?

Certum est eum errare; *That I should go into exile pleased them, (or, It pleased them that I should go into exile),*
Placuit eis me in exilium ire.

210 THE TENSE IN SUBJECT AND OBJECT-CLAUSES.—After a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the Tense of the English Indicative e.g. *is* (208, 1) is changed, but the Tense of the English Infinitive e.g. *to be* (208, 2) remains unchanged: and the Latin Infinitive also remains unchanged: *I declared (1) that he WAS mistaken; I declared (2) him to BE mistaken · dixi eum errare.*¹

211	OBJECT-CLAUSe.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	
	<i>Tullius said that</i>	<i>Tullius said,</i>	<i>Tullius dixit</i>
	(1)	(1)	(1)
(a)	<i>he conquered</i>	" <i>I conquer</i> "	<i>sē vincere</i>
(b)	<i>he was conquering</i>	" <i>I am conquering</i> "	
	(2)	(2)	(2)
{	<i>he conquered,</i>	" <i>I conquered</i> "	<i>sē vīcisse</i>
	<i>had conquered, or,</i>	" <i>I was conquering</i> "	
	<i>had been conquering</i>	" <i>I had conquered</i> "	
		" <i>I had been conquer- ing</i> "	
	(3)	" <i>I have conquered</i> "	
	<i>he should conquer</i>	(3)	(3)
	<i>he was about to conquer</i>	" <i>I shall conquer</i> "	<i>sē victūrum esse?</i>
		" <i>I am about to conquer</i> "	

EXERCISE LXVII, A.

1. Tullia dicit se tibi haec pollicenti credituram esse.³
2. Clamaverunt obsides se meliore fato dignos esse.
3. Responderunt virgines nunquam se tantae virtutis oblituras esse.
4. Negavit magister discipulos corpora satis exercuisse.
5. Placetne tibi tot cives uni tyranno parere?
6. Respondit puer se nescire quot sorores haberet.
7. Fatendum est te promississe multa, pauca perficere.
8. Scribunt mihi se duos menses in Italia mansisse, jam in Graeciam profecturos esse.

¹ Dixi eum erravisse would have meant, *I declared him to have been, or that he had been, mistaken.*

² In accordance with Par. 24, esse takes the same case after it as before it; and therefore, since sē is the Accusative, victūrum is also Accusative.

³ Hitherto sē has been used only for *himself, themselves, &c.*: but in Object-Clauses it must often be rendered by *he, they, &c.*

(Write out the Subject and Object-Clauses in the above Exercise as Principal Sentences: 1. Ego tibi. . . credam. 2. Meliore fato digni sumus, &c.; see 218a).

1. *It is certain that no dangers will terrify him.* 2. *He said that he feared (210) these dangers.*¹ 3. *The boy writes that he had always exercised (his) body.* 4. *My sister says that she will not depart from the city.* 5. *Have you heard that the barbarians set the city on fire?* 6. *Do not (169) say that you did this.* 7. *He said that he should bind the captives.* 8. *He did-not-know that they had escaped in the night.*

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (PASSIVE).

212 As the Latin Passive has no Future Infinitive (except the Supine *irī*, (248)), the Latin employs a periphrasis:

Tullius said that he should be conquered. *Tullius dixit fore, or futurum esse, ut vinceretur, i.e. that it would come to pass that he would be conquered.*

213 OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	<i>Tullius dixit</i>
(1) <i>he was being conquered</i>	(1) "I am being conquered"	(1) <i>sē vinor</i>
(2) (a) (b) <i>he was conquered</i>	(2) (a) "I am conquered" ²	(2) (a) (b) <i>sē victum esse</i> ²
(c) (d) <i>he had been conquered</i>	(b) "I was conquered" (c) "I had been conquered" (d) "I have been conquered"	(c) (d) <i>sē victum fuisse</i> ²
(3) <i>he should be conquered</i> <i>he was about to be conquered</i>	(3) "I shall be conquered" "I am about to be conquered"	(3) <i>fore, or futurum esse ut vinceretur</i>

¹ Wherever *he, she, &c.*, in a Subordinate Clause, stand for some Noun or Pronoun which is the Nominative to the Principal Verb, they must be rendered by *sē*.

214 ² The *esse* or *fuisse* is sometimes omitted (as also in the Active Inf.): and care is then required to distinguish the Inf. from the Participle.

215 Some Compound Tenses are occasionally supplied in Latin by the phrase "in eo sum ut" (Par. 106). *Tullius said that he was or had been (on the point of) being conquered, Tullius dixit eo in eo esse, or fuisse, ut vinceretur.*

216 ³ "I am loved" would imply that the action continued, and would be rendered "*sē amari*;" but "I am conquered" implies that the action is

N.B.—The Tense of the Latin Infinitive in the *third* column above, is the same as that of the English Verb in the *second* column, where it is used as a *Principal Verb*.

- 217 RULE.—The Latin Inf. in a Subject or Object-Clause is of the same Tense as the English Verb would be, if it were made a Principal Verb in the words of the speaker.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

- 218 RULE.—Use *sē*, *suns*, &c. (not *ēm*, *eius*, &c.) when the Pronoun (in a Subordinate Clause, see page 328) stands for the Subject of the Principal Verb :

Tullius said that he (i.e. Tullius) was mistaken. *Tullius dixit sē errāre.*

I said that he was mistaken. *Dixi ēum errāre.*

1. Quis nescit solem lunā majorem esse? 2. Dixit se in animo habere ad patriam reverti. 3. Dixit se in animo habuisse ex Italia proficisci; sed tempestatem obstitisse. 4. Mulieres clamaverunt nunquam se ad oppidum libenter reversuras esse. 5. Balbum certiorum fecimus nos ad Italiam venisse, ibi paulisper manere, inde ad Graeciam venturos (214). 6. Tullius clamavit quondam se sontem fuisse, nuno vero venia dignum esse. 7. Interrogavi num captivos vinxisset: respondit nondum se vinxisse, cras autem vinciturum esse. 8. Certum erat urbem ab ipsis civibus incensam esse. 9. Compertum erat hostium (91) trecentos prope a castris nostris abesse. 10. Certum est nunquam foro ut urbs a te capiatur. 11. Negavere hostes futurum esse ut nobis urbem intransitibus resisteretur (167). 12. Respondimus legatos a nobis quoque ad hostem mitti.¹

past, and only the *result* is *present*. The pupil must carefully distinguish between the two meanings of the ambiguous English Passive, e.g. (1) "the house is *burned*, incensa est;" (2) "the house is *guarded*," custoditur.

218. ¹ The pupil (before proceeding to the English-Latin Exercise) should write out the Subject and Object Clauses in the Latin Exercise, as Principal Sentences, and in the words of the speakers. Thus, (1) *sol lunā major est*. (2) *Ego in animo habeo*, &c. (3) *Ego in animo habui* (or *habueram*) *ex Italia*, &c. (4) *Nunquam nos revertemur*, &c.

In the English-Latin Exercise, (before being turned into Latin) the Subject and Object Clauses may be similarly turned into Principal Sentences. (1) *Four hundred of the enemy are hastening*, &c. (2) *Some of the citizens say one thing, others another*. (3) *I had purposed to set out for Greece, but now I purpose*, &c. Then use the Rule in Par. 217.

1. *It had been ascertained that four hundred of the enemy were hastening to the city.* 2. *He answered that some (26) of the citizens said one thing, others another.* 3. *He said that he had formerly purposed to set-out for (i.e. to) Greece, but (139a) that now he purposed to remain in Italy.* 4. *It is certain that the women will never remain in Greece.* 5. *Who does-not-know that Italy is larger than Sicily?* 6. *We did-not-know that the hostages had been immediately bound.* 7. *I informed his brother that we had the horse, and that we should sell it to-morrow.* 8. *It was ascertained by our spies that three thousand of the enemy had set-out from the camp by night.* 9. *They said that we (212) should be conquered by the Scythians.* 10. *Who does-not-know that Turquin was sent into exile by Brutus?* 11. *I for-my-part (139) still hope; but Tullius says that the river will be crossed before the third day.* 12. *When will you confess that you (168) (164) alone (96) must pay the penalty of this folly?*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 219** 1. Impersonal Verbs denoting *feeling* require the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause¹:

Misēret Figet Poenitet Pūdet Taedet	} me tuae stultitiae.	I	pity am vexed at repent of am ashamed of am weary of	} your folly.

- 220** 2. Others require an Accusative of the Person, and an Infinitive, or Nominative, for the Subject:

Dēcet Dēdēcet	} mē	{ diligētia. hūc faciūro.	Industry To do this	{ becomes or misbecomes	} me.

- 221** 3. Others require a Dative of the Person and an Infinitive for the Subject.

Lībet Līcet	} mīhī hūc faciūro.	It pleases me (suits my fancy) It is lawful for me	} to do this. ²

¹ So in Old English, *it repents me of, it pitied him of, &c.*

² Plācēt is used somewhat similarly with a subject-clause, "*plācūt lūgātos mitti,*" *it pleased them, i.e. they resolved, that ambassadors should be sent;* but being personally used, it is not classed among Impersonal Verbs.

- 222 4. The verbs *oportet*, *it behoves*, and *liquet*, *it is clear*, take an Accusative and Infinitive as their Subject-Clause.¹

It is clear that the man has been slain. *Liquet hominem interfectum esse.*

- 223 Note that *oportet* (or *dēbeo*, *I owe*) is never followed by the Perfect Infinitive.

You ought to come, lit., *it* *Oportet tē (or dēbēs) venīre.*
behoves you to come.

You ought to have come, lit., *Oportuit tē (or dēbuisti) venīre.*
it behoved you to come.

- 224 5. Several Verbs relating to the weather are used impersonally, as in English: *pluit*, *it rains*, &c.

- 225 All the above Verbs (except those in Class 5) are of the 2nd conjugation: *dēcere*, *dēcēbit*, *dēcēbat*, *dēcuit*, *dēcuerat*, *dēcūisset*, &c.

- 226 Besides the Perfects in *-iit*, there are also in use *pertaesum est* (for *taedūit*); *miseritum est*; *pigitum est*; *pnditum est*; *licitum est*; *libitum est* (which is found in Cicero perhaps to the exclusion of *libūit*).

EXERCISE LXIX.

1. Senem stultitiae suae poenitebit.² 2. Quande mulieres suspitionis suae pudebit? 3. Non dubium est quin pedites huius tam longi itineris taedeat. 4. Licebit hosti nocto ex urbe proficisci. 5. Oportuit te ei mulieri veniam dare. 6. Nonne licebat nobis isti praedam eripere? 7. Interrogavi latronem nonne se tot scelerum puderet, nonne latrociniorum jam pertaesum esset. 8. Nonne iudicem dedecebat inepto loqui? 9. Aliquando te tuae tam ineptae jactationis poenitebit.³ 10. De hac re libitum est mihi plura scribere.

- 227 ¹ *Oportet* and *liquet* are also followed by the Subjunctive with *ut* omitted; *oportet (ut) virtutem amare*, *it is right that you should love virtue*. The insertion of the *ut* is post-classical, or rare.

- 227^a ² As the implied Subject of the sentence is *senex*, "the old man will repent," *suius* is here used and not *sius*, see Par. 218.

- 228 ³ *Tam* is often used between a pronominal and ordinary Adjective in the sense of *very*.

11. Interrogabo mulierem nonne se jam jactationis suae taed-
ent. 12. Liquebat hostes per dolum atque insidias pacem
petere. 13. Licet omnes (227) fremant; consilium meum
non muto.

1. *When will it be lawful for us to set-out from the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the citizens are-ashamed of their (227a) boasting.* 3. *Ask, dear son, whether the women repented of their suspicion.* 4. *Does it befit an orator to be-angry without cause?* 5. *You ought to know at-least these-things which it misbecomes even (141a) a boy to-be-ignorant-of.* 6. *I asked the magistrate whether it-was-lawful to bury the dead within the city.* 7. *It-is-clear that his brothers were treacherously slain.* 8. *Let (227) them murmur to one another (189) that I am guilty; I-for-my-part (189) know that I am innocent.* 9. *When will you confess that you ought to (223) have led those two hundred soldiers with you?* 10. *It was uncertain whether the woman was weary of the journey or desired to return to her father.* 11. *Balbus declared that his slaves ought to have snatched the booty from the robbers.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

229

1. Possum, pōtuī, posse, — *to be able; can.*¹

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.		3. Imperfect.	
Pos-sum	Pos-sim	Pōt-eram	Pos-sem
Pōt-ēs	Pos-sis	Pōt-ērās	Pos-sēs
Pōt-est	Pos-sit	Pōt-ērāt	Pos-sēt
Pos-sūmūs	Pos-simūs	Pōt-ērāmūs	Pos-sēmūs
Pōt-estis	Pos-sitis	Pōt-ērātis	Pos-sētis.
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pōt-erant	Pos-sent
2 Future-Simple.		4. Perfect.	
Pōt-ēro	(wanting.)	Pōt-ui	Pōt-uērīm
Pōt-ērīs		Pōt-uistī	Pōt-uērīs
Pōt-erit		Pōt-uīt	Pōt-uērīt
Pōt-erimūs		Pōt-uimūs	Pōt-uērīmūs
Pōt-eritis		Pōt-uistis	Pōt-uērītis
Pōt-erunt		Pōt-uērunt (erē)	Pōt-uērint

230

¹ Pos-sum is compounded of potis-sum, *I-am-able*, which passes into pōte-sum and thence to pos-sum. The Tenses may be obtained by putting pot- before the different parts of the Verb sum and (1) striking out *f* after *t*, e.g. pot-(f)ui; (2) changing *t* into *s* before *s*, e.g. pos-sum (not pot-sum); (3) contracting pot-esse and pot-essum into posse and possem.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>		6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Pöt-uëro	(wanting)	Pöt-uëram	Pöt-uissem
Pöt-uëris		Pöt-uërās	Pöt-uissēs
Pöt-uërit		Pöt-uërāt	Pöt-uissēt
Pöt-uërimūs		Pöt-uërāmūs	Pöt-uissēmūs
Pöt-uëritīs		Pöt-uërātīs	Pöt-uissētīs
Pöt-uërint		Pöt-uërant	Pöt-uissent

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—Possē. Perf. and Plup.—Pötuissē. Future—wanting. (Participle pötens, used only as Adjective, powerful.)

- 231 As possum has no Participle in -rus, it cannot form the Periphrastic Tense of the Subjunctive (Par. 155) used to represent the Future in an Indirect Sentence. Hence, in this and other Verbs which have not the Participle in -rus, a Periphrasis (see Par. 212) is used:

I will ask whether he will be able to help me. Interrogābo num fütürum sit
: - ut possit mihi subvenire, i.e.
whether it-will-come-to-pass
that he may be able.

EXERCISE LXX.

- 232 Pötui (and sometimes pötëram) is sometimes followed, like oportuit above, by a Present Inf. where the English *could* requires the Perfect Infinitive:

You could have come. Pötuisti (or pötëras) vënire.

1. Veniam si potero; cura tu ut venire possis.
2. Poteras patri tuo parere, sed beneficiorum eius plerumque immemor eras.
3. Interrogavi nonne possent trecenti nostrorum, cum mille equitibus sociorum, duobus milibus hostium resistere.
4. Non possumus justius quam a te gubernari.
5. Nonne potuistis melius scribere? Frater vester optime scribere poterat (*used to be able*).
6. Nihil honestius Epaminondae dari potuit quam mors clarissima.
7. Quis dubitat quin urbs

a nostris (34) expugnari potuerit? 8. Interrogavi agricolam numne potuisset quolibet tempore fundum suum vendere.¹ 9. Valde dubito num futurum sit ut possis voluptatis illecebris resistere. 10. Miserum est olim potuisse, nunc non posse, amicis subvenire.

1. *There is no doubt that you can help me, O friends.* 2. *I asked our men whether they could resist three thousand of the enemy.*² 3. *Will you not be able to come, boys, if we ask you?* 4. *You could have written better, but you neglected the matter.* 5. *That you may be able to help others, acquire riches.* 6. *The enemy bridged the river that they might be able at any time (quolibet) to invade our territories.* 7. *Do you believe that you will be able to resist these great enticements?* 8. *Those who cannot be first, can generally be before (prior) the last.*
2. *Vōlo, vōlūi, vellē, —I am willing, wish.*
3. *Nōlo, nōlūi, nollē, —I am unwilling, do not wish.*³
4. *Mālo, mālūi, mallē, —I prefer, would rather, had rather.*³

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present.

<i>Vōlo</i>	<i>Nōlo</i>	<i>Mālo</i>
<i>Vīs</i>	<i>Nōn vīs</i>	<i>Māvīs</i>
<i>Vult</i>	<i>Nōn vult</i>	<i>Māvult</i>
<i>Volumūs</i>	<i>Nolumūs</i>	<i>Mālumūs</i>
<i>Vultis</i>	<i>Nōn vultis</i>	<i>Māvultis</i>
<i>Volunt</i>	<i>Nolunt</i>	<i>Mālunt</i>

2. Future-Simple.⁴

<i>Vōl-am</i>	<i>Nōl-am</i>	<i>Māl-am</i>
<i>Vōl-ēs, &c.</i>	<i>Nōl-ēs, &c.</i>	<i>Māl-ēs, &c.</i>

3. Imperfect.⁴

<i>Vōl-ēbam</i>	<i>Nōl-ēbam</i>	<i>Māl-ēbam</i>
<i>Vōl-ēbās, &c.</i>	<i>Nōl-ēbās, &c.</i>	<i>Māl-ēbās, &c.</i>

232a ¹ Where *suis* cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

233 ² For *can* may be substituted *am, is, are able*; and for *could, was, or were able*; and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of *possum* into which *can* should be translated.

234 ³ *Nōlo* is for *nē-vōlo*, and *mālo* for *ma-* (i.e. *māgis* or *māge*) -*vōlo*. The dropping of the *v* is illustrated by the forms *sīs* (for *si vīs, if you please*) and (*sultis* for *si vultis*).

⁴ These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of *rēgo*.

4. *Perfect.*¹Völ-ūī
Völ-uistī, &c.Nöl-ūī
Nöl-uistī, &c.Māl-ūī
Māl-uistī, &c.5. *Future-Perfect.*¹Völ-uëro
Völ-uëris, &c.Nöl-uëro
Nöl-uëris, &c.Māl-uëro
Māl-uëris, &c.6. *Pluperfect.*¹Völ-uëram
Völ-uëras, &c.Nöl-uëram
Nöl-uëras, &c.Māl-uëram
Māl-uëras, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present.*Vél-im
Vél-īs
Vél-īt
Vél-īmūs
Vél-ītīs
Vél-intNöl-im
Nöl-īs
Nöl-īt
Nöl-īmūs
Nöl-ītīs
Nöl-intMāl-im
Māl-īs
Māl-īt
Māl-īmūs
Māl-ītīs
Māl-int2. *Imperfect.*Vel-lem
Vel-lēs
Vel-lēt
Vel-lēmūs
Vel-lētīs
Vel-lentNol-lem
Nol-lēs
Nol-lēt
Nol-lēmūs
Nol-lētīs
Nol-lentMal-lem
Mal-lēs
Mal-lēt
Mal-lēmūs
Mal-lētīs
Mal-lent3. *Perfect.*¹Völ-uërim
Völ-uëris, &c.Nöl-uërim
Nöl-uëris, &c.Māl-uërim
Māl-uëris, &c.4. *Pluperfect.*¹Völ-nissem
Völ-nissēs, &c.Nöl-nissem
Nöl-nissēs, &c.Māl-nissem
Māl-nissēs, &c.¹ These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of mōnēo.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	<i>Present.</i>	
(Wanting.)	Nōl-i. Nōl-ite.	(Wanting.)
	<i>Future.</i>	
	Nōl-ito. Nōl-ito. Nōl-ītōte. Nōl-unto.	

INFINITIVE MOOD

	<i>Present.</i>	
Vel-lě.	Nol-lě.	Mal-lě.
	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Vōl-uissě.	Nōl-uissě.	Māl-uissě.
	<i>Present Participle.</i>	
Vōl-ens.	Nōl-ens.	(Wanting.)
	<i>Gerunds and Supines.</i>	
(Wanting.)	(Wanting.)	(Wanting.)

EXERCISE LXXI.

Mālo, (being a contraction of mǎgis—vōlo, *I wish rather*), is naturally followed by *quam than*, coupling Infinitives or Nouns (62) in the same Case.

We had rather fight than yield. Pugnāre *quam* cēdere mālūmus.

1. Idem velle atque idem nolle—ea demum est vera amicitia.¹
2. Imperator cum nollet mihi obesse, interrogavit fratrem meum num vellein clam ex urbe excedere. 3. Non dubium est quin malis hic (*adv.*) manere; sed excedendum tibi erit.
4. Māne nunc, si vis; sed si eras voles excedere, non tibi

¹ The Nom. to est is the sentence *Idem . . . nolle*. *Idem* (not *idem*, Par. 103) is Acc. Neut. governed by *velle*. Instead of *ea* we ought strictly to have *id*, *i.e. that (thing)*, Nom. in Apposition to the sentence *idem . . . nolle*. But *id* is "attracted" into the gender of *amicitia*.

licebit. 5. Quid vultis, ignavissimi? Semper fugere quam mori maluistis. 6. Hoc vel voluisse mox tibi inhonestum videbitur.¹ 7. Curate, judices, ut justa non solum dicatis sed etiam velitis. 8. Nolebam reum vinciri; sed, si praetor ita voluerit, vinciendus erit. 9. Nunc quidem puer non vult discere; sed non dubium est quin futurum sit ut mox discere malit quam ludere.² 10. Interrogavi (133) fratrem eius num ludere quam discere maluerit. 11. Quam turpe est fallere! Nolite mentiri, ne multa, quae non vultis, pati cogamini. 12. Roganti mihi ut cenaret mecum, respondit se nolle foris cenare.³ 13. Nonne disciplinam quam fugam (62) mavis.

1. *What do you wish, citizens? Do you prefer six hundred kings to (quam) one? 2. Why, O friend, would you not (i.e. were you unwilling to) obey the excellent Tullius? 3. There is no doubt that he was unwilling to resist the citizens. 4. When, if-not (nisi) now, will they be willing to take up (i.e., to prepare) arms that they may preserve the city? 5. I have no doubt, (my) friend, that you prefer death to (quam) slavery. 6. I asked them whether they wished to be slaves (i.e., to serve); but they (illi autem) replied that they preferred (217) to pay tribute rather than die. 7. To wish-for things-useful, is a great part of a happy life. 8. I asked his friends to help him; but they were unwilling to sustain an idle man. 9. Which (85) of you (93) two prefers to dine out of doors? 10. I am ashamed of having even (141a) wished-for this.*

Fĕro, tĕli, ferrĕ, lĕtum, *I bear, endure, bring.*

235 Fĕro, in the Present-derived Tenses, is conjugated like rĕgo, except that, after fer-:

(1) e final is dropped, and also e before r.⁴
fer-(e), Imperat.; fer-(e)res, Imperf. Subj.

(2) i is dropped before s or t.

fer-(i)s. fer-(i)t, Indic. Pres.

¹ The Subject of vĭdĕbitur is a Clause. Hĕc is Acc. governed by vĭluisse.

² Not lŭdĕrĕ mĕlĭt. The Latins do not like to have a prose sentence ending in -ŭ - - -, because it is the regular end of a hexameter verse. They would prefer "rĕdĭrĕ stĕtim vŏlĕbant" to "stĕtim rĕdĭrĕ vŏlĕbant."

³ Where is the Dat. naturally governed by respondit? Fŏris is an Adverb.

⁴ The -e final is similarly dropped in the Imperative Sing. of dĭco, dŭco, and fĕcio: dĭc, dŭc, fĕc.

The Perfect-derived tenses are formed, in the Active, regularly from *tūli* (root *toll-o*, *I bear*), and, in the Passive, from *lātus* (another form of the same root).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indic. Present. Fēr-o, fer-s, fer-t, fēr-īmus, fēr-tis, fēr-unt.

Imperative Pres. Fer, fer-tē. *Fut.* Fer-to, fert-o, fer-tōtē, fēr-unto.

Subjunct. Imperf. Fer-rem, fer-res, fer-ret, fer-rēmus, fer-rētis, fer-rent.

Infinitive Pres. Fer-re.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. Fēr-am. *Imperf.* Fēr-ēbam. *Perf.* Tūli.

Fut. Perf. Tūl-ero. *Pluperf.* Tūl-eram.

Subjunctive Pres. Fēr-am. *Perf.* Tūl-ērim. *Pluperf.* Tūl-issem.

Infinitive Perf. Tū-lisse. *Fut.* Lātūrūs esse.

Participle Pres. Fērens. *Fut.* Lātūrus.

Supines. Lātum, lātu.

Gerund. Fērendi, &c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Pres. Fēr-or, fer-ris, fer-tur, fēr-īmur, fēr-īmini, fēr-untur.

Imperative Pres. [Fer-re],¹ fēr-īmini. *Fut.* Fer-tor, fer-tor, fēr-untor.

Subjunctive Imperf. Fer-rer, fer-rēris, fer-rētur, fer-rēmur, fer-rēmini, fer-rentur.

Infinitive Pres. Fer-ri.

¹ There is no instance of this form occurring in Latin literature.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. Fěr-ar. *Imperf.* Fěr-ēbar. *Perf.* Lātus sum.

Fut. Perf. Lātus ěro. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

Subjunctive Pres. Fěr-ar. *Perf.* Lātus sim. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

Infinitive Perf. Lātus esse. *Fut.* Lātum ĩri.

Participle Perf. Lātus.

Gerundive. Fěr-endus.

238 The following compounds of fero are noteworthy for the changes of the prefix :

Af-fěro (ad-fěro) af-ferrě, at-tŭli, ad-lātum.

Au-fěro (ab-fěro) au-ferrě, abs-tŭli, ab-lātum.

Ef-fěro (ex-fěro) ef-ferrě, ex-tŭli, ě-lātum.

In-fěro (in-fěro) in-ferrě, in-tŭli, il-lātum.

Of-fěro (ob-fěro) ob-ferrě, ob-tŭli, ob-lātum.

Rě-fero (rě-fěro) rě-ferrě, { rě-tŭli } rělātum.
 { ret-tŭli }

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

239 The construction of the Indirect Question (Par. 136) is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Conjunctions, not only after Verbs of *asking*, but also after any Verbs that take a question as their Subject or Object. Thus the Direct Question "Quĭd fěcisti?" *What did you do?* becomes :

<i>It is uncertain</i>	} <i>what you did.</i>	<i>Incertum est</i>	} <i>quĭd fěcĕris.²</i>
<i>Tell me</i>		<i>Dĭc mĭhĭ</i>	
<i>I shall ascertain</i>		<i>Cognoscā</i>	
<i>I know</i>		<i>Cognōvĭ¹</i>	

¹ Cognōvĭ and nōvĭ, (Perf.) mean *I have ascertained*, and hence *I know*.

² Why quĭd, not quōd? Ans. because it is the construction of the Indirect Question. This constr. is used with *intĕrĕst* and *rĕfĕrt* (329); it matters not what he said, non rĕfĕrt quĭd dĭxĕrĭt.

After all these Verbs, there holds the law of the SEQUENCE of TENSES (Par. 136).

EXERCISE LXXII.

1. Respondete, milites fortissimi, quomodo latu-
ri sitis hanc tan-
tam contumeliam hostium vel ad vallum vestrum equitan-
tium (154a). 2. Ferebamus convicia eius, feremus maledicta;
laudem eius perferre omnino non poteramus.¹ 3. Nonne
reperire potes quis hanc rogationem ad populum tulerit? ²
4. Non dubium est quin Ariovisto, regi potentissimo, bellum
illaturi simus. 5. Nonne miles es? Nonne vallum fers et
arma? 6. Interrogavi nonne milites essent? eur tandem
arma ferrent nisi ut hostibus resisterent.³ 7. Comperistine
quot nostrorum in hoc tam (228) funesto proelio eeci-
derint? 8. De provincieis ad Patres consules rettulerunt;
de legatis nihil relatum est. 9. Cognoscam per nuntium
num legem a Graeco rogatam Patres aegre tulerint.
10. Cognoscere voluimus num hae tot tantaeque calami-
tates a fratre eius patientius perferrentur. 11. Quid obstat
quominus, occasione oblata, res ad senatum referatur?
12. Spem mihi (192), quam unam habui, tu tua temeritate
abstulisti. 13. Tu qui totiens promisisti, (152a) nonne
jam perficies?

1. *I have never been able to ascertain why the matter was referred
to the senate.* 2. *Tell (237) me, friend, why you took away
from (192) me the last hope (i.e. the hope which last) I had.*
3. *Do not tell them how-many insults you endured, nor how
many you are about to endure; for they will not believe you.*
4. *The consuls had referred the subject of the prisoners (trans.
had referred concerning the prisoners) to the senate.* 5. *The
matter was referred to the senate: nevertheless you who (108)
referred (it), now deny that you referred (it).* 6. *Tell me, Tullius
(13), when (156) you will bring help to me.* 7. *I asked the
soldier why he bore arms except to (143a) fight against the
enemies of (his) country.* 8. *We could not (i.e. were-not-able
to) ascertain how-many captives our-men had taken.* 9. *You
who patiently endured so many great (i.e. so-many and so-
great) calamities, will you not (see sent. 13, above, and Par.*

¹ (a) Omnino nōn means altogether not, i.e. not at all, certainly not:
(b) nōn omnino means not altogether, not quite.

² Why quis, not qui?

³ Repeat interrogavi before cūr; look out tandem.

152a) endure this very (228) slight loss? 10. There is no doubt that the enemy will soon offer us an opportunity (5a).

6. Ēo, īvī, irē, itum—I go.

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. I

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Present.

Ē-o	E-am
Ī-s	E-ās
Ī-t	E-āt
Ī-mūs	E-āmūs
Ī-tis	E-ātis
E-unt	E-ant

2. Future-Simple.

Ī-bo	Ī-tūrūs sim
Ī-bīs	Ī-tūrūs sīs
Ī-bīt	Ī-tūrūs-sīt
Ī-bīmūs	Ī-tūrī sīmūs
Ī-bītīs	Ī-tūrī sītīs
Ī-bunt	Ī-tūrī sint

3. Imperfect.

Ī-bam	Ī-rem
Ī-bās	Ī-rēs
Ī-bāt	Ī-rēt
Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs
Ī-bātīs	Ī-rētīs
Ī-bant	Ī-rent

4. Perfect.

Ī-vī or I-ī	Ī-vērim or I-ērim
Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vērīs &c.
I-vīt &c.	Ī-vērīt &c.
Ī-vīmūs &c.	Ī-vērimūs &c.
Ī-vistīs &c.	Ī-vērītīs &c.
Ī-vērunt &c.	Ī-vērint &c.
or I-vērē	

5. Future-Perfect.

Ī-vēro or Ī-ēro	(wanting)
Ī-vērīs &c.	
I-vērīt &c.	
Ī-vērimūs &c.	
Ī-vērītīs &c.	
Ī-vērint &c.	

6. Pluperfect.

Ī-vēram or I-ēram	Ī-vissem, I-issem, or I-ssem
Ī-vērās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.
Ī-vērāt &c.	Ī-vissēt &c.
Ī-vērāmūs &c.	Ī-vissēmūs &c.
Ī-vērātīs &c.	Ī-vissētīs &c.
Ī-vērant &c.	Ī-vissent &c.

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Present.</i>	Ī	<i>Present.</i>	Ī-ens (<i>Gen.</i> ě-untĭs)
	Ī-tě	<i>Future.</i>	Ī-tūrŭs (ă, um)
<i>Future.</i>	Ī-to		GERUND.
	Ī-to	<i>Gen.</i>	Ě-undi, &c.
	Ī-tôtě		SUPINE.
	Ě-unto		Ī-tum
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	Ī-rě		
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	Ī-vissě, Ī-ĭssě, or ĭssě		
<i>Future.</i>	Ī-tŭrus essě		

242 The Passive of ěo is only used impersonally, e.g. ĭtur, it is gone, i.e. *they go*: see Par. 247.

243 1. The compounds of ěo are conjugated in the same way, except that those which take an Accusative in the Active, have the full Passive Voice. Thus from ĭn-ěo and praeter-ěo come the Pass. Participle ĭn-ĭtus and praetěr-ĭtus, and the Gerundives, ĭn-ěundus and praetěr-ěundus.

244 2. The compounds of ěo generally omit *v* in the Perf. and Perfect-derived Tenses: rěd-ĭi, trans-ĭěrim, praetěr-ĭěram, &c.

245 3. The Dative is not governed by these compounds, except by sŭb-eo (rarely), and prae-eo.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. Cum-jam mulieres liberique flumen auctum imbribus transiissent, curavit imperator ut senes transirent. 2. Peribit iste, nisi celeriter (125) redieris. 3. Cum ad ripam rediissem, alios transituros, alios jam transeuntes inveni. 4. Ibam forte ad forum cum subito Tullius me adiit. 5. I, decus nostrum, pater patriae, ut mox triumphaturus redeas. 6. Praei jurandum mihi, pontifex. 7. Pudet me abiisse; redire statim volo. 8. Unus tantum (*adv.*) exiens ab hostibus captus est: ceteri, cum jam exeuntes fraudem intellexissent, subito redierunt. 9. Flumen quod heri transiistis, jam glaciē plenum bōnnino (241) non transibitis. 10. Quid obstat quominus

redeas aditurus Apollinem? 11. Apollo aditus respondit mortom homini decimo die esse obeundam. 12. Praeterita (34) redire nequeunt.

1. *There is no doubt that he met death with (181) fortitude.*
2. *Having passed over the river (196) they began-to-wish (imperf.) immediately to return (redeo) (236).*
3. *If you begin the battle without cavalry, you will not be able to resist the greater forces of the enemy.*
4. *Alas! when, O citizens, will you return to the city whence you now go-forth exulting?*
5. *There is no doubt that we must return to the city with speed.*
6. *Returning to the city I met Balbus himself returning.*
7. *Tullius besought me to go to the city with him.*
8. *The river which you crossed in-the-morning cannot be crossed now, since-it-is-swollen (i.e., being-increased) by showers (236) (5a).*
9. *Are you ignorant that death must be met by all?*
10. *The battle having now begun (i.e., having-been begun) the general gave-orders-to the sixth legion to (143) charge the enemy.*

THE SUPINES.

246 1. The Supine in -u is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Ablative, and mostly after Adjectives signifying good or evil, pleasant or unpleasant, fitness or unfitness, &c., as "*āmārum gustātu*," *bitter in the tasting, i.e., bitter to the taste.*"

247 2. The Supine in -um is a Verbal Noun used only in the Accusative after Verbs of Motion without the Preposition *ad*. It can take an object after it, which the Supine in -u cannot do:

Ille came to play.

Venit lūsum.

Ille went to see the city.

Ivit vīsum urbem.

248 3. Besides the form with *fore* mentioned in Par. 212, the Supine in -um is used after the Pres. Inf. Passive of *eo*, *I go*, to supply the missing Future Passive Infinitive:

Ille said that the city would be taken.

Dixit iri captum urbem.¹

¹ The words are arranged in this order to show the construction; but in practice, *iri* follows the Supine.

The literal rendering of this is, *He said that there was a-going* (iri being used impersonally) *to take* (captum being the Supine after the Verb of Motion) *the city* (urbem being Accusative after captum). So:

He said that we should be sent to the prison. Dixit nōs ad carcērem ductum iri. (*Paras nōs*).

EXERCISE LXXIV.

249 Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Accusative (without a Preposition) after Verbs of Motion; and so are the Nouns dōmum and rūs.

1. Dictu difficile est uter horum peccaverit (9a). 2. Venimus Romam spectatum ludos.¹ 3. Audierat pater non datum iri uxorem filio suo. 4. Inde Delum navigant consulturi Apollinem; qui respondit frustra se consuli, (32) urbem captum iri. 5. Nonne hoc nefas visu est? Nonne etiam dictu turpissimum? 6. Mittendi sunt Athenas legati pacem petitori. 7. Non dubium est quin qui urbem speculatum venerunt, re infecta redierint. 8. Diversas ob causas juvenes philosophum adierunt; alii quidem jocatum venerunt, alii autem ad discendum parati. 9. I tu consultum Jovem, equidem Delphos ibo Apollinem consulturus. 10. Interrogate nautas ntrum Carthaginem an ad Italiam navigent.

1. The ambassadors who have been sent to seek-for peace have returned without-accomplishing anything. 2. The citizens sent the prophet in vain to Delos; for Apollo predicted that the captives would be slain by the enemy. 3. We have come here (i.e. hither) to fight, not to talk. 4. I asked the physician whether the herb was bitter or (171) sweet to taste. 5. When will you return home, my son? 6. The youth (monstrous to relate) set-out-for the country from the city intending-to slay (trans. about-to slay) his own father. 7. Having set the city on fire, the general gave orders to his men to set-out-for Carthage (196). 8. I asked the young man to come to dine with (see 'with') me, but he answered that he must-go to Athens on that day.

¹ What are the two pronunciations, and consequently the two meanings of "venimus"? Why is uxorem (in Sent. 3) Accusative (248)?

THE GERUND.

- 250** 1. When an English Transitive Verbal, *e.g. writing*, is the Nominative to a Verb, or the Accusative governed by a Verb, it is expressed (Par. 128) by the Latin Infinitive:

Writing letters is easy.
I prefer writing letters.

Faciile est epistolas scribere.
Malo epistolas scribere.

- 251** 2. But when the Transitive Verbal is preceded by *of*, *for*, *to*, *towards*, *during*, *in*, *by*, &c., the former Object of the Verbal *writing* is now made the Object of the Preposition *of*, *for*, &c., and the Latin Gerundive Adjective *scribendus*, *meet-to-be-written*, is used in agreement with its former Object:

The art of writing letters, i.e.
of letters meet-to-be-written.

Ars epistolarum scribend-
arum.

Let us pay attention to making
a bridge, i.e. to a bridge meet-
to-be-made.

Damus operam ponti faciundo.

During the building of a city
i.e. during a city meet-to-be-
built.¹

Inter urbem aedificandam.

In making a bridge, i.e. in a
bridge-meet-to-be-built.

In ponte faciundo.

Choice of expression is in-
creased by reading orators
and poets.

Lŏquendi elegantia augetur
lŕgendis oratoribus et
pŕetis.²

- 252** 3. If the Verbal (1) is Intransitively used, or (2) requires a Dative Case in Latin, the Latin Gerundive Noun is used, governing a Dative if necessary:

(1a) *The art of writing.*

Ars scribendi.

(1b) *We are born for acting.*

Nati sumus ad agendum.

(2) *I am desirous of pleasing*
friends.

Studiosus sum placendi amicis.

¹ With the English Verbal, we may generally either insert or omit the . . . *of*: in (the) *building (of) a city*, but the Latin construction is the same in either case. The English *meet-to-be-built, made, &c.*, is an inadequate rendering of the Latin Gerundive, which has no exact English equivalent.

² The use of the Gerundive Adjective to express the *Ablative of the Instrument*, is rare.

253 4. The impersonal Gerundive (163) may govern any case except the Accusative:

We must do our duty.
We must obey the laws.
We must not forget benefits.

Fungendum est officio.
Parendum est legibus.
Non est obliviscendum beneficiōrum.

EXERCISE LXXV.

254 RULE.—To turn into Latin a Transitive English Verbal preceded by a Preposition, place the Object in the Case demanded by the English Preposition, and make the Gerundive agree with it.¹

1. Barbari legatos causa petendae pacis miserunt. 2. Quid vultis, legati? Nonne ad pacem petendam parati estis? 3. Tunc quidem ab inimicis nostris ridebatur; nunc nobis ridendum est. 4. Si vis scribere, si scribendi causa huc venis, cur non scribendo operam das? 5. Rogavit me ut venandi causa equos plures colligerem. 6. Traditum est Fabium Maximum rem Romanam cunctando restituisse. 7. Mors est omnibus (168) obeunda: nec nos flendo (170) morti moram afferemus. 8. Quis nescit mentem nutrirī legendo, disputando acui? 9. Duc (237) nos citius, centurio; utendum est occasione ab hoste nobis data.² 10. Vita et utenda est et fruenda.²

1. *They live for the sake of eating; in-eating they consume their lives.* 2. *Do (237) something, my son; we are born to act (i.e. for acting), not to consume the fruits of the earth.* 3. *For the sake of discharging duty towards his friends, Tullius neglected his children.*² 4. *By punishing and by pardoning, not by forgetting, will you improve the bad.* 5. *(We) must obey (our) elders; we must pity the poor.* 6. *The conspirators had conceived the hope (trans. had come into the hope) of slaying the consul.* 7. *He pays attention to writing verses.* 8. *Have you come to Athens to hear philosophers, or (171) for the sake of breeding dogs?* 9. *Even in (in) leading a cohort there is some art (i.e. something of art); either (157a) lead better, Marcus, or-else do not lead.*

255 ¹ Of course in such sentences as *I will take-care-of the making of the bridge*, the "Case demanded by the English Preposition" is the Acc., because *take-care-of* is really a Transitive Verb, *cūrāre*.

256 ² The Verbs *fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, *pōtior* (207) may be used either in the Impersonal or in the Personal Construction, i.e. either governing the Abl. or agreeing with a Noun.

THE IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE, &c.

- 257 (1) *He is persuaded.* Persuāsum est (167) ei.¹
 (2) *(It) is certain that he is persuaded.* Certum est ei persuāsum esse.
 (3) *He says he is persuaded.* Dicit sibi persuāsum esse.
- 258 2. The Verb *fīo*, *I am made, I become*, is used as the Passive of *fācio*. In its Present and Present-derived Tenses it is conjugated like the Active of *audio*, except that *fīr-* is always written *fīēr-*; and the Infinitive is *fīērī* (not *fīrē* nor *fīēre*). The Perfect-derived Tenses are formed regularly from the Passive Participle *factus*.
- 259 3. Incomplete Transitive Verbs, *e.g. make, esteem, call*, &c. (which require, besides the Primary Object, a Complementary Noun or Adjective to complete the meaning) have the Complementary Object in the same case as the Primary Object.
- We will make you leader* To dūcem faciēmus.
- 260 4. In the Passive, these Verbs take the Complementary Subject in the same Case as the Subject.
- Balbus was made leader* Balbus dux factus est.
He said that Balbus was made leader Dixit Balbum dūcem factum esse.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

1. Mulieres ob incolumitatem filiorum suorum gavisae sunt.
2. Histrio omnia fit: heri rex fiebat, eras fiet servus.
3. Quis nescit Palladis imaginem a Phidia factam esse?
4. Quid obstabat quominus mercator fieres? scio enim tibi in omnibus rebus a patre indultum esse.
5. Constat legibus obtemperatum esse, ab eis qui in leges jurati sunt.
6. Interrogavit cur nos, crudelitatem nostram jactare soliti, regem cenatum occidero noluissemus.
7. Scribit se philosophum fieri et ob hanc causam velle Athenas venire philosophos auditurum.
8. Constat paucos hostium resistere ausos esso (32), nemini

261 ¹ Persuādōtur ei would mean *it is being persuaded to him*, i.e. *he is being persuaded*.

a nobis parsum (214). 9. Breves esse cupientes, o pūctae, obscuri fitis. 10. Admonete socios vestros ne arma contra patriam moveant.

1. *There was no doubt that the cruel Tullia had rejoiced on-account of the death of her own son.* 2. *You, who lately became a praetor, will soon become a consul.* 3. *I know that you have always been too-much indulged (257) by your father.* 4. *It is certain that the laws are not always obeyed.* 5. *What prevented you from becoming consul?* 6. *Having themselves been accustomed to spare no one, the barbarians declared that no one was spared.* 7. *Is it not well-known that Cincinnatus from (ex) a ploughman was made a consul?* 8. *The scout brought-word that a hundred of our men had been slain, (and) two hundred had been spared.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

- 262** The Accusative expresses extent (a) of space, and (b) of time; and therefore answers to the questions (1) *How far? high? long? deep? broad?* (2) *For, or during, how long a time?* and (313) sometimes (3) *How long ago?*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>The ditch is ten feet broad.</i> | <i>Fossa decem pedes est lata.</i> |
| (2) <i>He sleeps all the night.</i> | <i>Totam noctem dormit.</i> |
| (3) <i>He died two years ago.</i> | <i>Abhinc biennium obiit.</i> |

- 263** ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.—Distinguish between the Accusative of extent of time (*how long?*), and (3) the Ablative (Par. 30) of the point of time or season (*when?*)¹

He cannot sleep in the night. *Nocte dormire nūn pōtest.*

EXERCISE LXXVII.

1. *Tiberius Caesar tredecim annos principatum obtinuit.* 2. *Quis nescit Platonem octoginta unum annos vixisse, Socratem anno septuagesimo veneno interfectum esse?* 3. *Decimo die post captam urbem,² fossam decem pedes altam arci*

263a ¹ The Ablative also answers to the question: *Within what time? We shall know everything in (the next) three days, Omnia his tribus diebus, or hoc triduo, comperta habebimus:* see Par. 30.

264 ² Note this idiom *after the city taken*, i.e. *after the taking of the city*; so *ante urbem conditam*, *before the foundation of the city*.

circumdedimus. 4. Pericles, cum quadraginta annos Atheniensibus praefuisset, morbo correptus est. 5. Cum iam viginti milia passuum iter fecissemus, nuntiant exploratores bidui iter hostes abesse. 6. His auditis, imperator aggerem ducentos pedes latum, triginta altum, extruere statuit. 7. Non erat dubium quin hostes castra tria tantum milia passuum ab urbe possident. 8. Decima hora per exploratores compertum est hostes habere in animo nocte castra oppugnare. 9. Tullius, senex impigerimus, jam sex et sexaginta annos natus, dicit se tribus his mensibus Athenas navigaturum, esse. 10. Quis non meminit Trojam, decem annos obsessam, per Ulyssis dolos esse captam? 11. Tullius, poetae praeclearissimus, dietitabat nunquam se plus agere quam cum nihil ageret. 12. Dicitur urbs abhinc centum annos floruisse.

1. Do you not remember that Plato lived eighty-one years?
2. When we had advanced forty days' journey it was found that the enemy were distant twenty-four miles.
3. I asked the workmen to build a wall thirty-five feet high.
4. Having crossed the river we shall have to journey for two-days through an uncultivated district.
5. For three-days our men resisted three thousand of the enemy.
6. When Balbus was sixty-three years old, he was struck by lightning and died (trans. having been struck . . . he died) in the third month of (his) sixty-fourth year.
7. Within the next three hours we shall take the city which has resisted our army for three-years.
8. Caesar writes that the territories of the Helvetii extend two hundred and forty miles in (in with Acc.) length.

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

- 265** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and with *hūm-i*, on the ground; *dōm-i*, at home; *bell-i*,¹ in the wars; *militiae*, in the wars; *rūr-i*, in the country), the question *Where?* is answered by the old Locative Case, thus:

	Singular.	Plural.
First declension . . .	Rōm-ae	Athēn-īs
Second „ . . .	Cōrīnth-i	Corīn-īs
Third „ . . .	Carthāgīn-ē ²	Cūr-ībūs

- 265a** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and also with *dōmo* and *rūre*) the question *Whence?* is always answered by the Ablative.

266 ¹ *Militiae* and *belli* are seldom used except with *dōmī*.

267 ² The older form *Carthāgīn-i* is only to be used where the Acc. is in -im, as *Nēāpōl-im*, *Nēāpōl-i*. *Ilōm-ae*, is a contraction for *Rōm-ai*.

268 RULE.—The Dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, especially with the Verbs *sum* and *do*.

He imputed it to me as a fault, Id mīhī vītio dēdit, or vertit.
lit., gave for a fault.

This will be (for) a proof to me. Hōc ērit mīhī dōcūmento.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1. Num vitam rusticam crimini esse putas? 2. Pater meus litteris Epheso datis,¹ scribit se mihi libros hos dono daturum. 3. Hostemne oras ut te adjuvet? Num vis omnibus esse derisui? 4. Conjurati, Athenis capti, epistolam concermaverunt ne forte sociis suis, qui Corinthi tum erant, periculo foret. 5. Si domi manseris, ipse tibi dedecori eris; si ruri (id quod pater suadet) vitam ages, nunquam te facti poenitebit.² 6. Cur vitio mihi res domi militiaeque honestissime gestas dedisti? 7. Nobis, qui tum Romae vitam agebamus, Tullii crudelitas odio erat. 8. Eniti debes ut, non³ solum tibi ipsi, sed amicis omnibus qui Carthagine nunc sunt, adjumento esse possis. 9. Dum forte Neapoli moror, audiebam pullos sacros in aquam coniectos esse, quam rem Romani omnes religioni habuerunt.⁴ 10. Vobis qui Delphis vivitis, quique (not from quisque, 37) Apollinem veneramini, nonne turpissimum videtur Apollinis responsa simul quaestui simul derisui habere?⁵ 11. Audistine Cannis infeliciter pugnatum esse? Occidimus; actum est de exercitu. 12. I Roma.

1. *There is no doubt that, if you remain longer at Corinth, you will be a disgrace to your friends.* 2. *Let his life be an example to you, that you may know that life in-the-country is often happier than in the city.* 3. *I asked him not to impute to me as a fault the-fact-that (quod, i.e., because) I had departed from Carthage in-order-to live at Rome.* 4. *You will remain three months at Rome, your brother at Athens, we at Samos; soon we shall all go to Gaul, thence we shall sail to Rhodes.* 5. *When Socrates had been put-to-death at Athens—which (270) was a disgrace to the Athenians—his friend Glaucus betook himself to Cyprus; thence after two months he set out for Asia.* 6. *I like to live at Rome; that-fellow (likes to live) in Campania;*

¹ i.e. "dated from Ephesus," (not "at Ephesus," which would be Ephēsi): see Par. 265a.

² Note this use of *id quod*, that which, i.e. as, your father recommends: *id* may be parsed as *Nom.* in *Apposition* to the sentence "*rūri vitam ages.*"

³ Not *nē*, because the *nōn* goes with *solum*.

⁴ *Dum* is mostly used with the *Present*, though the *Principal Verb* is in the *Past*: "*dum haec gēruntur, hostes terga dābant.*"

⁵ *Vōbis* is *Dat.* governed by *vidētur*.

you, who are a laughing-stock to all the best-men (140), are setting out from Athens that you may live at Capua. 7. That great man was not more-renowned in-war than in-the-arts-of peace (trans. at home). 8. There is no doubt that you remember (memini, Appendix II., page 216) when (156) the Romans were defeated by Hannibal at Cannae (239).

THE ABLATIVE.

- 273** 1. Since the Ablative denotes the *means* or *instrument*, it can express the *definite price*, by *means* of which anything is bought.

The fish was bought for a denarius, i.e. with a denarius. *Piscis dēnārio emptus est.*

- 274** 2. It can also express the *measure*, by *means* of which one thing *exceeds*, or *falls short of*, another.

The sun is (by) many times larger than the moon. *Sol multis partibus maior est quam luna.¹*

- 275** 3. It can express that, by *means* of which anything is *filled*.

The river is full of water, i.e. filled with water. *Amnis plēnus āquā est.²*

- 276** 4. It can also express any *circumstance*, in which, or with which, something occurs; and hence it can express, (a) *manner*, or (b) *quality*.³ But in such cases the Noun must have an Adj. agreeing with it.

(a) MANNER, *He answered in haste.* *Respondit summā celeritate, or cum celeritate.*

(b) QUALITY, *Tullius was a man of ability.* *Tullius ingenio haud parvo, or magno, erat.*

277 ¹ Hence "*much better*," "*little better*," should be rendered "*multo paulo, melior*," not *multum*.

278 ² But in the best writers *plēnus* more often takes the Genitive.

³ Under this head comes the Rule (Par. 28) that *dignus*, *indignus*, *frētus*, *contentus*, &c., take the Ablative; but the Ablative after these words requires no Adjective agreeing with it.

- 279** 5. The Ablative is also used after Verbs and Adjectives implying *need, deprivation, emptiness, freedom from, &c.*

I am free from cares.

Vacuus sum cūris.

I have need of money.

Ōpus est mīhi argento.

- 280** RULE.—After Verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, the English Present Infinitive is expressed by the Latin Future Infinitive.

I promise to come, or that I will come.

Prōmitto, or, polliceor, mē ventūrum esse.

I hope to see her to-morrow.

Spēro mē crās eam visūrum esse.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

1. Ne mille quidem talentis virtutem emere poteris. 2. Multo sanguino ea victoria nobis stetit. 3. Duabus uncis procerior eras quam frater tuus. 4. Fossae aquae plenae erant, urbs frumento abundabat; sed omnes armis egebamus. 5. Comptum est nostros ab hostibus commeatu interclusos esse. 6. Magno timore sum, sed spero mox fore ut puer convalescat.¹ 7. Centurioni, viro summa probitate, promittenti se venturum, nonno tu credes? 8. Omitte timorem, mi fili; nam, quo fortius ei resistes, eo facilius tibi cedit.² 9. Divitiis facile carebis; nemo facile virtute caret. 10. Opus est auxilio tuo; miliens promisiisti te venturum esse; omissis jam excusationibus, fac venias (see 'facio'). 11. Balbus (multo felicior quam frater) ante urbem captam mortem obierat. 12. Quod ne asse (see 'as') quidem emere volumus, id asse carum est.

1. *There is no need of excuses; promise to help us.* 2. *There is no doubt that that victory cost us much blood.* 3. *We (can) easily do without flesh, but (sed) we need water.* 4. *Tullius, a man of approved excellence, had promised to come to see us.* 5. *Are you much taller than your brothers?* 6. *The more patiently he bore these insults, the more steadily he was loved by the citizens.* 7. *I will ask the general whether he has cut off the enemy from supplies.* 8. *He answered in-anger (276)*

¹ Verbs ending in -sco commonly have the sense of *beginning* an action or state, and are called *Inceptives*. *Inceptives* rarely have a Fut. Part. in -rus, and consequently require, even in the Active, the use of the periphrasis fore ut, like possum (Par. 231).

² Quo . . . eo, lit. *by how much . . . by so much*, i.e. *the more bravely . . . the more easily*. Why is quo Abl.? See Par. 274.

that there was no need of an axe. 9. *He is a man of little ability, yet by his perseverance he conquered very many rivals.* 10. *What prevents us from carrying on the war much more successfully, Tullius being now (jam) our leader (197) (5a)?*

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used in the following constructions :

282 1. (a) *Descriptively*, and (b) to express *quality*, as in English.

(a) *A fleet of two hundred vessels.* Classis dūcentārum nāvium.

(b) *He is a man of ability.* Vir est magni ingēnii.

In such instances, the Genitive Noun must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

283 2. To express (a) *estimation*, and (b) *indefinite price*.

(a) **RULE.**—Magni, plūris, plūrīmi, parvi, mīnōris, mīnīmi, tanti, quanti, and nīhīli, are used after Verbs of *estimation*, such as pendo (*I hang, weigh, value*), faciō, aestīmo.

284 (b) **RULE.**—Tanti, quanti, plūris, mīnōris (but magno, parvo, plūrīmo, &c.) are used after Verbs of *selling* and *buying*.

(a) *I do not count you worth a straw.* Nōn flocci tē faciō.

(b) *At what price was the corn bought? For a large sum.* Quanti frūmentum emptum est? Magno.¹

285 3. To express *plenty* or *want* (but this is more often expressed by the Ablative).

The pupil must learn by practice what words generally take the Genitive and what the Ablative: for example, indīgeo generally takes the Genitive, and ēgeo the Ablative.

286 ¹ The distinction between the Genitive and Ablative appears to be this: the Gen. is used when the price is stated *indefinitely* and regarded as a *quality*, the Abl. when it is stated *definitely* and regarded as the *instrument* whereby the purchase is effected.

287 4. After Adjectives of *knowledge and ignorance*, such as *consciūs, consciūs of, nesciūs, ignorant of, insuetūs, unaccustomed to, &c.*

He is ignorant of manners, but very learned in the law.

Mōrum impērītus est, jūris autem perītissimūs.

He informed me of his plan, i.e., he made me more certain of his plan.

Consīlii sui mē certiorē fecit.

288 5. After Present Participles and Adjectives that have the force of Nouns, such as *āvidūs, pōtens, insōlens, cūpīdus, &c.*

Patient (i.e. an endurer) of cold.

Pātien^s frīgōris.

He was an extreme lover of his country.

Patrīae erat āmantissimūs.

289 6. After a suppressed Noun, such as *nature, mark, duty, lot, part, &c.*

It is (the mark) of a wise man not to be easily disturbed.

Sāpientis est nōn facīle perturbārī.

It is (the duty) of a young man to respect his elders.

Adūlescentis est mājōres natū vērērī.

It is not (the luck) of every one to do this.

Nōn cuiusvis est hūc facērē.

290 7. After a suppressed Noun, such as *charge, cause, &c.*, with Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, convicting, &c.*

Having been accused (on the charge) of theft, Balbus was condemned to death.

Balbus (crīmīne) furti accusātus, cāpītis damnātus est.¹

EXERCISE LXXX.

1. Non cuiusvis est summos honores assoqui.
2. Haruspices aut stultitiae aut vanitatis recto condemnamus.
3. Quanti praedictum omissum est? Magno: sed equidem id parvi aestimo.

290a

¹ The Genitive is not habitually used to denote the *punishment*, but only the *charge*. But it is used of the *punishment* in the phrases, "*capitis, dupli, quadrupli, &c., (multa) condemnare,*" to condemn (in the fine) of death, two-fold, four-fold, &c.

1. Tardi ingenii est nihil nisi omnibus nota¹ perspicere. 5. Themistocles, providi animi vir, persuasit Atheniensibus ac classeni centum navium compararent. 6. Majestatis accensati, alii in metalla, alii ad bestias, alii capitis damnati sunt. 7. Quaerebam mecum quare apud hanc gentem parum (*adv.*) vimini veritas haberet. 8. Rhodum aut aliquo (*adv.*) terrarum hunc migrandum est. 9. Omnium regionum, id temporis,² Gallia et frugum et metallorum fertilissima esse videbatur. 10. Stultorum est doctrinae cupidus contemnere. 11. Barbaros, inuetos laboris, discipline insolentes, rudes rei militaris, facile vicinus. 12. Tempori cedere a plerisque, sed non a Catone, sapientis est habitum.

1. *The Christians, having been accused of treason before (apud) the proconsul, were condemned to the mines.* 2. *Where (292a) in-the-world shall we find a-second-man so fond of learning, so patient of labour?* 3. *Balbus, a man of incredible peridy, was found guilty of bribery.* 4. *I value the farm at-a-high-price; but it was sold for-a-small price.* 5. *I asked why the farm had been sold for more than (quam) the house.* 6. *It is not like a philosopher (i.e. the mark of a philosopher) to be disturbed by trifles.* 7. *It is not the lot of everybody to per vnde those-who-listen (202).* 8. *His brother was acquitted of theft; but Balbus himself, a man free from all fault, was condemned to death.* 9. *It requires (i.e. it is the part of) a great leader to effect this task; for effecting (186) which, Tullius has too-little ability.* 10. *Whether in-the world are you migrating from Athens?*

SOME USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

- 291** I. The Subjunctive Mood is used in its proper Subjunctive use when it is *subjoined* to a Principal Verb, to express (132) *purpose* or *indirect question*. But it is also *subjoined* to express (1) *result*, and (2) *reason*: (for cum causal with Subjunctive, see Par. 151a).

292 ¹ *Nōta* is Neut. Pl. Acc., used as a Noun, governed by *perspicis* understood: *to perceive nothing unless (you perceive) things-known to all*. The phrase *nihil nisi* is often used thus with the force of *except*.

² Here *id* is the Accusative of Duration (202); but instead of *tempus*, there is the Partitive Genitive *temporis*.

292a The Partitive Gen. often follows (a) Neut. Pronouns, e.g. "*quicquid, or ei quid tibi habuimus,*" *whatever food, or all the food we had*; and also (b) Adverbs, e.g. *aliquo terrarum*, *lit. some-what of lands, i.e. to some place or other in the world; ubi terrarum?* *where in the world?*

- (1) *The fighting was so brisk that many were slain on both sides; among whom it happened that the leader himself fell.* Tam acriter pugnatum est ut multi utriusque interficerentur; inter quos accidit ut dux ipse occideret.
- (2) *The Athenians condemned Socrates to death because he had (said they) corrupted the youth.* Athēnienses Socratem capitis damnāverunt quod iuventutem corrūpisset.¹

293 II. Besides its uses in the above *subjoined* clauses, the Subjunctive (or, as it is sometimes called, the Conjunctive Mood) is also used independently, as follows:

- (1) *hortatively, i.e. exhorting: amēmus, let us love.*²
- (2) *Concessively, i.e. granting for the sake of argument: Grant that you expel nature, yet she will continually return.* Nātūram expellas; nequē tamen recurret.
- (3) *Optatively, i.e. wishing: pēreas! may you perish!*
- (4) *Conditionally, i.e. expressing a statement made subject to the fulfilment of a condition.*
- I should like to come (i.e. if it could be allowed, &c.).* Vēlim vēnīre,

III. The Subjunctive is used (1) after *si, if*, to express a condition, and also (2) to express a consequence.³

If he came, (then) he would conquer. Si (1) vēniat, (2) vincat.

The *if-clause* is called the Protasis (see p. 238); the Consequent, or *then-clause*, is called the Apodosis (see p. 233).

293a ¹ The Subjunctive implies that the reason influences the mind of others, not the mind of the writer. Corrūperat would have implied that the writer believed the charge: *because he had (as a fact) corrupted the youth.*

² This usage is ordinarily placed under the Imperative.

293b ³ *Si* with the Indic. Pres. or Perf. (less frequently Imperf. or Pluperf.) is used in conditions which are assumed to be true, and is often equivalent to *when* or *since*.

294 1. R.—After *sī*, *nē*, *num*, use *quis* for *any one*, *quando* for *at any time*, ("*sī aliquis*" would mean *if some one*; "*sī aliquando*," *if at some time*).

295 The Tenses of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences vary with the nature of the condition.

The *Past Tenses* of the Subjunctive are naturally employed to express conditions (1 *a*) *impossible* or (1 *b*) *regarded as impossible*.

The *Present* expresses (2 *a*) conditions *possible* or (2 *b*) though really impossible, *graphically regarded as possible*.

(1 *a*) *If I had received anything (which I have not done) I would have given it.* Si quid accēpīsem, dēdissem (dārem would mean 'I should now be giving').

(1 *b*) *Should I receive, or, if I received anything (which there is no reason for thinking likely), I would give it.* Si quid accīpērem, dārem.

(2 *a*) *Should I receive, or, if I received, anything (which is possible) I would give it.* Si quid accīpīam, dem, i.e. *imagine me receiving something.*

(2 *b*) *Imagine Plato come to life again; believe me, you would blush while saying this.* Si revīviscat Plāto; crēdē mīhī, hanc dicens rūbēas, i.e. *I see you blushing.*

N.B.—The Tense is the same in the Protasis and Apodosis.

EXERCISE: LXXXI.

296 RULE.—*Ut* . . . *non* is not to be changed into *nē* when the Subjunctive expresses Consequence.

So rigorous was the charge that they could not resist. Tantus erat impētus ūt rēsistere nōn possent.

1. Donorum exempla imitemur, malorum caveamus.¹ 2. Peream nī hanc vere dico. 3. Plures cecidissent nī nox proelio intervenisset. 4. Si semper optima videre et facere possemus, haud hanc praeceptore nobis opus foret. 5. Si quis gladium a te insaniens poscat, nonne dare peccatum sit?

297 ¹ Note that, where in English we say "*those of the bad*," the Latin either (1) repeats the Noun, "*malorum exempla*," or (2), as above, leaves Noun to be understood; but in no case inserts *ea*.

6. Si vir bonus hanc vim habeat ut verbo inimicos interficere possit, hanc vi profecto (*adv.*) non utatur (295, 2 b). 7. A si Marco Crasso dares hanc vim ut digitorum percussione divitiissimum quemque interficeret (32), divitiis ipse acciperet, in foro (mihi credo) prae gaudio saltaret. 8. Cave quis tibi, epistola mea usus, ignaro noceat. 9. Nun quis tam amens est ut filiis suis invident? 10. Tanta v hostes in urbem irruerunt ut nostri, tanta multitudinem oppressi, in arcem se recipere non possent.

1. *By-chance it happened that a few of our-men had been slain by the arrows of the enemy.*¹ 2. *If the excellent Tullius had promised to (280) help a friend, he would have kept his word.* 3. *If any one asked (295, 2a) you whence you come, you would reply that you come from Carthage.* 4. *It cannot be (fieri) that a just man would wish to use an unjust power.*¹ 5. *If by some (quidam) magic art, Balbus were able to assume the form of any animal (he-pleased), he would choose a fish that he might (181) not be compelled to speak.* 6. *The general was so greedy of fame as to envy (i.e. that he envied) even his own centurions.* 7. *How are you-getting-on (i.e. what are you doing, quid agis) at Athens, my son?* 8. *Write to me how you are getting-on at Corinth.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

298 Qui takes the Indicative (I.) when it is used for a Demonstrative Pronoun with a Coordinate Conjunction such as *and*, *but*, &c.²; but (II.) it takes the Subjunctive when used for a Demonstrative with a Subordinate Conjunction denoting (1) *purpose*, (2) *consequence*, (3) *cause*, &c.³

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| I. <i>At length we reached the enemy; who (i.e. but they) immediately fled.</i> | Tandem ventum erat ad hostes; qui statim terga dabant. |
| II. (1) <i>We sent ambassadors to (Lat. who should i.e. that they should) ask for peace.</i> | Misimus legatos qui (i.e. ut ei) pacem peterent. |
| (2) <i>There were some that (i.e. such that they) blamed you.</i> | Erant qui (i.e. alij mi tales ut) te culparent. |

299 ¹ See the use of *accidit* in the first example in page 150, above. The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of *happening*, *coming to pass*, &c. so if they implied a *result* consequent on something preceding.

299a ² Qui is sometimes used for the Demonstrative without a Conjunction, e.g. in the idiom "*tū, cuius es sapientiae* (282b), *non errabis*," *you (of such wisdom are you, i.e. such is your wisdom) will not err.*

(3) *I congratulate you because you have such a son.* Grătîlor tîbî qui (i.e. quod tu) talem filium habebis.

300 After the antecedent *nemo*, or *quis*, you must not write *quî nōn*, nor *quō* (old form *quî*) *nōn*, but *quîn* (this applies to all Genders.)

(2 a) *Who is there (or, there is no one) that does not hate you?* Quis est (or, Nemo est) quîn tē odērît?

There was no day but Tullius walked with me, lit. on-which-not T. walked with me. Dies erat nullus quîn (i.e. quō nōn) Tullius mēcum ambularet.

301 *Vērēor* means *I am anxiously on the watch*. Hence, when it is translated *I fear*, the English requires (1) the insertion of a negative if the Latin omits it, and (2) the omission of a negative if the Latin inserts it.

(1) *I fear he will not come.* Vērēor (or *tīmeo*) ūt vēniat, lit. *I am anxiously watching that he may come.*

(2) *I feared he would come.* Vērītus sum (or *tīmui*) nē vēnirēt, lit. *I anxiously watched that he might not come.*

N.B.—After *fear*, translate the English Future by the Latin Subjunctive.

302 *Nescio an*. Before *an*, *utrum* is always implied, if not expressed. Hence in Direct Questions *an* is used to introduce an *alternative* to which the speaker is driven, “(Utrum hūc fātūris) *an* hūc nūgās?” (*Whether do you confess this*) Or must I suppose that you actually deny this? Similarly, in Indirect Questions, *nescio an* introduces an *alternative and more probable supposition*; thus, “Nescio (utrum ventūrus sit) *an* nōn ventūrus sit,” means, *I do not know (whether he will come), or whether, as is more probable, he will not come, i.e., I rather think he will not come*. Consequently, with *nescio an* (as with *vērēor*) a negative must be inserted or omitted in Latin, in a manner exactly contrary to the English idiom.

<i>I do not know whether he will come.</i>	Nescio an nōn ventūrus sit, i.e. <i>I rather think he will not come.</i>
<i>I do not know whether he will not come.</i>	Nescio an ventūrus sit, ¹ i.e. <i>I rather think he will come.</i>

EXERCISE LXXXII.

303 RULE.—With a Comparative Adverb, purpose is expressed by *quo*, i.e. *ut* ēō (Par. 277):

In order that he might swim more quickly. Quo (i.e. *ut* ēō) cēlērius nāret.

1. Mittamus legatos qui pacem petant. 2. Quotusquisque est qui tibi faveat! Sunt qui te oderint; nemo fero est quin tibi invideat. 3. Omnes laudabant victorem qui tot milia civium incolumes servasset, totiens hostem sub jugum misisset. 4. Quis est quin sibi consulat, alienis sua anteponat? 5. Dies fere nullus erat quin (i.e. *quo* non) rus tecum irem. 6. Fossam castris circumdedimus quo (i.e. *ut* eo) facilius hostibus resisteremus. 7. Vereor ne optimus quisque civium nos descat. 8. Nescio an res mihi non bene successura sit; sed id agam ut tibi subveniam. 9. Nescio an mulieres venturae sint; sed, si aberunt, equidem tibi subveniam. 10. Pavor ceperat milites ne praeda sibi eriperetur. 11. Lige quādam cavebatur ne quis, ob causam orandam, pecuniam donumve (see -ve) acciperet. 12. Cave ne aeger neve hieme naviges. 13. Non tu is (see Vocab. 'is') es qui mentiaris.²

1. *They sent ambassadors to (qui) ask for peace.* 2. *I am not the man (is qui) to use this opportunity.*² 3. *There was no one but wished to help him.* 4. *I feared that all the best of the citizens would set out for the country.* 5. *All praise you for (298, 3) (qui) having conquered so many thousands of the enemy.* 6. *Even if it were possible,³ I should not wish to do this.* 7. *I fear that the enemy, having now crossed the river, will not make (fērio) peace.* 8. *There were some who answered that not even an assassin must be delivered-over against the laws.* 9. *How-few (quōtus-quisque with sing.) are there*

¹ These differences between the English and Latin idioms are sometimes expressed in the lines:—

With vereor and nescio
For English *yes*, put Latin *no*.

² Note that, after "nōn ego is sum, tū is es, is est, qui," the Relative agrees, in *Person*, with the Subject of the Verb *to be*, not with *is*.

³ It is possible, i.e. it is able to be done, "feri pōtest," not pōtest alone, except in the phrases "ut pōtest," "si pōtest," and these mostly in colloquial Latin. The pupil should use pōtest to mean *it is able*, not *it is possible*. See Vocab. "even."

303^a

304

who are unwilling to use an opportunity of obtaining wealth!
10. There is no one in this city who will not prefer his-interests
(i.e. his-things, 34) to mine.

Sē, ipsē, &c.

It has been said above (Par. 218, and see page 328) that sē, suus, &c. (and not eum, eius) are used when they refer (in a Subordinate Clause) to the Subject of the Principal Verb. But there are exceptions to this Rule.

305 I. Sometimes an apparently Subordinate Sentence (e.g. one introduced by *because*) is really equivalent to a Co-ordinate Sentence introduced by *for*.

Marcius returned safe because I had spared him. *Marcius salvus rediit quod ei pēpercēram.*¹

This is really equivalent to the two Co-ordinate Sentences, *Marcius returned safe : for I had spared him*, "*Marcius salvus rediit ; nam ei pēpercēram :*" and ei is therefore used, because rediit is regarded, not as a Principal, but as a Co-ordinate Verb.

But if the *because-clause* be more closely connected with what precedes, and if some notion of *thought he, said he*, be introduced, so as to make the latter part appear, *not a historical fact*, but rather dependent upon *what Marcius thought, said, &c.*—then sibi must be used.

Marcius returned me thanks because (said he) I had spared him. *Marcius grātiās ēgit mihi quod sibi pēpercissem.*¹

306 II. Occasionally suus is used of different persons in the same sentence. In such cases the *sense* must determine the translation.

<p>{ <i>The Veneti sent an ambassador to Caesar (commanding that) if he wished to receive back his own men, he should send their hostages back for them.</i> }</p>	<p>Vēnētī lēgātum ad Cēsārem misērunt: "Si vellet suos recipere, obsides sibi remitteret."²</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

¹ Note also that the Indicative pēpercēram is changed into the Subjunctive pēpercissem (203a).

² The construction of remitteret is explained more fully in the rules on Exercise XCIII.: here, remitteret may be parsed as Subjunctive after imperāvērunt ut, which is implied in misērunt, they sent (with orders that).

- 307** III. Ambiguity in English is sometimes avoided by the distinction between *him* and *himself*: but in Latin both these pronouns are sometimes rendered by *sē*, so that the meaning of *sē* has to be determined by *the sense of the whole passage*:

<p><i>The captive besought the conqueror to spare him.</i></p> <p><i>The father commanded the son to restrain himself.</i></p>	<p>Captivus victorem obsecravit ut sibi parceret.</p> <p>Pater filio imperavit ut sē coerceret.</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

- 308** IV. Ambiguity is sometimes removed in Latin (1) by adding *ipsē* to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb, to which *sē* refers:

<p>(1) <i>Nature impels a child to love itself.</i></p>	<p>Natura movet infantem ut se ipsē diligat.</p>
---------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

(2) by placing *ipsē* in antithesis with *sē*, using *ipsē* to refer to the Principal Subject and *sē* to refer to the Subordinate Subject:

<p>Caesar asked (his soldiers) why they distrusted their own valour or his diligence.</p>	<p>Caesar quesivit (ex militibus) cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent.</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

- 309** RULE.—*Quisquam*, and *ullus*, *any*, are used in negative and comparative sentences, and in interrogative sentences that expect the answer *No*.

Quisquam is used for the English *no one* and *nothing* when *and* precedes: *and no one* *nē quisquam*; *and nothing*, *nē quidquam*. Similarly, *and never*, *neque unquam*, &c.

- 310** Distinguish between *quisquam* and *quisquē*, *each one*; *quisquis*, *whoever*; *quilibet* and *quivis*, *any one you like*; *quidam*, *a certain (person)*; *aliquis*, *some one*.¹

- 310a** ¹ *Quidam* means *a certain person (whom I could mention by name, if I desired)*, *aliquis* *some one (who exists, but it matters not who precisely it is)*. Note that *quisquis* is the only one of these words that has a Relative force.

1. Venator orabat comites ne se ante oculos suos perire sinerent. 2. Pertimuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in gratiam rediret. 3. Quaesivit imperator cur milites sibi totiens antea obtemperassent, jam obtemperare nollent. 4. Tum vero rex circumstantes obsecrat ut suae quisque saluti consulant, ipsum morientem neglegant.¹ 5. Quodam tempore natus sum; aliquo tempore mihi moriendum erit. 6. Non cuivis contingit optimo cuique suorum civium placere. 7. Si quis in scena saltat, ei non quivis motus sed certus quidam (motus) datur. 8. Inest etiam superbis falsa quaedam modestiae species. 9. Interrogavi nonne major natu esset quam quisquam ex fratribus suis. 10. Dixerit aliquis (*some one may be inclined to say*) inutilem fuisse hanc victoriam; sed eiusmodi dicta (quae cuilibet prompta sunt), flocci non facio. 11. Neapoli profectura subito obiit (265a).
1. *I hope that the city will soon be captured, and that no one (i.e. nor any one) of the enemy will escape.* 2. *They believed that the boy had departed from them and returned to his (friends.)* 3. *The general besought the soldiers to trust in their own valour and in his wisdom.* 4. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking) who (240a) would (i.e. wished to) carry the letter, one² of my brother's servants replied that he would do it.* 5. *Some-one may say (see Sent. 10 above) that death is an eternal sleep: but, even among (scilicet) the ancients, most of the philosophers believed that there is something after death.* 6. *It is lawful to the actor to utter not any words he-likes, but certain fixed words.* 7. *Sometimes it is a kind-of virtue (see 'kind') even to abstain from rice.* 8. *Can any one (294) deny that we must beware lest any one of the spies should hear this?*

EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF THE NOUNS AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

311 Dea, -ae, f. *goddess*, makes Dat. Pl. deābus in classical authors: and filiābus is found in inscriptions and legal forms.

Bōs, c. *ox or cow*, Gen. bōvis, has Dat. and Abl. Pl. bōbus and būbus.

Vīs, f. sing. *force, violence*, has Gen. and Dat. Sing. want-ing, and is declined Nom. vīs, Acc. vim, Abl. vī.

Vīres, f. pl. *strength* (Pl. of vīs, but not meaning *violence*), is formed regularly, vīrium, vīribus, vīres.

¹ What case is quisquē? See the word in the Vocabulary.

² Trans. a certain one; not unus, which would mean one only.

Jūppītēr makes Jōvem, Jōvis, Jōvi, Jōve.

Dōmūs is formed partly from the Second and partly from the Fourth Declension. The Gen. and Dat., Sing. and Pl., are of the Fourth, dōmūs, dōmui, domūum, dōmibus, and also the Abl. Pl. dōmibus; the rest are of the Second.¹

Jūs-jūrandum, *oath* (which has no Plural), and rēs-publica, *state*, are not irregular, but simply words compounded of Nouns and Adjectives agreeing with them, Gen. jūris-jūrandi, rēipublicæ, &c.

EXERCISE: LXXXIV.

- 312** RULE.—Cēlo, dōceo, and some other Verbs take two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

<i>Mercury taught Cupid letters.</i>	Mercūrius Cūpīdīnem littēras dōcuit.
<i>My son must be taught letters.</i>	Filius meus littēras est dōcendus.

- 313** RULE.—Antē, post (placed *Adverbially* between the Noun and Adj. of time), and sometimes (216) ābhinc, *ago*, are used with the Abl. of *Measure* (274), to denote an interval before or after.

<i>He died a very few days before.</i>	Ilūmo perpaucis antē diēbus ūbiit.
<i>Many years afterwards, he returned home.</i>	Multis post annis, dōmum rēdiit.
<i>They perished two years ago.</i>	Abhinc biennio pēriērunt.

1. Non dubium est quin solverit quod pro fratre spon-
dit. 2. Rogavi imperatorem utrum civitatem omnem an
paucos procerum jure-jurando obstrinxisset. 3. Quibus
domibus milites pepercerant eas cives ipsi incenderunt.
4. Quod frater tuus me non celavit, id cur tu occuluisti?
5. Num, to jubente, consul securus sumpsit posuitque? 6. Nolo
exorsa (see exordior) vel potius fero detexta, postea, jam
senex, retexere. 7. Tullius, primis annis, puer, equis bubusque

- 313a** ¹ The Gen. and Acc. Pl. dōmōrum and dōmūs are sometimes found. The forms are sometimes remembered by the lines:—

Si declināre dōmus vīs

Tolle (i.e. *take away*) -mē, -mū, -mī, et -mīs.

The form dōmī, *at home*, is the Locative Case, see Par. 205.

alendis; mox juvenis, rei-publicae operam dedit.¹ 8. Si quid mihi humanitus (*adv.*) accidisset, liberi mei defensore caruissent (295, 1a). 9. Quotusquisque didicit quomodo vivendum sit! 10. Filiorum eius alteri Tullia nupsit; alteri soror eius, perpauca post mensibus. 11. Fertur Venus² filium suum Mercurio literas docendum tradidisse. 12. Homo stultissimus filio, qui natu maximus est, grandem pecuniam testamento (*abl. instr.*) legat; filiabus nihil legat.

1. *The worthless Balbus was unwilling to support the parents who had supported him from boyhood.* 2. *I asked the husbandman when (i.e. at what time) he had sown (his) corn (pl.).* 3. *There is no doubt that the soldiers distrusted the general.* 4. *I asked Tullius why he was going-to-leave so large a sum-of-money to his three daughters.* 5. *Did you, a few days afterwards, promise your daughter (in-marriage) to that-fellow?* 6. *Do you, who elected me consul, now hope, O citizens, to wrest the consulate from-me (mihi) by violence (152a)?* 7. *At-first our men were driven-back; (but) soon a-second-time advancing they drove the enemy down-from the hill.* 8. *Why have you pledged-yourself to pay so large a sum-of-money?* 9. *Because you are bankrupt, do not (no) on that account make false promises.* 10. *Are-you-ignorant of the way in which (i.e. in-that-way) Brutus drove-out Tarquin?*

EXERCISE LXXXV.

- 314 1. The Distributive Numerals (for which see Par. 77) are used, (1) where the same number applies to *each* of a class: (2) where the Noun with which the Numeral agrees is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form, e.g. *litterae*, *castra* (so that the Noun implies a *group*, e.g. *litterae*, *a group of alphabetical letters*); (3) in poetry.³

- (1) *The men will be contented with two or at all events three denarii a-piece.* Homines binis, aut certo ternis denariis contenti erunt.

¹ Dat governs *equis* as well as *rei-publicae*.

315 ² Note the Latin idiom. It is reported that *Venus* did, &c., is never to be rendered "*fertur Venerem fecisse*," &c., but always *Venus* is reported to have done, &c., "*fertur Venus fecisse*," &c. A similar construction is used with *dicatur*, see Par. 177.

316 ³ Because, in poetry, number is regarded not as a precise collection of units, but as a *group*, a "brace," "dozen," "score," "hundred," &c., which may belong to any number of persons *a-piece*, so that a kind of distribution is implied. Thus any hero may carry his "cuplo" of darts, and any giant may have his "hundred hands"; and hence Virgil speaks of "*bina hastilia*," in the hand of *Aeneas*, and "*centenae manus*" belonging to a giant.

(2) *At that time I used to write one, two, three, four, sometimes five letters a day.*

*Eo tempore singulis diebus unas, binas, trinas, quaternas, interdum etiam quinque litteras scribebam.*¹

317 2. Cum . . . tum, used like *et . . . et*, sometimes mean *not only, but also*: see sentences 7 below.

(*Look out allicio, diffindo, inūro, obliuo.*)

1. Quam messem senex severat filius eius messuit. 2. Hostes insos fugatosque tanta vi nostri colle depulerunt ut no equites quidem in arcem se recipere possent. 3. Vita eius tot tantisq; flagitiis oblita fuerat ut turpitudinis notam non sibi soli sed toti generi et nomini suo inuississet. 4. Nonno apud Plinium, in Naturali Historia, legistis piscibus non supra quaternas pinnas esse, quibusdam lunas, aliquibus nullas?² 5. Injus urbis portas aurum vestrum, non virtus, diffidit.³ 6. Inter occulta et sepulta non multum interest. 7. Alexerunt audientium animos, cum oratoris eloquentia, tum jurisjurandi commemoratio, et hostium jam acredientium minae. 8. Incertum est utrum militibus singulos an binos denarios dederit, an denique alios pecunia alios promissis ad seditionem impulerit. 9. Qui cum (i.e. *Nor when he*) decemvir legibus scribendis⁴ delectus esset, statim intellexit Licinius rem non jam neglegendam esse. 10. Tanta erat hostium multitudo ut no tria quidem castra eis sufficerent.

1. *To (his) two daughters, whom he loved to a remarkable-degree (much), he left ten thousand denarii a-piece.* 2. *(His) sons he entirely neglected, except one, the youngest, to whom he left all-the-money-that (quantum pecuniae) he had collected.* 3. *The soldiers he allured, by promising to some six, to others seven, denarii a-piece.* 4. *The daughter did not marry that (man) to whom her father had promised-her-in-marriage.* 5. *Having drawn the water, the girl returned to the well to draw (some) again.*⁵ 6. *At the command of the emperor the consul laid aside the fasces, which he had assumed a very-few days before.* 7. *I*

318 ¹ Note that, with Pl. Nouns of Sing. meaning, the forms *uni, trini* are used, instead of the ordinary distributives, *singuli, terni*.

² For a list of the distributive numerals, see Par. 77.

³ It was a proverb of Philip of Macedonia that any city could be taken, to the gates of which a mule laden with gold, i.e. a bribe, could make its way.

⁴ This dative (for "ad leges scribendas") is rare, except in official appellations; and it is not to be imitated.

⁵ Remember that the Eng. Infinitive is never to be rendered by the Latin Inf. unless it is the Subject or Object of a Verb: see Par. 247.

318a

fear that something (301) amiss has befallen the excellent Tullius. 8. *My son, what you have sown, that you will reap.*

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

319 *He is too cruel to be loved by any one.* *Crūdēlior est quam qui (or ut) a quoquam amētur.*
He is the same as he always was. *Idem est ac (or qui) semper fuit.*

(*Look out* *accumbo, cōgo, comprēhendo, dēposco, nanciscor, rēgēro, pārio, excūtio.*)

1. Proserpina, ut flores aspexit, "Accedite," inquit, "comites."¹
2. Crudelior erat rex quam ut cuiquam indulgeret vel ignosceret.
3. Sperasne ceteros poenas daturus, tibi uni indultum iri?²
4. Centurioni milites increpanti vox haesit; nam meminerat et sibi uxorem liberosque domi manere.³
5. Praetor eadem, quae antea, respondit, lege sanctum fuisse ne quis mortuum intra urbem sepeliret.
6. Homo cum inter cenandum obdormiisset, subito tanto strepitu stertuit ut qui una (*adv.*) accubuerant omnes risum tollerent.
7. Mulier cum tres liberos uno partu peperisset, solitum praemium a regina depoposcit.
8. Exuta veste piscator se in undam mersit; mox anulum nactus regerit.
9. Tum Balbus, quem facinorum quae coactus commiserat jam poenituerat, rem omnem consuli pandit.
10. Continuo, excusso sopore, pater latronem comprehensurus exsiluit foras.

1. *When (she) had approached the meadow the flowers attracted the maiden's eyes.*
2. *(His) voice failed (desum) him when he attempted (i.e. attempting) to ask the tyrant what he wished to do.*
3. *Having shaken off sleep, our men leaped out of their beds.*
4. *We went yesterday to Rome to see a picture painted by the celebrated painter Tullius.*
5. *If he had revealed the (295, 1a) matter of-his-own-accord he would have-been-spared (167) by the conquerors.*
6. *It had been enacted that no one should possess more than two hundred acres, but the sons of Tullius possessed three hundred acres a-piece.*
7. *There is no doubt that you compelled the man to bind himself by an oath.*
8. *Those who remained in Corinth were all taken and slain.*
9. *When will you go from Rome (265a)?*

320 ¹ Inquit always comes after the first emphatic word of a speech, see page 215. For *ut* with the Indicative, see the Latin Vocabulary.

² *Esse* is omitted after *dāturos*, a very common omission (211).

³ *Centuriōni* is *Dat. of Disadvantage*; *sibi*, *Dat. of Advantage*; for *et* see Par. 146.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

- 321** THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE is used for the Indicative (always in the Present, and more commonly Active than Passive), when a writer is describing a number of actions so confused together that the times and persons are not easily defined; so that the *Infinitive*, i.e. the *Infinite* or *Indefinite* form of the Verb is naturally preferred. The consequent indefiniteness is somewhat similar to that which arises from the omission of *sum*; and this Infinitive is often found in a sentence in which *sum* is actually omitted.

Horses and men, friends and foes were mingled together; all was chance, lit. chance ruled all things. *Ēqui, vīri, hostes, cives permixti; fors omnia regere.*

- 322** A Dative of Purpose (besides the Dat. of Possession or Reception) is used after *sum* and *do* (268):

He gave me the book (to serve) for a gift. *Lābrum mīhi dōno dedit.*
This will be (for) a help to me. *Hōc erit mīhi adjūmento.*

A similar Dat. is sometimes used after *dūco*, *hābēo*, &c., meaning *consider*:

This was considered (for) a great insult. *Hōc magnae contūmēliae hābitum est.*
(Look out allīcio, anquīro, excōlo, torreo.)

1. Foeda inde colluvies; pars cedere, alii insequi; hi fugere, illi resistere ac propulsare; nihil consilio agi. 2. Campus, frumentis optime excultus, decem milia passuum in latitudinem, tria in longitudinem patebat. 3. Consenserant Patres; uni Catoni aliter visum est. 4. Virgines alias (88) alii flores allexere; huic rosae, illi violae curae¹ erant: una Proserpina liliis sinum replebat. 5. Fertur Ceres famem longam papavere imprudens solvisse, quod, intratura senis domum, forte collegerat. 6. Nostri per apertas portas irruere; ibi clamorem tollere, caede atque incendio omnia miscere. 7. Cur non ante confessus es te peccavisse quam res ipsa anquisita est? 8. Credo fore ut mox iudices timeas, quamquam nunc

¹ *Curae* is Dative; *rosae* and *violae* Nominative.

quidem negas quidquam de te compertum esse. 9. Quid? Errorem tuum, nisi tibi ipsi nocuerit, nonne vis corrigere? 10. Ulmos vitibus amictas quis non rubetis (*not from rubeo*), sole tostis antepōnit?

1. *The false witnesses had not deceived (fallo) the judge, who favoured neither of us.* 2. *The fields, scorched by the sun, have not produced (their) usual fruits.* 3. *The maiden whom your brother has demanded in (in with acc.) marriage, her father has not promised-in-marriage.* 4. *The two armies, which consisted of four legions (each), filled the whole (of the) valley.* 5. *There is no doubt that he collected a great sum-of-money.* 6. *When he had plunged into the sea, he saw nothing but stones.* 7. *When all had agreed, Balbus alone resisted the proposal (i.e. plan).* 8. *She did not confess her fault until (ante . . . quam) the king bound her by an oath.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

- 323** (1) *Quamquam*, *although*, mostly takes the Indicative; (2) *quamvis*, *however much*, always the Subjunctive (in Prose). (3) But *quamvis* is sometimes used as an Adverb: "*ēlige quamvis multa*," ¹ *choose however many, i.e. as many as you please.*

(*Look out pando, prōgigno, reor, sarcio, scindo.*)

1. *Scissa veste, crine passo, virgo ad caelum supplices manus protendebat.* 2. *Hic, quamvis male sevisset, sperabat se bene messurum esse.* 3. *Romani, quamquam hostem fuderant, tamen insequi fugientes nequibant.* 4. *Vestem sartam quidem, si necesse erit, patiar; turpem vero temaculis foedatam non patiar.* 5. *Legimus, apud Vergilium, Famam extremam prolem a Tellure progenitam.* 6. *Difficile est dictu cur hic tantus imperator tam imbellem gentem non facile perdomuerit.* 7. *His minis perterritus, saepsit se tyrannus militibus; tremere et exalbescere vel amicis adeuntibus; adeo (adv.) ut, ob metum tonsoris, se ipsum radere, coactus formidine, disceret.* 8. *Hanc occasionem defendae urbis minime sperendam esse ratus, Balbus regem ad necandos fame captivos*

- 323a** ¹ *Quamvis* is used once with the Indicative by Cicero, but this use is not to be imitated. *Quamquam* is used with the Subjunctive (1) in general statements, mostly in the Second Person (called the *Gnomic Subjunctive*), "*Although you may forgive a man, it is difficult to improve him*," "*Quamquam ignoscas, difficile est emendare*," (2) in statements expressing, not *fact*, but the *thought* of the writer.

impulit, jure-jurando se obstringens ita demum rem-publicam salvam fore.¹ 9. Itano mentieris? Nec nosti (*see* nōsco), prout serēs, ita te messurum esse? 10. Jure falluntur ei qui divitiis, non virtute, homines metiuntur.

1. *It is one-thing (34) to dine, another-thing to stuff one's stomach with food.* 2. *Did you envy that-rile (iste) tyrant, hedged-round with soldiers, who measured dangers by his own fear?* 3. *There is no doubt that, as-boys, we learned many-things which as-old men we shall forget.* 4. *Having routed the enemy, why did you not pursue the 'r'itives (i.e. those fleeing)?* 5. *Thinking that this opportunity was not to be neglected, the general ordered his-soldiers to charge.* 6. *After you had bound yourself by an oath to spare us, did you then impel the king to (ad) slay us?* 7. *The disciples of Epicurus, measuring (i.e. having-measured) all things by pleasure, were unable to estimate virtue at a sufficiently high value (285).* 8. *You who spurned her while-she-lived (i.e. living), will you spurn (her) (now-that-she-is-) about-to-die?*

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

324 Jampridem and jamdūdum change the Latin Present into the English Complete Present (Perfect with *have*), and the Latin Imperfect into the English Pluperfect: "Jamdūdum opto, or optābam," *I have been, or had been, long desiring.*

(*Look out digēro, expērgiscor, lābor, quēror.*)

1. Ceres, diu secum quæsta, tandem his verbis Tonantem allocuta est. 2. Aut non erat paciscendum, aut, si pactus es, stāndum est promissis. 3. Nec fefellit opinionem eventus; tanta enim vi milites in castra irruperunt ut ducem ipsum in lecto nondum expectatum caperent. 4. Jampridem colonum admonebam ut pirum fructu gravatam et jam lapsuram falci-ret. 5. Circa annem, piscium (278) omnis generis plenum, armenta pinguia pascebantur. 6. Quamvis multa dedecora in se admisisset, non dubium erat quin semper promissis stetisset. 7. Flores inter se dissimillimi, arte quadam in serto digesti, quis nescit quantum oblectationis afferant?² 8. Num imperatorem incensas quod unius et alterius (*see* 'alter') salutem ob incolumitatem totius exercitus neglexerit?

325

¹ Dēmum adds emphasis to the word before it, and is often equivalent to *only*: tum dēmum, *only then, then and not till then.*

² Flores is Nom. to afferant.

1. *Awake at-last, or sleep for ever (in aeternum) slaves.* 2. *If you had not made-this-bargain, citizens, the city would not have been delivered-over by the enemy.* 3. *It is reported that (315) Paris fed sheep round Mount Ida (i.e. Ida the mountain).¹* 4. *Our men, shut (in) ou-one-side by the enemy, on-the-other by a river and by mountains, were cut-off-from (their) supplies.* 5. *It is (the part) of an orator not-only (317) to arrange (his) facts, but-also to explain (them) clearly (when) arranged.²* 6. *You have caused me as-much sorrow as (you caused) yourself joy.* 7. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking) why she had complained she replied that her daughter had been torn-away from (de) her embrace.* 8. *This great man, whom neither threats had terrified nor gifts had tamed, succumbed at-last to Fortune.*

EXERCISE XC.

1. *Apud antiquos cor (non cerebrum) visum est sapientiae esse sedes.* 2. *Nostri, cum ad collem confugissent, biduum ibi hostibus resistebant.* 3. *Nostris famem longam vix sustentantibus allatum est magnum gregem nuper ab hostibus in castra compulsus esse.* 4. *Fasces illos severos et secures sanguineas nemo plebis non formidabat.* 5. *Post tertium mensem, quum in eam vallem descendissemus quam nuntius indicaverat, nihil repperimus nisi tabescentia cadavera eorum quos pestis absumpserat.* 6. *Hoc sermone perterriti, suam quisque (165) domum conjurati dilapsi sunt.* 7. *Nescisne Taurum montem, inter Asiam et Syriam interjacentem, a Livio cardinem quendam appellatum esse?* 8. *Hunc panem ne furi quidem invidere possim.* 9. *Jure dictitabat Menenius plerosque, ventre (197) pleno, humaniores esse.* 10. *Hinc orta est inter senatorium et equestrem ordinem summa discordia; quorum alter Caesari, alter Pompeio favebat.*
1. *Seest thou not, O Brutus, thine axes polluted and thy fasces dyed with the blood of thy sons?* 2. *Having broken the two hinges, the robbers tore-away the gate.* 3. *Contented with a little (exiguus) bread, this great philosopher demanded no more (i.e. did not demand more-things).* 4. *Your sheep were lying under a beech-tree, which (was) struck with lightning (and) fell.* 5. *By his pleasant discourse this witty poet delighted both old-men and young.* 6. *Near a very high hill was a narrow valley*

¹ In Latin the name of the individual precedes the name of the class.

² Avoid the repetition of Pronouns in Latin: trans. *facts not only to arrange, but also, (when) arranged, to explain; making (facts) the Obj. both of arrange and of explain.*

watered by a small stream (amnis). 7. (Fair)-shone the ground (hūmus) painted with many kinds of beautiful flowers. 8. I have been long hoping that the city will be taken in two months.

EXERCISE XCI.

327 Quam, as far as, is sometimes put briefly for "quam pōtuit, pōtēris," &c.: *he prepared as sumptuous a dinner as he could*, "cēnam quam (pōtuit) ōpimam pārauit." This construction, with the Positive degree, is rare, and not to be imitated: but with the Superlative it is common:

He hastened with as long marches as possible. Quam (pōtuit) maxīmis ītin-
eribus contendit.
Take care to come as often as you can. (Lat. shall be able.) Cūrā ūt quam (pōtēris)
saepissimē venias.

1. O sortem (206) infelicissimam! Quibus pelagus pepercerat, eos fere in portu perire!¹ 2. Specum quendam, in ipso montis vertice, pumice exeso structum, anus haec incolere ferebatur. 3. Ille inter frutices viridissimos amnis parvus de gelido fonte defluens quam gratissimos latices nobis suppeditabat. 4. Tales sonos ei quis e lyra elicere velit, Phoebus pollice opus sit. 5. Nondum venenatum calicem reus exhausserat, cum accurrit nuntius clamans regem mortuum esse. 6. Tuas messes, ut aiunt, ussisti; tua vincula cecidisti. 7. Aggerem illum altissimum decem diebus nostri exstruxerant. 8. Balbone credis? Peribis hercle, nisi anguem illum in herba latentem quam celeritine extimueris. 9. Has urbes Philippus illo magni aestimabat tanquam compedes ipsas Graeciae.² 10. Vergilius scribit Tartarearum portarum postes adamantinos ne a caelicolis quidem excindi posse.

1. The open-sea (pēlāgus) is not to-be-tried by us in this small ship.
2. Let us hope that the harvest will be as great as possible.
3. The general surrounded the town with a mound thirty feet high. 4. We have four fingers and one thumb (314).
5. Did you see the snake which the eagle had carried off?

328

¹ Trans. to think that they should perish! and parso as Exclamatory Infinitive.

² Compēdes is Acc. governed by aestimāret understood: "tam quam (aestimaret)" *as much as (he would value) the fetters, &c.* The meaning is that certain fortresses in Greece enabled their owner to keep the whole country in subjection, as fetters enable a jailer to keep a prisoner.

6. *Horace says that (nego) he cannot free himself from the pleasing fetter of love.* 7. *There is no doubt that the goat injured that beautiful tree as much as possible with (his) destructive tooth.* 8. *Are you not ashamed (see Vocab. 'ashamed'), soldiers, of having yielded to enemies so few (in-numbers)?* 9. *As-long-as you are (125) in debt, you will never be able to be contented with your lot.*

EXERCISE XCII.

329 With *intērest* and *rēfert*, to express *it concerns you, me, himself* (not *him*), the forms *meā, tuā, nostrā, suā, &c.*, are used.

These Verbs are qualified by the Adverbs *nil, multum, tantum, quantum, quid*, and also by *magni, parvi, pluris, minōris, tanti*, as well as by ordinary Adverbs such as *maximē*.

What does it matter to me in what manner you compel me? *Quid meā rēfert quā ratiōne mē (240) cōgātis?*

Intērest, it concerns, is used with the Gen. of the person or thing concerned; (but *rēfert* is rarely thus used). Both are followed by the Acc. and Inf., or by *ūt* (or *nē*) with the Subjunctive.

It concerns the State and us that you should be well. *Ēt rei-publīcae ēt nostrā intērest tē vālere.*
It is important for you to come. *Tuā intērest ūt vēniās.*

330 *Ūtīnam, would that!* or *O that!* is used to signify a wish, (1) with the Pres. Subjunctive for a *possible*, (2) the Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive for an *impossible* wish.

O that the past might return! *Ūtīnam praetērīta rēdīrent!*
O that he might arrive to-day! *Ūtīnam hōdiē advēniat!*

1. *A recta conscientia ne transversum quidem unguem discesseris.*¹ 2. *Interrogavi colonum num domi sedens murmur maris exaudire posset.* 3. *Respondit fulmen ibi decem ante annis de caelo cecidisse.*² 4. *Non nostri moris est ebur et aurum ad Deum colendum adhibere.*³ 5. *Quis tumidum guttur*

¹ Why is *unguem* the Acc. (262)? *Nē* affects (129) the translation of *discesseris*.

² *Parse annis*: Par. 313.

³ *Parse mōris*: Par. 289.

in Alpibus miratur? 6. Qui humana carne vescebantur apud Graecos Anthropophagi nominati sunt. 7. Utinam ex hoc fonte nunquam pestis in totam rempublicam defluat! 8. Eligendum erat inter duo itinera, quorum alterum per montes altissimos ducebat, alterum trans angustum pontem, quo nuper amnem junxeramus. 9. Dicebat homo sponte sua se venisse; sed frons ipsa testabatur eum adesse invitum. 10. Multum interest rei familiaris tuae te quam celerrime venire. 11. Utinam fur pecuniâ multaretur, neve verbera passus esset! 12. Minoris refert qualibus in aedibus vivas (240), si modo Romae vivis. 13. Aere alicui quondam oppressus, ne nunc quidem se omnino liberavit.

1. *The fellow had not-yet vomited-forth against me the venom of his envy.* 2. *He who had not feared even lashes and tortures, now hearing (abl. abs.) the words of the judge, trembled from-head to-foot (toto corpore).* 3. *It is reported that the raven, whereas (cum, with subjunct.) he ought to have brought (223) a golden cup to Apollo, lied, feigning that a long snake had caused him delay.* 4. *The centurion, his eye having been struck out (effodio), was no longer fit for performing military service (stipendia merere, lit. to earn pay).* 5. *They spoke with-every-appearance-of-truth (trans. with a most true forehead); but, in my judgment, they were lying.* 6. *There is no doubt that from this source many evils flowed into our country.* 7. *There was no doubt that he had been scourged before he was sent (i.e. had been sent) into exile (145b).* 8. *O-that you would not depart even a hair's breadth from the precepts of your father!* 9. *He thought to himself (i.e., with himself) how important it was for Balbus that he himself should return home (Ace. and Pres. Inf.).* 10. *What does it matter whether these birds are fed or not?*

ELEMENTARY RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.

- 331** 'Speech reported in the First Person ("*I* fear," said Balbus, "*I am* mistaken") is called Oratio Recta, or, *Direct Speech*; speech reported in the Third Person (Balbus said that "*He* feared *he* was mistaken") is called Oratio Obliqua, or *Indirect Speech*.

In passing from English O. R. to O. O. almost the only change is in the Personal Pronouns and Tenses, as above, *I* into *he*, *am* into *was* :

Speech in First Person.

"I know," said Balbus, "that you will help me. What is lost can be regained. The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered. Take courage therefore. Why do you delay? Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? Do not desert me. Trust in your own right-hands and in my diligence."

Speech in Third Person.

Balbus said that "He knew that they would help him. What had been lost could be regained. The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered. They should therefore take courage. Why did they delay? Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight? They should (or let them) not desert him. They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."¹

But in Latin there are changes in the Moods, besides other changes, as follows :

- 332 1. (a) *Principal Verbs in the Indicative* are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (b) *Inquit* is changed into *dixit* or some other Verb.

ORATIO RECTA.

"I know," said Balbus,
Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Balbus said that "He knew"
Balbus dixit "Sē scīre"

- 333 2. *Ēgo* and *nōs* are changed into *sē*; *vōs* into *eos*.
that you will help me. | that they would help him.
vos mihi adfuturos. | *eos sibi adfuturos.*

- 334 3. *Indicatives after Relatives and after Non-co-ordinate Conjunctions*, are changed into Subjunctives.²

The cities that have been taken
before we came here, can be
recovered.

Quae urbes captae sunt, ante-
quam huc venimus, recūpērāri
possunt.

The cities that had been taken
before they came there, could
be recovered.

Quae urbes captae fuissent,
antēquam illuc venissent,
posse recūpērāri.

¹ Before the pupil writes Latin he should practise turning English speech of the First Person into speech of the Third Person.

34a ² (1) Co-ordinate Conjunctions are *sēd*, *autem*, *tāmen*, *et*, *-que*, *nam*, *enim*, *itaque*, *igītur*, &c. (2) Non-co-ordinate or Subordinate Conj. are *ut*, *quōd*, *quīa*, *cum*, *dūnēc*, *antēquam*, *postquam*, *sī*, *quamquam*, &c.

When the Relative, e.g. *quos*, can be replaced by a Demonstrative and a Coordinate Conjunction, (et eos), it is sometimes followed by an Infinitive But for the beginner this construction will not be necessary.

335 4. *Imperatives* are changed into *Subjunctives*.*Take courage therefore.*

Erīgite īgītūr ānīmos.

(He begged that) *They should therefore take courage.*

Erīgērent īgītūr ānīmos.

336 5. Questions asked in the *Second Person* are rendered by the *Subjunctive* in the *Third Person* (*being really Indirect Questions*).*Why do you delay?*

Cūr mōrāmīni?

(He asked) *Why did they delay?*

Cūr mōrārentur?

337 6. Questions asked in the *First* and *Third Person* are rendered by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.*Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight?*Nonne hostis prōpū jam āhest?
Nonno ad pugnandum pārāti
sūmus?*Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight?*Nonno hostem prōpū jam āb-
esse? Nonne sē ad pugnand-
um pārātes esse?¹**338** -7. (a) *Sē, sībī, &c.*, are used for the *Person speaking*; (b) but where *sē, suis, &c.*, are needed to express the *Person addressed*, *ipse* is used for the *Person speaking*.(a) *Do not desert me.*

Nōlito me dēsērere.

(a) *They should not desert him.*

Nollent sē dēsērere.

(b) *Trust in your own right hands and in my diligence.*Spem in vestris dextris et in
mea diligentiā pōnīte."(b) *They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence.*Spem in suis dextris et in
ipsius diligentiā pōnērent."

EXERCISE XCIII.

To be turned into Latin Oratio Obliqua.

A. His auditis, Tullius, ad amicos conversus, "Cur" inquit (332 b) "moramini? Nequo enim ego volo amicis exitium ferre neque vos jam potestis morituro prodesse. Hostes jam

338a ¹ These questions are really partly questions, partly passionate statements: *The enemy is but a little way off, is he not? We are prepared to fight, are we not?* Hence, they are expressed by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.

prope absunt; mox aderunt. Urbs capiatur. Fugite igitur. Quod facere potui, feci; nihil praeter mortem mihi jam restat. Quae vobiscum auferre potestis, ea auferite. Num respondetis vos hic mansuros? Antequam vos inter cohortes conscripsi promisistis vos (338*b*) mihi obtemperaturos, nec fidem fefellistis. Satis virtuti datum est: jam saluti consulite. At cur nos hic tempus inani colloquio terimus? Equidem,¹ quoniam necesse est, moriar. Vos (335) vivite et valete, et curate ut mortem meam ulciscamini."

(*B. is already in O. O. ; C. must be turned into O. O.*)

B. Balbus having now departed from the senate-house, the consul addressed the senators (i.e. the fathers) to this effect: "Why did they (336) hesitate? Let them choose, if it was necessary, between a glorious death and an inglorious servitude. But he was persuaded that this was not necessary. Victory, not death, awaited them, if, without fear, they consulted the interest of the country. Not even the lowest of the citizens now favoured the conspirators. Already they were praised by all the best of the citizens, soon they would be praised by all. Why therefore did they sit there hesitating, since both Fortune and Necessity taught them that they ought not now to deliberate but to act? When they had made a beginning, the citizens would to a man (ad unum) approve their plans. He would say no more, for there was need not of words but of deeds."

*C. Tullius now turned to the soldiers of the tenth legion. "Why," said he (332*b*), "do you fear the multitude of the enemy? We indeed have only three thousand, the enemy ten thousand; but three free citizens can easily resist ten slaves. The victories that the enemy has lately gained have been gained by treachery and guile; but in this plain, treachery will avail nothing (nullo modo). Be of good cheer therefore, since Mars will give the palm to the more worthy army. If only you can repel the first assault of (their) cavalry, the infantry will speedily turn their backs. Trust in your own valour and in my skill (i.e. plans). What avail ten thousand sheep against one wolf? But why do I waste time in speaking? The enemy is at hand, the contest is to be waged (i.e. it is to be striven) not with tongues but with swords."*

¹ Equidem being (130) almost always used with the first person, should be changed into quidem when attached to cū.

² In turning this into O. O., inquit must not be used. You may either translate Tullius having turned to . . . spoke to this effect, 'Why did they fear,' &c., or omit the Verb of speaking and leave it to be understood: Tullius now turned . . . legion, 'Why did they fear?' &c.

EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

I.—ON THE NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.¹

(The only Verbs required are those given in paragraphs 1—112.)

EXERCISE I.

1. Probo scribae. 2. Fabri (9a) pigri. 3. Molesto pediti. 4. Pavidorum nantarum. 5. Jucundâ insulâ. 6. 7. Temporum prosperorum. 8. Stultis principibus. 9. Parvi papilionis. 10. Ossium magnorum. 11. Ab indigno comito. 12. Insigni labore. 13. Meliorum judicium. 14. Seytha perniciosus. 15. Itinoris longi. 16. Planitie vastae. 17. Velocium equitum. 18. Vigilum tribunorum. 19. Rogionum pulchrarum. 20. Morum antiquorum. 21. A benigno nauta.

1. From the good leader. 2. To the wretched sailor. 3. Of frequent lightnings. 4. Of the poor girl. 5. To great hope. 6. Of the left horn. 7. To the wise charioteer. 8. Of the active inhabitants. 9. Of the black teeth. 10. By the difficult journey. 11. To the short bows. 12. Of the third tribe. 13. To the lean face. 14. O angry poet. 15. Of the stern leaders. 16. Of beautiful fountains. 17. To the useful bow. 18. Of high citadels. 19. By the enemy's camp. 20. To a few soldiers. 21. Of the second cohort. 22. By (13a) the king. 23. By great hope. 24. Of long days.

EXERCISE II.

1. Maximus ille vir. 2. Pulcherrimarum urbium muri. 3. Optimorum poetarum dulcia carmina. 4. Majorum oppidorum arces. 5. Difficillimorum et maximorum operum. 6. Principum munificentissimorum jussa. 7. Harum tam miserarum calamitatum. 8. Pessima haec exempla. 9. Pulcherrimorum florum color. 10. Imbri tristi et pernicioso. 11. Quercus nigerrimae glandes paucae. 12. Ultimi illius diei memoria. 13. Morborum tetricorum multitudo. 14. Anrigae maxime strenuo dona (95) dâmus. 15. Quis to pessimo hoc rego liberat? 16. Quis haec ei dat?

¹ These exercises may be heard *vidæ vocæ*, and the sentences are numbered that the pupil may be rapidly called to translate any sentence at the teacher's discretion.

- 1.¹ *To this very wise girl.* 2. *The two brothers of the same woman.* 3. *The largest part of the outer wall.* 4. *Of very slender legs.* 5. *The girl loves his two brothers: which-of-the two do you love most (maximè)?* 6. *The very-old soldier loves older wine.* 7. *The very contemptible (superl. of humilis) memory of that most unhappy day.* 8. *With which of these two cities?* 9. *To the same woman he gives three apples.* 10. *To Tullia alone he gives three hundred cherries.* 11. *To the other sea.* 12. *Of the same camp.* 13. *To one-man's spurs, to another-man's sword.* 14. *Of the younger soldiers.* 15. *By this most troublesome thirst.* 16. *By the older (61) soldier.*

EXERCISE III.

1. *Hio' vi, illo sapientia, hostes superat.* 2. *Multos pericula minima terrent.* 3. *Alterius constantiam, alterius diligentiam laudamus.* 4. *Piscator tria milia piscium habet.* 5. *Noquissimorum puerorum versus non laudo.* 6. *Tussi febrique medicus te liberat.* 7. *Plura tibi quam nobis dat.* 8. *Pejor est iste pessimo meorum comitum.* 9. *Agricola optimus meliore fato dignus erat.* 10. *Nulli suorum carior erat quam sibi.* 11. *Hæc tibi uni jucunda sunt.*
1. *Which of these two journeys do you praise?* 2. *To this very-tender maiden alone he gives a hundred oxen.* 3. *The boy is smaller than the largest of the men.* 4. *Wisdom frees him from anger.* 5. *To you he gives more gifts than to himself.* 6. *The memory of that very keen contest was more bitter to you than to him.* 7. *This was more agreeable to you than to any of his companions.* 8. *By patience he delivers himself from fever.* 9. *What poet is wiser than Homer? what poem better than his poems?* 10. *The former is wiser than the latter.*

II.—ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

EXERCISE IV.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. *Castigaberis.* 2. *Agros vastavisti.* 3. *Laudatus est.* 4. *Pugnabunt.* 5. *No erraveritis.* 6. *Vastato agros.* 7. *Pugnaverant.* 8. *Ut ædificet urbem.* 9. *Vulnerata est.* 10. *Vituperabimini.* 11. *Ambulaveratis.* 12. *Cantavissetis.* 13. *Ut cantarent.* 14. *Cantemus.* 15. *Dubitare.* 16. *Scrævemus urbem.* 17. *Ambulaveritis.* 18. *Oppidum ædificatum erat.* 19. *Ut servaremur.* 20. *Ut laudare.* 21. *Canta.*

¹ On the position of the Pronoun Adjective between an ordinary Adjective and Noun, see Vocabulary, *this*.

1. *You will sing.* 2. *He will have been wounded.* 3. *Ye must build (imper.).* 4. *The city had been built.* 5. *Let us praise them.* 6. *The fields have been laid waste.* 7. *You will be chastised.* 8. *That he might be wounded.* 9. *That we might sing.* 10. *Do not doubt, O friend.* 11. *We shall have preserved the city.* 12. *I should have carried.* 13. *They would have been blamed.* 14. *Ye will not be loved.* 15. *That ye may take care.* 16. *We shall have been preserved.* 17. *You had sung, O daughter.* 18. *Sing, O daughter.* 19. *Ye were being preserved.* 20. *Ye will be wounded.*

EXERCISE V.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. *Puer valebat.* 2. *Terrebamini.* 3. *Timebere.* 4. *Territus fuerat.* 5. *Ut exerceres corpus.* 6. *Monuisssem te.* 7. *Ut monereris.* 8. *Doce puerum.* 9. *Ne timueris.* 10. *Exercueris.* 11. *Filia monita fuisset.* 12. *Ut terreat.* 13. *Valuistis.* 14. *Exercetor.* 15. *Exerceamus corpora.* 16. *Ne territa sis, O mulier.* 17. *Docebimur.* 18. *Terrebare.* 19. *Terres puerum.* 20. *Terremur.* 21. *Terruistis.*
1. *We had been terrified.* 2. *That he may fear.* 3. *Ye will be taught.* 4. *He was being advised.* 5. *We should have feared.* 6. *That they might exercise (their) bodies.* 7. *Ye have been advised, O citizens.* 8. *You will be terrified, O friend.* 9. *You have terrified us.* 10. *That you might be advised.* 11. *Let us terrify the enemy.* 12. *I used-to-have (115) a book.* 13. *You had taught us.* 14. *Do not teach him.* 15. *He will have terrified you.* 16. *You will have been terrified, O friends.* 17. *Exercise (your) bodies.* 18. *Ye would have taught him.* 19. *The soldiers terrified the woman.*

EXERCISE VI.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. *Duxeratis.* 2. *Contraxisti.* 3. *Quid homo dixerat?* 4. *Ut instruantur milites.* 5. *Ut instrueret aciem.* 6. *Scribes epistolam.* 7. *Hoc spem nostram minuerat.* 8. *Gloriam eius minuemus.* 9. *Agger structus fuerat.* 10. *Flumen ponte iunxissemus.* 11. *Milites ducentur.* 12. *Ut ducare.* 13. *Libri scripti sunt.* 14. *Ut ducoremini.* 15. *Quis legionem ducebat.* 16. *Ne nos duxeris.* 17. *Hæc tibi dixissemus.* 18. *Dicamus vera (Par. 34).* 19. *Ducēris.* 20. *Ducēris.*
1. *That they might rule.* 2. *You will be led.* 3. *He would have said these-things.* 4. *You have piled up a mound, soldiers.* 5. *She has been led.* 6. *The mound has been piled up.* 7. *Be ye drawn-up, soldiers.* 8. *He had drawn together-foot-*

soldiers. 9. *What will you say, friends?* 10. *His glory has been diminished.* 11. *That we may bridge the river.* 12. *The river would have been bridged.* 13. *You were being drawn-up, soldiers.* 14. *Do not say this.* 15. *Let us pile-up a mound.* 16. *You had written a letter, my brother.* 17. *Do not write these letters, friends.* 18. *I shall be led.* 19. *They are being drawn up.* 20. *They would have been led.* 21. *Our hopes were diminished.* 22. *They will write.*

EXERCISE VII.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. Dormiisti. 2. Puniti orant. 3. Urbs muniatur. 4. Opus finitum est. 5. Ut erudiremini. 6. Nutriebantur. 7. Ut vestias puerum. 8. Opus finieris. 9. Custodiverat obsides. 10. Obsides custodiuntor. 11. Urbes custoditae fuissent. 12. Erudientur pueri. 13. Ut opus finiatur. 14. Custodiare milites captivum. 15. A magistro erudiemur. 16. Dormiamus. 17. Erudiebamini. 18. Erudientur. 19. No puerum erudiveris. 20. Ut erudiremini. 22. Erudiēris.
1. *We had slept.* 2. *You will sleep.* 3. *That you may be punished, O citizens.* 4. *The girl had been clothed.* 5. *The boy will be guarded.* 6. *The camp would have been fortified.* 7. *That the boy might be instructed.* 8. *Let us guard the leader.* 9. *We shall clothe the boy.* 10. *The boy was being instructed.* 11. *That the tasks may be ended.* 12. *The boys must be instructed (imper.).* 13. *Nourish the boys.* 14. *We shall fortify the city.* 15. *That you may fortify the city, soldiers.* 16. *That you might sleep.* 17. *You were being instructed, boys.* 18. *You will have instructed the boys, most learned master.* 19. *The boys will have been instructed.* 20. *The boys will sleep.* 22. *They used-to-sleep (115).* 23. *You slept, boys.*

III.—GENERAL EXERCISES.

EXERCISE VIII.

(*Exercises VIII. to XI. refer to Par. 1—129; see also page 186.*)

1. Bidui iter fecōre. 2. Multi hoc negant. 3. Quantum pecuniae habes? 4. Et ego et tu hoo negamus. 5. Errare humanum est. 6. Multa eis dedimus. 7. Fato meliore digna est. 8. Puer matri est simillimus. 9. Plura tibi quam mihi dederunt. 10. Nonne equus est animalium utilissimum? 11. Utri plura dedisti? Nentri: eadem ambobus dedi.

1. *I will give a book to one of you.* 2. *Many of the children gave us flowers.* 3. *You and I have erred.* 4. *The girl is more like her father than her mother.* 5. *Let us hasten by night.* 6. *The soldiers are most worthy of punishment.* 7. *We led the army into the nearest city.* 8. *This work is not very easy.* 9. *The words of the unjust sailor are very base.* 10. *A hundred brave (men) are better than two hundred cowardly (men).* 11. *He was more worthy of punishment than you.*

EXERCISE IX.

1. *Uter fontium major est?* 2. *Decem millia passuum iter fecimus.* 3. *Tullius, rex crudelissimus, veniam Balbo dedit.* 4. *Nocte hostes castra nostra invaserunt.* 5. *Decem his diebus trecentos elephantos ad exercitum mittemus.* 6. *Equites peditesque plurimos habemus.* 7. *Regum fortium vitae nos delectant.* 8. *Hoc opus facilius est quam illud.* 9. *Et mihi et tibi felicium supplicum verba iucunda sunt.* 10. *Nullius dona, quam fratris tui mihi iucundiora sunt.*
1. *What have you done worthy of praise?* 2. *He is worse than his brother.* 3. *The keenest soldiers fought most bravely.* 4. *You journeyed for (i.e. made a journey of) two-days in a very rough country.* 5. *Neither of the fountains had very sweet water.* 6. *Which of the two girls loves her father more?* 7. *He is more like you than me.* 8. *Where is the book you gave me?* 9. *Do not say many-things.* 10. *All love themselves.* 11. *Do you say this?*

EXERCISE X.

1. *Pueri ludere amant.* 2. *Ne plura rogaveris.* 3. *Milites in campum ducamus.* 4. *Si venti flaverint, in portu manebimus.* 5. *Multas noctes in urbe mansimus.* 6. *Dicamus vera.* 7. *Senex septuagesimo altero anno uxorem tertiam duxit.* 8. *Senum memoria infirmior quam juvenum est.* 9. *Pejor morte est infamia.* 10. *Verba eius isti molesta sunt.*
1. *Very many say this.* 2. *You say the same.* 3. *He wounded me with a spear.* 4. *Let us walk six days.* 5. *His words are more pleasant to you than to any of your brothers.* 6. *The brave Balbus was leader of the whole (totus) army.* 7. *Both to you and to me he gave the same gifts.* 8. *No poet blames his own poems.* 9. *If he comes by night, we will depart in three hours.* 10. *To one of his two sons he gave a thousand oxen, to the other two thousand sheep.* 11. *Do not sleep, boy.*

EXERCISE XI.

(Exercises XI. to XIX. refer to Par. 1—295.)

1. Clam parentibus huc venisti. 2. Ne tu quidem idem dedecus bis in te admittes. 3. Nostri ab hostibus superati sunt. 4. Quid obstat quominus patri tuo pareas? 5. Plura dicturum duae sagittae transfixerunt. 6. Interrogavi matrem num huc ventura esset. 7. Hostes urbem captam incendunt. 8. Non dubium est quin aurum in ea regione reppereris. 9. Captivos vinctos centurio ad imperatorem duxerat. 10. Quot dies hostibus resistebatis? 11. Tune times?
1. *There is no doubt that he pardoned the accused (man).* 2. *Cultivate learning that you may not be unlearned.* 3. *Not even Tullius will spare this city.* 4. *Let us ask her on what day she will come.* 5. *What prevented you from pleasing his father?* 6. *I will do my best to pardon him.* 7. *They took and burned the city (Par. 159).* 8. *The leaders gave orders-to their men not to resist the enemy.* 9. *There was no doubt that the city had been taken by the tenth legion.* 10. *She was killed by poison, without-the-knowledge-of the king.*

EXERCISE XII.

1. Extra urbem decem horas pugnatum est. 2. In eo eram ut Balbum vincrem. 3. Saepe me interrogavisti utrum Romanus sim an Atheniensis. 4. Civibus pro patria fortiter pugnandum est. 5. Aut vincendum est aut serviendum. 6. Oravi duces ut captis parceret. 7. Interrogate hominem num coram iudice hoc dixerit. 8. Reo, haec neganti, mendacium graviter nocuit. 9. Dux suis imperavit ne acio cederent. 10. Ne tibi quidem rex ignoscet, si a Tullio stabis. 11. Quis nescit urbem incendi?
1. *He was silent for two hours in-the-presence-of the judge.* 2. *He had reigned ten years as-far-as the Alps.* 3. *He was on the point of conquering.* 4. *The king asked us whether we were husbandmen or sailors.* 5. *There is no doubt that the cold hurt the beautiful pine-tree.* 6. *He asked me whether the centurion was worthy of this great (see Vocab. great) reward.* 7. *I advised the soldier to answer the leader with these words.* 8. *We must make-haste that we may not come late.* 9. *When the general had heard this, he ordered the line-of-battle to retire.* 10. *Answer-was-made to the king in these words.*

EXERCISE XIII.

1. *What is pleasant to some is troublesome to others.* 2. *He built a house twenty feet high.* 3. *I asked him, O citizens, to come by night.* 4. *I asked which of you two said these-things.* 5. *Did you say this to deceive us?* 6. *It is very difficult to make very long marches in winter.* 7. *The excellent physician Balbus gave you medicine to cure you.* 8. *The girl is even now more beautiful than her sister.* 9. *There is no doubt that he gave you more gifts than me.* 10. *By the fruitful harvest the hearts of the husbandmen were delighted.* 11. *He asked why the goats were larger than most of the sheep.*

EXERCISE XIV.

1. *Come here in haste, my son.* 2. *Is he very poor?* 3. *When were the Gauls conquered by Caesar?* 4. *Do you call me a citizen?* 5. *There is no doubt that he was created consul by the citizens.* 6. *At last the enemy, overcome by our men, fled to the camp.* 7. *Each of the two brothers pleased (placeo) himself alone.* 8. *Do not set-out from the city by night.* 9. *She is about-to-return to Asia.* 10. *The head of Hasdrubal was thrown into the camp.* 11. *You slept the whole night.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. *He sent a letter to his friend.* 2. *Give that woman the same book you gave me.* 3. *Do not declare war, O king.* 4. *When will you quench your thirst?* 5. *Have you ever used a golden axe?* 6. *I shall have given you, my son, three hundred denarii.* 7. *What you say, is true.* 8. *What is more faithful than a faithful dog?* 9. *There is no doubt that every good man resisted this law.* 10. *You will be no longer foolish but base, if, even now, you please yourself alone.* 11. *Do not stay.*

EXERCISE XVI.

1. *Some stood here, others there.* 2. *The disease did not hurt even one of the sheep.* 3. *On the fifth day you came to Egypt.* 4. *Being-about-to-set-out for Europe we shall send two messengers to Alexander.* 5. *You and I will pay attention to philosophy.* 6. *Who took the city (of) Corinth?* 7. *Mummius, who took Corinth, was very poor.* 8. *He came a-second-time into the forum.* 9. *What prevented him from walking in his brother's garden?* 10. *Ajax slew himself with the sword which he had received from Hector.* 11. *He is free from cares.*

EXERCISE XVII.

1. *This work is finished.* 2. *My son and I sent messengers to you.* 3. *My brother and sister are very happy.* 4. *There is no doubt that it is pleasant to conquer.* 5. *We ought to command (164); you ought to obey.* 6. *The city is being built; a great part of it is built already.* 7. *The small town (of) Corioli was taken (agrees with 'town') by Marcius, who was thence called Coriolanus.* 8. *Balbus and Tullius besought me to pardon both (of) them.* 9. *You praised both, you pleased neither.* 10. *Nothing prevents you from building a new bridge.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. *Spem mihi ultimam eripuisti.* 2. *Sole orto, in campum descendum est.* 3. *Hoc ad agros colendos erat utilissimum.* 4. *Romae biennium habitavimus.* 5. *Huic genti quis tributum imponere ausus est?* 6. *Capta urbe, arcem incendimus.* 7. *Nonne vis fateri quantum te tuae stultitiae pudeat?* 8. *Quando ibis Corinthum?* 9. *Hodie Arpinum eo, cras Romae manebo.* 10. *En malevolo, fis inalevolentior; mox fies inalevolentissimus.* 11. *Ego et frater hic (adv.) manemus.*
1. *Are you not weary of idleness?* 2. *He built walls twenty-five feet high.* 3. *Dionysius, driven from Syracuse, taught boys.* 4. *Why do you not confess that you repent of your wickedness?* 5. *He says that this ditch is twenty feet deep.* 6. *When will you come to see me?* 7. *No one pities the conquered.* 8. *He could have helped me, but he would not.* 9. *I can no longer bear these great insults.* 10. *I hear that he is becoming weaker.* 11. *Will you go to Rome or remain in Corinth?*

EXERCISE XIX.

1. *Utrum duos an tres menses vis Carthagine manere?* 2. *Non facile istum tuli querentem de seditione.* 3. *Nostine quo velit ire?* 4. *Tot scelera fassus, num putas nos posse tui misereri?* 5. *Negavit se sui tanti flagitii poenitere.* 6. *Postquam ab hostibus clamatum est, nostri, Balbo hortante, e silvis erupere.* 7. *Aliorum oblitus num speras alios tui non oblituros esse?* 8. *Oportuit te non isti sed patri tuo placere.* 9. *Quantum pecuniæ tibi pater ad emendos flores dedit?* 10. *Negari non potest ambos semper eadem voluisse, eadem noluisse.* 11. *Licuit tibi esse felici; sed noluisti mihi parere.* 12. *Operam dabat libris scribendis.*

1. *To live in Rome seemed to me more pleasant than to live at Gaoii.* 2. *Have you already, O foolish girls, forgotten these most easy verses?* 3. *Who ordered the fourth tribe to be present?* 4. *Having suffered so many evils, you ought to pity others.* 5. *The two boys, horrible to relate! attempted to murder their own father.* 6. *In three days you will become richer than his brother if your ship returns to Corinth.* 7. *You might have dined with (183) your kind host; but you would dine at home.* 8. *I have come here to see-to the building of a bridge.* 9. *Who does-not-know that water, by often falling, hollows even the hardest stone?*

EXERCISE XX.

(Exercises XX. to XXIX. refer to the whole of the book.)

1. *Barbari erant proceris corporibus, promisso capillo.* 2. *Non opus est mihi tanta pecunia.* 3. *Virtutem maximi aestimate.* 4. *Die quarto aggerem jam decem pedes altum exstruxerant.* 5. *His condicionibus pax ab utroque duce facta est.* 6. *Respondit se non assis me facere.* 7. *Certum erat fundum grandi pecunia emptum fuisse.* 8. *Patris amantissimus erat, patientissimus periculorum, suis contentus, alienarum divitiarum nunquam cupidus.* 9. *Respondit se nolle sua pretio emere.* 10. *Tu, cuius (299a) es sapientiae, intelleges quid his respondere oportent.* 11. *Non est moris nostri quos praesentes laudavimus eos absentes condemnare.*
1. *He was acquitted of bribery.* 2. *Why did you, O judges, condemn the innocent Balbus to death?* 3. *He was endowed with a (see 'a') wonderful art of persuading.* 4. *By this road you will never come to Athens.* 5. *He sent a messenger to ask which of his two brothers lived at Gabii.* 6. *The girl replied that she was descended from royal parents.* 7. *Do you think that it is the mark of a philosopher to envy the wealth of others?* 8. *He was learned in the law, and very brave; but greedy of wealth.* 9. *Are you certain of this thing?* 10. *My barns are full of corn; I have much money at home.*

EXERCISE XXI.

1. *Nescio an mulier Carthagine ventura sit.* 2. *Misi qui praedium magno pretio erant.* 3. *Vereor ut puer virtutem pluris quam voluptatem aestimet.* 4. *Si auxilium poposcisses, abhinc biduum misissem.* 5. *Nescisne inepti esse nunquam ridere?* 6. *Quis Thracum more velit bibere?* 7. *Non cuiusvis est multa bene facere.* 8. *Si illuc ibis, vereor ne*

serpentis morsu pereas. 9. Num quis audeat negare consules bene de republica meritos esse? 10. Duabus uncis procerior est quam quisquam nostrum.

1. *If any one had given me the book I would have read (it).* 2. *I feared he would be weary of the journey.* 3. *My father advises Balbus to consult his own interests.* 4. *It makes a great difference whether you live at Rome or at Carthage.* 5. *Whatever he had, he gave to all the poorest of the citizens.* 6. *I have long been desirous of hearing Tullius.* 7. *He came from the city to the country as speedily as possible.* 8. *Ask your brother who sang this song.* 9. *The elder of the two brothers died before the capture of the city (i.e. before the city having been captured).* 10. *He is a man of wisdom.*

[EXERCISE XXII.¹

1. *Crudelior erat quam ut cuiquam parceret.* 2. *Quidquid armorum habuimus, id omne tradendum erat.* 3. *Quamvis errorem feceris, licebit tibi meliora facere.* 4. *Idem es qui semper fuisti.* 5. *Cuilibet licuisset mentiri nisi hunc testem produxisses.* 6. *Quid refert utrum haec vera sint annon?* 7. *Nostine plerisque piscibus pinnae binas esse?* 8. *Tantae multitudini trinis castris opus erat.* 9. *Si quis tibi Achillis arma promitteret se daturum esse, quid tandem faceres?* 10. *Balbus moriens fratrem admonuit ut se ipse servaret.* 11. *Mira quadam arte erat suadendi.* 12. *Fallacior est quam cui credas.* 13. *Haec, sive vera sunt sive falsa, nullo inodo me movent.*
1. *Whatever you wish to say must be said at once.* 2. *It matters little whether we die to-day or to-morrow.* 3. *There is a certain pleasure in recollecting calamities.* 4. *What would you have replied if he had promised to give you money?* 5. *He is too deceitful for you to converse with.* 6. *He hastened to Athens by the most rapid marches possible.* 7. *He was on the point of dying on the fourth day before the taking of the city.* 8. *He is better than any of his brothers.* 9. *Two-days ago, we sent messengers to ascertain what prevented Balbus from coming to Corinth.* 10. *Ask him to come to see me as quickly as possible.*

¹ In this and the following Exercises, some idioms are introduced that are not given in the previous part of the book: but they will be found explained in the Vocabularies.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Promisit se Gades venturum. 2. Erant qui dicerent urbem nunquam captum iri. 3. Misit imperator centurionem qui captivos deposeret. 4. Non adhuc compertum habeo quis hunc tantum virum rhetoricam docuerit. 5. Aggerem extruxit quo facilius hostem prohiberet. 6. Nemini pepercit, nullius miseritus est. 7. Cur tam parvo fune uteris? 8. Turpior erat quam quocum colloquereris. 9. Dies fero nullus est quin eam querentem audiam. 10. Spero fore ut urbs decem his diebus capiatur. 11. Interrogavit utrum haec caedas abhinc biennium an triennium facta sit. 12. Respondit iste se tuas excusationes parvi aestimare.

1. *It is said that you burned this temple, Tullius.* 2. *Do not pardon that wicked soldier.* 3. *The brave general Balbus opposed four thousand Scythians.* 4. *Having gained possession of our gold, O Persians, do you now wish to despoil us of our liberty?* 5. *In the battle of Cannae there fell many thousand Roman knights.* 6. *Ariovistus was answered in these words by Caesar.* 7. *Our men, under Labienus, laid waste the greatest part of the province, as far as the Alps.* 8. *Who was there that did not hate you, a man devoid of all kindness and courtesy?* 9. *Not even the older men were spared by the conquerors.* 10. *They threatened the man with death that they might the more easily ascertain the truth.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Cur me morbum fratris mei celasti? 2. Hoc te moneo ne quem, clam patre tuo, domi accipias. 3. Diceris, mi fili, ipse hunc pontem rescidisse. 4. Non dubium est quin in certamen eloquentiae ambo venerint. 5. Obsecravit ducem mater ne sibi filiam eriperet. 6. Nonne licet tibi, divitiis his carenti, consulom (*see licet in Vocab.*) fieri? 7. Ego me Phidiam esse malle quam vel optimum fabrum tignarium. 8. Illud permagni referre arbitror ut domestica cura te liberem. 9. Alii alibi steterunt; erant qui ne stare quidem possent sed humi occumberent. 10. Leonidas cum trecentis se multis milibus Persarum opposuit. 11. Alii capi; alii cadere; plurimi vulnera accipere. 12. In eo proelio trecenta milia hostium interfecti sunt.
1. *Who founded the city of Carthage?* 2. *He was asked his opinion by Tullius, but answered nothing.* 3. *By this time the wall (muris) and the citadel had been taken by our men.* 4. *Do you suppose that two hundred can resist two*

thousand? 5. *I do not know whether she will agree with you.* 6. *The consul was the first who was asked his opinion.* 7. *There is no doubt that he bought the horse at a very high price.* 8. *I was informed of his arrival the-day-before he came to Corioli.* 9. *Will any one promise to go with him?* 10. *I fear that we shall arrive at Athens (too) late unless we hasten by forced marches.*

EXERCISE XXV.

1. Quis nescit nos omnes famae atque fortunarum expertes esse?
2. Decimo anno post conditam urbem in exilium pulsus est.
3. Fac ut quam celerrime in Italiam ad amicos redeas.
4. Adulatores, turbam levissimam, dux contemnebat.
5. Interrogavit num crederem se tantum dedecus in se admittere potuisse.
6. Non est cur fugias, hominum turpissime.
7. Non dubium est quin tibi pater nimis indulserit.
8. Utraharum dearum Vulcano nupsit?
9. Tandem ei persuasit pater ut mulierem in matrimonium duceret.
10. Quis non huius tanti philosophi audiendi studiosus erit?
11. Speraveram fore ut frigus inesceret.
12. Aurum, argentum, ferrum, utilia illa quidem omnia; sed non pariter utilia.¹

1. *The boy had concealed (celo) the fact from his father by a falsehood.* 2. *Having burnt the village, the cohort set out for the nearest river (amnis).* 3. *You ought to have consulted the interests of each of your two sisters.* 4. *After he had conquered the Seythians, the general sent ambassadors to offer peace.* 5. *I am very desirous of hearing this story, if it is not troublesome to you.* 6. *Having accused others of bribery, he was himself condemned on the same charge.* 7. *If you ever come to Gabii, I hope you will stay with me for a few days.* 8. *There were some who said that it mattered little what Tullius decided.* 9. *There is no doubt that all the best of the citizens resisted this law.* 10. *This field was valued at a high rate, but bought by me for a small price.*

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Nunc quod agitur agamus; agitur autem liberine vivamus² an obeamus.
2. Quis negat Soeratem parentem philosophiae iure dici posse?
3. Vir ille maximus cum a ceteris scriptoribus

¹ The redundant illē (sometimes is) is commonly found before quidem when a concession is made, but immediately qualified, 'Tunc dolor humanus is quidem, sed tamen moderandus.' Yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be modified."

² Not here whether we live, but whether we are to live.

tum a Xenophonte laudatus est. 4. Si qui capti sunt, omnes ad unum interfecti. 5. Et mea et tua interest ut huic logi resistamus. 6. Vercor ne ex hoc fonte magna pestis in rempublicam fluxura sit. 7. Nunc quidem valetudini tribuamus aliquid, cras autem rei-publicae. 8. Non tibi tantus dolor est quantus isti. 9. Victis hostibus, Caesar ab urbibus quinque trecenos obsides poposcit. 10. Credisne hanc perfidiam ei profuturam esse?

1. *In Xenophon we read a good deal (i.e. many things) about the illustrious general Agesilaus.* 2. *It concerns the whole country that Catiline should perish.* 3. *Having bound yourselves by an oath, do you now say that you did not promise to help him?* 4. *It is said that Labienus was at that time in command of thirty thousand soldiers.* 5. *It is said that Venus, the most beautiful of the goddesses, married Vulcan.* 6. *In the reign of Tullius the learned poet Balbus wrote very good poems.* 7. *I asked him why he did not do his duty to (trans. satisfy) his country.* 8. *Do not teach young boys philosophy.*¹ 9. *I do not care a farthing for any of you.* 10. *Ask the boy whether Cyrus conquered the Scythians.*

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Nunquam in dicendo irascor. An tibi irasci videor si quid acrius dico, permovendorum iudicum causa? 2. Constat Labienum dimidio exercitus a Caesare praefectum esse. 3. In summo monte casa quaedam erat; quo inter venandum rex ventitabat. 4. Philoctetes, Lemni relictus, multis post annis Trojam a Neoptolemo reductus esse fertur. 5. Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini.² 6. Quaeritur suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliquos virtus impetenda sit. 7. Caesar Aeduis quadringentos obsides imperaverat. 8. Non jam stulti eritis, sed turpissimi, si diutius ab illo stabitis. 9. Milites in verba imperatoris iurarunt. 10. Poma haec utilia quidem sunt, sed amariora gustatu. 11. Dixit se plura facturum fuisse, nisi sibi persuasum fuisset iudicem neutri favere. 12. Milites pugnam poposcerunt, quibus imperator "Cunctando," inquit, "rem restituemus."
1. *He was answered by Tullius, but not even Tullius could excuse the deed.* 2. *Before he bound the captives he compelled them to swear not to escape.* 3. *Do you doubt, O citizens, what is*

¹ For "young" write "younger," and remember never to use "juvenis" as an Adjective.

² Supply "contigērit." The antecedent of "quod" is "id," nom. to "contigit."

to be done? 4. Tell me, (my) boy, for how much he sold this farm. 5. For the same price as Tullius sold it to me. 6. We should have written much better verses if time had not failed us. 7. Have you not sworn to obey this law? 8. Homer and Virgil are read by all; the latter imitated the former. 9. The work, I say (see say), is quite finished. 10. The boys used no longer to be taught music by their father.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Medio in foro, coram rege ipso, a plebe turbatum est. 2. Terra marique diversis casibus jam multos annos pugnatum erat. 3. Te daee, vel ignavissimi nostrum tubam canentem libenter audient. 4. Post Corinthum captam magna praeda Romam a Mummio missa est. 5. Non ante venit nobis auxilio quam quinquies misissemus. 6. Satis erat tibi semel ignoscere; quoniam bis peccavisti, non iterum es excusandus. 7. Corinthum, tribus his diebus, veniet tui visendi causa. 8. Apud Romanos arma in majore honore quam pacis artes habebantur. 9. Multa terra marique passus tandem se in Italiam contulit. 10. Aurum plurimum et viris et civitatibus plurimarum miseriarum causa est. 11. Haec urbs, gentis devictae caput, quam celerrime delenda est. 12. Tullia, regina miserrima, fertur veneno fuisse interfecta.

1. After he had remained two months in the country he set out for the city. 2. Two cohorts came as a reinforcement for the besieged citizens. 3. You ought not to have promised to come before the third day. 4. She replied that she was born of noble but very poor parents. 5. This field cost me more than that meadow. 6. In the middle of the night we rose up terrified by the sound of robbers. 7. Having taken the city the enemy slew the citizens, and no one was spared. 8. You ought to have sent messengers three or four times to the city. 9. I have no need of excuse, for I am worthy of praise. 10. It is said that the Cyclopes had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Auctore Balbo, carissimo amicorum, juvenis ex Italia cessit. 2. Puella multo quam frater peritior erat canendi. 3. Responderunt homines pauperrimi non jam pares se esse solvendo. 4. Admonendus es foederis; cuius tu jam fere oblitus es. 5. Dic mihi Tulliane an sorori eius promiseris te anulum daturum esse. 6. Nisi te itineris taeuisset, jam pridem domum perventum fuisset. 7. Olim lupo, cuius in faucibus os inhaeserat, mercede conduxit gruem qui id

extraheret. 8. Senex filios convocatos hortatur, ut fascem frangant. 9. Quod quum nequirent facere, singulis singulas virgas distribuit. 10. Quibus facillime fractis ita pueros docuit quam firma res esset concordia.

1. Pallas was worshipped by the Athenians with the highest honours. 2. It is reported that the girl died of grief (trans. on account of grief). 3. By my advice you will set out for Corinth in the spring. 4. Who says that Jupiter did not marry Juno? 5. Can any one deny that you poured poison into my cup? 6. In my judgment, it is less disgraceful to dance in the middle of the forum than to lie. 7. The speech was too long for you to learn in three days. 8. It is said that the Druids were in great honour among the Britons. 9. Did you come here hoping to see her? 10. The foolish Balbus replied that he had once been more learned than any of his brothers.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(Following Exercise XXXII., p. 53.)

EXERCISE XXXII. A.

1. Do you blame him who is praised by your brother? 2. Many things are troublesome to him who loves pleasure very greatly. 3. No one loves Tullia, who was always unmindful of others and ignorant of pity. 4. Do you who chastise the unjust, praise unjust things? 5. The Belgians, who were bordering on our land, were very troublesome to us. 6. He is always mindful of his sister, who is both very good and very beautiful. 7. We do not always love most-of-all those to whom we give the largest gifts. 8. The fruits you give me are not good. 9. The queen is overcome by pity, of which (trans. of which thing) they are ignorant. 10. His son takes care of the pigs, of which he has very-many (trans. which he has very-many).

EXERCISE XXXII. B.

1. Who is that fellow whose threats terrify you? 2. For-the-whole-of that winter (31), which was very cold, the husbandmen were ignorant of the cause of the disease. 3. To us, who give many gifts to the poor, your words are disagreeable. 4. To the butterfly, who lives (only) a few hours, life is very pleasant. 5. Our line of battle, which was very long, is-being-overcome by the enemy. 6. Those whom virtue delights, riches do not

delight. 7. Few of those who praise you blame me. 8. Who terrifies him? What does the man fear? 9. What do you avoid? What deed terrifies you? 10. What you love I do not love.

EXERCISE XXXII. C.

Do you, O sisters, who blame Tullius, praise his brother? 2. To what woman are you giving this? 3. These fountains, which were in his garden, were very agreeable to us during that whole summer. 4. The frost, which was destructive to the tall tree, was more pleasing than heat to the strong soldier. 5. This delay, which is unworthy of you and your brother, is destructive to the army. 6. Whose threats terrify you? 7. During the whole of this year, you, who blame the vices of Tullius, are praising the same things in Balbus. 8. I praise the same things as (i.e. which) you (praise). 9. The same woman who praises herself blames her friends. 10. Of those (34) who were in the garden ten (were) boys, four were old-men.

APPENDIX I.

IRREGULAR VERBS
IN THE ORDER OF THEIR FORMATION.¹

When a Compound Verb is formed from a Simple Verb and a Preposition or other Prefix, the *a* or *e* of the Simple Verb is changed, in the Compound Verb, into :

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
	i	ē or ī	a, e, or u	
Āgo	rēdīgo	rūdēgi	rūdactum	<i>reduce</i>
Cādo	ocēdo	ocēdi	occāsum	<i>die</i>
Rāpio	ērīpio	ērīpui	ēreptum	<i>snatch</i>
Fācio	confēio	confēci	confectum	<i>finish</i>
Sālio	prōsīlio	prōsīlui	prōsultum	<i>spring forth</i>
Fāteor	confīteor		confessus	<i>confess</i>
Tēneo	sustīneo	sustīnui	sustentum	<i>sustain</i>
Lēgo	ēlīgo	ēlēgi	ēlectum	<i>elect²</i>
Ēgeo	indīgeo	indīgui	—	<i>need</i>

In the following lists all the Compounds of the above Simple Verbs, and of *scando*, [*pleo*], *tango*, [*specio*], *cedo*, *caedo*, *jacio*, *emo*, &c., will not be given, as they follow the forms of the Simple Verbs.

Note that when the Simple Verb has a reduplicated Perfect of three syllables, *pēpūli*, *ocēdi*, *tētīgi*, *cēcīni*, the Perfect of the Compound Verb often rejects a syllable, *ex-pūli*, *con-ādi*, *con-tīgi*, *con-cīnui*, &c.: but there are exceptions to this rule, viz. the compounds of *disco*, *posco*, *-dēre*, and sometimes of *curro*.

¹ The order of the *Public School Grammar* is adopted in this list.

² But note that three compounds of *lēgo*, viz., *neglēgo*, *intellēgo*, and *dīlīgo*, make the perfects *neglexi*, *intellexi*, *dīlexi*.

FIRST CONJUGATION.¹

Dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give, put</i>
Stāre	stēti	[stātum] ²	<i>stand</i>
Īv-āre	īvi	ītum	<i>help</i>
Lāv-āre ³	lāvi	lōtum	<i>wash</i>
Frīc-āre	frīcui	frictum	<i>rub</i>
Sēc-āre	sēcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Crēp-āre	crēpui	crēpītum	<i>creak, prattle</i>
Cūb-āre	cūbui	cūbītum	<i>lie down</i>
Dōm-āre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Sōn-āre	sōnui	sōnītum	<i>sound</i>
Tōn-āre	tōnui	tōnītum	<i>thunder</i>
Vēt-āre	vētui	vētītum	<i>forbid</i>
Plic-āre	plicāvi (-ui)	plicītum (-ātum)	<i>fold</i>
Mic-āre	mīcui (-āvi)	[-mīcātum]	<i>glitter</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mōrd-ēre	mōrmordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
Pend-ēre	pēpendi	—	<i>hang</i>
Spond-ēre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>contract</i>
Tond-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shear</i>
Cāv-ēre	cāvi	cantum	<i>beware</i>
Fāv-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Fōv-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
Mōv-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move</i>

¹ Verbs that may be omitted by beginners are marked thus *.

² A bracket denotes that the form, although correct according to the rules of the language, seldom or never occurs in Latin literature. This is the case with many Supines commonly given in Latin Grammars. In many cases, a Participle is found where there is no Supine. Thus *haesum* is not found, but *haesurus*; there is no *cāritum*, but there is *cāriturus*; no *quītum*, but *quītus*; no *fūgitum*, but *fūgiturus*. The Supine is in fact a comparatively rare form in all verbs, and it is to be regretted that usage has selected it as a typical part of a Latin Verb to be committed to memory. The Perf. Passive Participle would be preferable.

Note also that the Fut. Participle often does not follow the Supine, e.g. *sectum* but *sēcāturus*, *sōnītum* but *sōnāturus*, &c.

³ In classical prose, *sup. lāvātum*, *perf. part. lautus*.

Vōv-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	vow
Pāv-ēre	pāvi	—	quake
Sēd-ēre	sēdi	scssum	sit
Vīd-ēre	vidi	visum	see
Prand-ēre	prandi	pransum	dine
Coniv-ēre	[cōnivi or -nisi]	—	blink
Strīl-ēre	strīdi	—	creak
Ferv-ēre	ferbui or fervi	—	boil
Dēl-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	blot out
Fl-ēre	flēvi	flētum	weep
N-ēre	nēvi	nētum	spin
[-l'lēre]	[-plēvi]	[-plētum]	fill
*Vi-ēre	[viēvi]	viētum	bind with twigs
Ci-ēre	cīvi	cītum	stir up ¹
-Ūlēre	[-ŭlēvi]	[ŭlītum]	grow, &c.
[Su-ēre]	suovī	suetum	be wont
Arc-ēre	arcui	—	ward off
Coerc-ēre	coercui	coercītum	restrain
Exerc-ēre	exercui	exercītum	exercise
Cār-ēre	cārui	[cārītum]	be without, be in want of
Dēb-ēre	dēbui	dēbītum	owe ²
Dōl-ēre	dōlui	[dōlītum]	grieve
Hāb-ēre	hābui	hābītum	have
Jāc-ēre	jācui	[jācītum]	lie
Līc-ēre	līcui	līcītum	be bid for
Mēr-ēre	mērui	mērītum	deserve, earn
Mōn-ēre	mōnui	mōnītum	advise
Nōc-ēre	nōcui	nōcītum	hurt
Pār-ēre	pārui	[pārītum]	appear, obey
Plāc-ēre	plācui	plācītum	please
Præb-ēre	præbui	præbītum	afford
Terr-ēre	terrui	terrītum	affright
Tīc-ēre	tīcui	tīcītum	be silent
Vāl-ēre	vālui	[vālītum]	be strong, be well
Dōc-ēre	dōcui	dōctum	teach
Misc-ēre	miscui	{ nistum } { mixtum }	mingle

¹ The primitive form is *cio, cīre* (found in the compounds *accio, excio*).

² This is properly a compound of *hābeo*; but some of the less obvious compounds of verbs are included in this list.

Tēn-ēro	tēnni	tentum	<i>hold</i>
Torr-ēro	torrui	tostum	<i>scorch</i>
Cens-ēro	censui	consum	<i>value, rote</i>
Ēg-ēro	ēgui	—	<i>want</i>
*[-Min-ēre]	[-inīnu:]	—	<i>jut</i>
Ol-ēro	ōlui	—	<i>smell</i>
Sorb-ēro	sorbui	—	<i>suck up</i>
Stūd-ēro	stūdui	—	<i>study¹</i>
Aug-ēro	auxi	auctum	<i>increase (trans.)</i>
Indulg-ēro	indulsi	indultum	<i>indulge</i>
Mulg-ēro	mulsi	[muletum]	<i>milk</i>
Torqu-ēro	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
Lūg-ēro	luxi	—	<i>mourn</i>
Mule-ēro	mulsi	inulsum	<i>soothe</i>
Terg-ēro	tersi	-tersum	<i>ripe</i>
Ard-ēro	arsi	arsum	<i>take fire</i>
Rid-ēro	risi	risum	<i>laugh</i>
Suād-ēro	sūsi	suāsūm	<i>persuade</i>
Iūb-ēro	iūsi	iussum	<i>command</i>
Mān-ēro	mansi	mansum	<i>remain</i>
Haer-ēro	haesi	[haesum]	<i>stick</i>
Alg-ēro	alsi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Fulg-ēro	fulsi	—	<i>glitter</i>
*Turg-ēro	tursi	—	<i>swell</i>
Urg-ēro	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
*Frig-ēro	[-frīxi]	—	<i>be cold</i>
Lūc-ēro	luxi	—	<i>shine</i>
Aud-ēro	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Gaud-ēro	gāvīsus sum	—	<i>rejoice</i>
Sol-ēro	sōlītus sum	—	<i>be wont</i>
Līc-ēri	līcītus	—	<i>bid for</i>
Mēr-ēri	mērītus	—	<i>deserve</i>
Miser-ēri	mīsērītus	—	<i>pity</i>
Tu-ēri	tūtus	—	<i>vicio, protect</i>
Vēr-ēri	vērītus	—	<i>fear, respect</i>
R-ēri	rītus	—	<i>think</i>
Fāt-ēri	fassus	—	<i>confess</i>
Mēd-ēri	—	—	<i>heal</i>

¹ Several Verbs that have an Adjective in Idus reject the Supine, e.g. stūpeo, aŕeo, fīreo; and some that have no such Adjective, as lāteo.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sēpēl-īre	sēpēlivi	sēpultum	<i>bury</i>
Īro (eo)	īvi	ītum	<i>go</i>
Quīre (queo)	quīvi	quītum	<i>be able</i>
Sāl-īre	sālui	(saltum)	<i>leap, dance</i>
Āpēr-īre	āpēruī	āpertum	<i>open</i>
Ōpēr-īre	ōpēruī	ōpertum	<i>cover</i>
Compēr-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>find</i>
Repēr-īre	reppēri	rēpertum	<i>discover</i>
Vēn-īre	vēni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Āmīc-īre	āmīxi & -īcui	āmictum	<i>clothe</i>
Farc-īre	farsi	fartum	<i>stuff</i>
Fulc-īro	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Sanc-īre	sanxi	sanctum	<i>consecrate</i>
Sarc-īro	sarsi	sartum	<i>mend</i>
Vinc-īre	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
Saep-īre	saepsi	saepum	<i>hedgc in</i>
Haur-īre	hausi	haustum	<i>drain</i>
*Rauc-īro ¹	—	—	<i>bc hoarse</i>
Sent-īre	sensi	sensum	<i>feel²</i>
Expēr-īri		expertus	<i>experience</i>
Oppēr-īri		oppertus	<i>wait for</i>
Or-īri		ortus	<i>arise</i>
Assent-īri		assensus	<i>agrec</i>
Mēt-īri		imensus	<i>measurc</i>
Ord-īri		orsus	<i>begin</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Disc-ēre ³	dīdīci		<i>learn</i>
Posc-ēre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Pa-n-g-ēre ⁴	pēpīgi	pactum	<i>fasten, covenant</i>

¹ There are also found *rausūrus* and *ir-rausērit*; *denotes rare occurrence.

² Some Verbs, such as *gestio*, *I am eager*, and others which express only passions, e.g. *singultio*, *I sob*, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

³ Compounds of Verbs with Reduplicated Perfect drop Reduplication, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *sisto*, -*dēre*, and sometimes of *curro*.

⁴ The *n* in this and following Verbs is not a part of the root. The forms *pēpīgi*, *pactum*, are reserved for the metaph. meaning, *covenant*; for the lit. meaning, the forms in use are *pēgi* or *panxi*, and *panctum*.

Pu-n-g-ěro	pūpūgi	punctum	<i>priek</i>
Ta-n-g-ěro	tūlgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Sist-ěro	[-stīti ¹]	[-stītum ¹]	<i>stop</i>
[-d-ěro ¹]	[-dīdi]	[-dītum]	<i>put, give</i>
Tend-ěro	tūtendi	{ tensum and } tentum	<i>stretch</i>
Cān-ěro	cūcēni	cantum	<i>ring</i>
Pār-ěro	pūpēri	parium	<i>bring forth</i>
Toll-ěro	sustūli	sublātum	<i>take up</i>
Parc-ěro	pūperci	parsum	<i>spare</i>
Cād-ěro	cūcēdi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
Cned-ěro	cūcēdi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Pend-ěro	pūpendi	pensum	<i>weigh</i>
Tu-n-d-ěro	(tūtādi)	tūsum	<i>thump, pound</i>
Curr-ěro	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
Fall-ěro	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Pell-ěro	pūpūli	pulsum	<i>drive</i>
[-Cell-ěre] ¹	[cūcūli]	[-eulsum ¹]	<i>push</i>
Fāc-ěro (i-o)	fēci	factum	<i>make, do</i>
Jāc-ěro (i-o)	jēci	jactum	<i>throw</i>
Li-n-qu-ěro	līqui	[-lictum]	<i>leave</i>
Vi-n-c-ěro	vīci	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Āg-ěro	ēgi	actum	<i>do</i>
Fra-n-g-ěro	frēgi	fraetum	<i>break</i>
Lēg-ěro	lēgi (-lexi) ²	lectum	<i>read, choose</i>
Cāp-ěro (i-o)	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Ru-m-p-ěro	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ēm-ěro	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
*Scāb-ěro	scābi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Ēd-ěro	ēdi	ūsus	<i>eat</i>
Fōd-ěro (f-o)	fōdi	fossus	<i>dig</i>
Fu-n-d-ěro	fūdi	fūsum	<i>pour</i>
Fūg-ěro (f-o)	fūgi	[fūgitum]	<i>fly</i>
Bīb-ěro	bībi	bībītum	<i>drink</i>
Īcēro	īci ³	īotum	<i>strike</i>

¹ Only found in Compounds.² The form -lexi is found only in *di-ligo, neg-lēgo, intel-lēgo*.³ This form is non-classical.

Fi-n-d-ěre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
Sci-n-d-ěre	scīdi	scissum	<i>cut</i>
Vert-ěre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
[-Cend-ěre]	[-cendi]	[-censum]	<i>set alight</i>
Cūd-ěre	cūdi	cūsum	<i>hammer</i>
[-Fend-ěre]	[-fendi]	[-fensum]	<i>strike</i>
Mand-ěre	mandi	mansum	<i>chew</i>
Pand-ěre	pandi	passum	<i>spread</i>
Prchend-ěre	prehendi	prehensum	<i>take, grasp</i>
Scand-ěre	-scandi	-scansum	<i>climb</i>
Sid-ěre	sīdi ¹	—	<i>settle</i>
Lamb-ěre	[lambi] ²	[lambītum]	<i>lick</i>
Verr-ěre	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
Vell-ěre	{ velli } ³ { vulsi }	vulsum	<i>rend, pluck</i>
*Psall-ěre	psalli	—	<i>play (chords)</i>
Vis-ěre	vīsi	—	<i>visit</i>
Fidere	fīsus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
Compesc-ěro	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Rāp-ěre (i-o)	rapui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Āl-ěre	ālui	altum	<i>nourish</i>
Cōl-ěre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Consūl-ěre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Occūl-ěre	occūlui	occultum	<i>hide</i>
Sēr-ěre	sēruī	sertum	<i>join together</i>
*Pins-ěre	pinsui	pistum ⁴	<i>pound</i>
Tex-ěre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
*Deps-ěre	depsui	—	<i>knead, tan</i>
Stert-ěre	stērtui	—	<i>snore</i>
Strēp-ěre	strēpui	strēpītum	<i>rattle</i>
[-Cumb-ěre]	cūbui	cūbītum	<i>lie down</i>
Frēm-ěre	frēmui	[frēmītum] ⁵	<i>roar</i>
Gēm-ěre	gēmui	[gēmītum] ⁵	<i>groan</i>
Tēm-ěre	trēmui	[trēmītum] ⁵	<i>tremble</i>
Vōm-ěre	vōmui	vōmītum	<i>vomit</i>
Gign-ěre	gēmui	gēnītum	<i>beget</i>
Pōn-ěre	pōsui	pōsītum	<i>place</i>
Mōl-ěre	mōlui	mōlītum	<i>grind</i>

¹ More commonly, sēdi, from sēdeo.² The Perf. and Sup. are only found in Priscian.³ Vulsi is the rarer of the two forms.⁴ There are also pinsi, pinsum, and pinsītum.⁵ These forms are found in Priscian only, who does not assign them to any authors.

Velle (vōlo)	vōlui	—	wish
Nolle (nōlo)	nōlui	—	wish not
Malle (mālo)	mālui	—	wish rather
Mēt-ēre	messui	messum	move, reap
*Frend-ēre	[frendui] ¹	fressum	gnash, bruise
Līn-ēre	lēvi	lītum	smear
Sin-ēre	sīvi	sītum	allow
Cern-ēre	[crēvi]	[-erētum]	sift
Spern-ēre	sprēvi	sprētum	spurn
Stern-ēre	strāvi	strātum	strewn
Sēr-ēre	sēvi	sātum	sow
Cresc-ēre	erēvi	erētum	grow
Quiesc-ēre	quiēvi	[quiētum]	rest
Suesc-ēre	suēvi	[suētum]	be wont
(G)nosc-ēre ²	(g)nōvi	(g)nōtum	know
Pasc-ēre	pāvi	pastum	feed
Cūp-ēre (i-o)	cūpīvi	cūpītum	desire
Pēt-ēre	pētīvi	pētītum	demand
Quaer-ēre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	seek
*Rūd-ēre	[rūdīvi] ³	[rūdītum]	bray
Sāp-ēre (i-o)	sāpī (-īvi) ⁴	—	savour
Tēr-ēre	trīvi	trītum	rub, bruise
Arcess-ēre	arcessīvi	arcessitum	fetch
Ineess-ēre	inecessīvi	ineessitum	attack
Cāpess-ēre	cāpessīvi	cāpessitum	take in hand
Fācess-ēre	fācessīvi	fācessitum	cause
Lācess-ēre	lācessīvi	lācessitum	provoke
Dīc-ēre	dixi	dietum	say
Dūc-ēre	duxi	duetum	lead
[-Lāc-ēre (i-o)] ⁵	[-lexi]	[-lectum]	entice
[-Spēc-ēre (i-o)] ⁶	[-spexi]	[-spectum]	espionage
Cōqu-ēre	coxi	coetum	cook
Cīng-ēre	einxi	einctum	surround
Fīng-ēre	finxi	fietum	fashion
*Flīg-ēre	fixi	flietum	smite

¹ Frendui is not found; frendēre is found.

² Nosco has dropt g which reappears in agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum; cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum; ignosco, ignōvi: Adj. ignōtus.

³ Rūdīvi is only in Apuleius; rūdītum, nowhere.

⁴ But dēsīpio, dēsīpui. Augustine has sāpui.

⁵ Compare al-līcio, il-līcio, pel-līcio, pro-līcio, which make -lexi, -lectum. But ēlīcio makes ēlīcui, ēlīcītum.

⁶ Compare (circum- con- de- di- in- per- pro- re-)spīcio -spexi -spectum. So aspīcio, suspīcio.

Frig-ěre	frixi	frietum	<i>roast, fry</i>
Jung-ěre	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
*Ling-ěre	[-linxi]	[-linetum]	<i>lick</i>
*Mung-ěre	[-munxi]	[-munetum]	<i>wipe</i>
Ping-ěre	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Plang-ěre	planxi	planetum	<i>beat</i>
Rěg-ěre ¹	rexī	rectum	<i>rule</i>
String-ěre	strinxi	strictum	<i>bind</i>
Sūg-ěre	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Těg-ěre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
*Stingu-ěre	[-stinxi]	[-stinctum]	—
Tingu-ěre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>stain</i>
Ungu-ěre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Ningu-ěre	ninxi	—	<i>snow</i>
Ang-ěre	[auxi]	[anetum] ²	<i>squeeze</i>
*[Clang-ěre]	—	—	<i>rattle</i>
Trāh-ěre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Věh-ěre	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Viv-ěre	vixi	vietum	<i>live</i>
Stru-ěre	struxi	structum	<i>pile</i>
Fig-ěre	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Flu-ěre	fluxi	fluxum	<i>flow</i>
Merg-ěre	mersi	mersum	<i>drown</i>
Sparg-ěre ³	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Terg-ěre	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Flect-ěre	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Nect-ěre	{ nexi nexui }	nexum	<i>twine</i>
Pect-ěre	pexi	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Plect-ěre	—	[-plexum]	{ plait smite }
Mitt-ěre	mīsi	missum	<i>send</i>
Quāt-ěre (<i>i-e</i>) ⁴	—	quassum	<i>shake</i>
Cēd-ěre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Claud-ěre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Divīd-ěre	divīsi	divisum	<i>divide</i>
Laed-ěre	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
Lūd-ěre	lūsi	lūsum	<i>play</i>

¹ Compare *arrĭgo*, *corrĭgo*, *dirĭgo*; (*e-por-*)-*rigo* -*rexī* -*rectum*. Also *pergo*, *perrexī*, *perrectum*; *surgō*, *rĭse*, *surrexī*, *surrectum*, with its compounds: (as *con-ex-in-re-*)-*surg* -*surrexī* -*surrectum*.

² Priscian mentions these forms, but no authorities for them.

³ Compare *conspergo*, *dispergo*; (*ad-in-re-*)-*spergo* -*spersi* -*spersum*.

⁴ Compare (*con-dis-ex-in-per-*)-*cūtio* -*cussi* -*cussum*. So *reper-cūtio*.

Plaud-ĕre	plausi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Rād-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>shave</i>
Rōd-ĕre	rōsi	rōsum	<i>gnaw</i>
Trūd-ĕre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>
Vād-ĕre	[-vāsi]	[-vāsum]	<i>go</i>
Carp-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
*Clēp-ĕro	clepsi	cleptum	<i>steal</i>
{ Rēp-ĕro	repsi	[reptum]	<i>creep</i>
{ Serp-ĕro	serpsi	[serptum]	<i>crawl</i>
{ Scalp-ĕre	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
{ Sculp-ĕre	sculpsi	seulptum	<i>grave</i>
*Glāb-ĕre	[glupsi]	[gluptum]	<i>peel</i>
Nūb-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>wed</i>
Scrib-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Cōm-ĕre	compsi	comptum	<i>dress hair</i>
Dēm-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away</i>
Prōm-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Sūm-ĕro	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take up</i>
Temn-ĕre	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise</i>
Prēm-ĕre ¹	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Gēr-ĕre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>
Ūr-ĕre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
Ācu-ĕre	ācui	ācūtum	<i>sharpen</i>
Argu-ĕre	argui	argūtum	<i>prove</i>
Exu-ĕre	exui	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Indu-ĕre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Imbu-ĕro	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Lu-ĕre	lui	— ²	<i>alone</i>
Mīnu-ĕre	mīnui	mīnūtum	<i>lessen</i>
Nu-ĕre	nui	— ²	<i>nod</i>
Spu-ĕre	spui	spūtum	<i>spit</i>
Stātu-ĕre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
Sternu-ĕre	sternui	[sternūtum]	<i>sneeze</i>
Su-ĕre	sui	sūtum	<i>sew</i>
Tribu-ĕro	tribui	tribūtum	<i>assign, pay</i>
Solv-ĕre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loose, pay</i>
Volv-ĕre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>

¹ Compare *imprīmo*, *supprīmo*; (*com- de- ex- op- re-*)-*prīmo-pressi-pressum*.

² No Supine is found; but the fut. part. *luītūrus* points to *luītum* as Supine; and *abuītūrus* to *nuītum* for *nūo*.

Ru-ěre	ruī	rūtum (rūītum)	<i>rush</i>
*Batu-ěre	batui	—	<i>beat</i>
*-Gru-ěre	-grui	—	<i>cry like a crane</i>
Mětu-ěre	mětui	—	<i>fear</i>
Plu-ěre	plui or plūvi	—	<i>rain</i>
Fung-i	functus		<i>perform</i>
Nit-i	nīsus (nixus)		<i>strive</i>
Plect-i	[-plexus]		<i>twine</i>
Pāt-i (i-or)	passus		<i>suffer</i>
Ūti	ūsus		<i>use</i>
Grād-i (i-or)	gressus		<i>step</i>
Lāb-i	lapsus		<i>glide, fall</i>
Mōr-i (i-or)	mortuus		<i>die</i>
Quēr-i	questus		<i>complain</i>
Fru-i	frūitus		<i>enjoy</i>
Lōqu-i	locūtus		<i>speak</i>
Sēqu-i	secūtus		<i>follow</i>
Apisc-i	aptus		<i>obtain</i>
[-Mēnisc-i] ¹	[-mentus]		<i>have in mind</i>
Expērgisc-i	experrectus		<i>wake up</i>
Fātisc-i	fessus		<i>be weary</i>
(g)nasc-i	(g)nātus		<i>be born</i>
Īrasc-i	īrātus		<i>be angry</i>
Nancisc-i	nactus or nactus		<i>find</i>
Oblīvisc-i	oblītus		<i>forget</i>
Pācisc-i	pactus		<i>bargain</i>
Prōficisc-i	prōfectus		<i>set out</i>
Ulcisc-i	ultus		<i>avenge</i>
Vesc-i	—		<i>feed</i>
Liqu-i	—		<i>melt</i>
*Rīng-i	—		<i>grin</i>

¹ Compare com-mīniscor, -mentus, 3; rē-mīniscor, 3.

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH MANY OF THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.

(Alphabetically arranged.¹)

Abdo	-ēre	abdīdi	abdītum	hide
Abigo	-ēre	ābēgi	ābactum	drive away
Abōleo	-ēre	ābōlēvi	ābōlītum	destroy
Abripō	-ēre	abripui	abreptum	snatch away
Accendo	-ēre	accendi	accensum	set on fire
Accumbo	-ēre	accūbui	accubitum	recline at table
Accurro	-ēre	accelicurri and accurri	accursum	run up
Acquiro	-ēre	acquisivi	acquisitum	acquire
Addo	-ēre	addidi	additum	add
Adco	-ire	ādii	ādītum	go to
Adimo	-ēre	ādēmi	ādemptum	take away
Adjūvo	-ūre	adjūvi	adjūtum	help
Adēleo	-ēre	ādōlūi	ādultum	to honour in, honour ship
Adōlesco	-ēre	ādōlēvi	ādultum	grow up
Agnosco	-ēre	agnōvi	agnitum	recognize
Agō	-ēre	ēgi	actum	do, act, drive
Algeo	-ēre	alsi	—	be cold
Allicio	-ēre	allexi	allectum	entice
Alō	-ēre	ālui	altum ²	feed, nourish
Amicio	-ire	[āmīcui & -ixi]	āmictum	clothe
Amitto	-ēre	āmisi	āmissum	lose
Amplector	-i	amplexus (sum)	—	embrace
Ango	-ēre	—	—	squeeze
Anquiro	-ēre	anquisivi	anquisitum	examine into
Antecello	-ēre	—	—	surpass
Āpērio	-ire	āpēriui	āpertum	open
Appello ³	-ēre	appūli	appulsum	put into shore

¹ The object of this list is to test the memory of the pupil. Looking at the first column, and covering the other columns with his hand, he can repeat the Perfects and Supines without having the guidance which is necessarily furnished by the grouping in List I.

² Āltum was introduced in the post-Augustan age, possibly to distinguish it from the adj. altus high.

³ Distinguish this word from appello, appellāre, -āvi, -ātum, call.

Applico	-āre	applicui <i>and</i> applicāvi	applicitum <i>and</i> applicatum	<i>apply</i>
Arcesso	-īre	arcessivi	arcessitum	<i>send for</i>
Ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum (neut.)	<i>take fire</i>
Arguo	-ēre	argui	argutum	<i>prove</i>
Ascendo	-ēre	ascendi	ascensum	<i>ascend</i>
Attendo	-ēre	attendi	attentum	<i>attend</i>
Audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Aufugio	-īre	aufūgi	—	<i>flee away</i>
Aufero	-erre	abstūli	ablātum	<i>carry away</i>
Augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	<i>increase</i>
Bibo	-ēre	bibi	—	<i>drink</i>
Cado	-ēre	cēcidi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
Caedo	-ēre	cēcidi	cacsum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Cano	-ēre	cēcini	cantum	<i>sing</i>
Cāpesco	-ēre	cāpessivi	cāpessitum	<i>seize, take hold of</i>
Cāpio	-ēre	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Carpo	-ēre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
Caveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	<i>beware</i>
Cedo	-ēre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Censco	-ēre	censui	censum	<i>vote</i>
Cerno ¹	-īre	—	—	<i>discern</i>
Cito	citra	[civi]	[cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cio	citra	[civi]	[cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cingo	-ēre	cinxī	cinctum	<i>surround</i>
Circumcīdo	-īre	circumcīdi	circumcīsum	<i>clip</i>
Clango	-ēre	—	—	<i>resound</i>
Claudo ²	-ēre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Cō-ēmo	-ēre	cō-ēmi	cō-emptum	<i>buy up</i>
[Coopio]	-isse	coeptus (sum)	used with Pass. Inf.	<i>begin</i>
Cognosco	-ēre	cognōvi	cognitum	<i>find out, know</i>
Cōgo	-ēre	cōēgi	cōactum	<i>compel</i>
Colligo	-ēre	collēgi	collectum	<i>collect</i>
Cōlo	-ēre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Cōmo	-ēre	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn</i>
Compello ³	-ēre	compūli	compulsum	<i>drive together</i>
Compērio	-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>ascertain</i>
Compeceo	-ēre	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Compleo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	<i>fill</i>
Comprē- hendo }	-ēre	comprehendi	comprehensum	<i>seize</i>
or				
Comprendo-ēre		comprendi	comprensum	<i>seize</i>

¹ The Perfect and Supine crēvi and crētum are rarely used in this sense.

² The compounds of claudo are similar, except that they change au into u, e.g. circumclūdo, conelūdo, &c.

³ Distinguish this from compellāre, accost.

Conoido	-ĕre	concīdi	concīsum	<i>cut in pieces</i>
Concīdo	-ĕre	concīdi	—	<i>fall in a heap</i>
Concīno	-ĕre	concīnni	—	<i>play together, harmonize</i>
Concurro	-ĕre	concurri	concursum	<i>run together</i>
Concūtio	-ĕre	concussi	concussum	<i>shake together</i>
Condo	-ĕre	condīdi	condītum	<i>found</i>
Confido	-ĕre	confisus (sum)	—	<i>confide</i>
Conjicio	-ĕre	conjēci	conjectum	<i>throw</i>
Cōniveo	-ĕre	[cōnīvi & -ixi]	—	<i>wink</i>
Conscendo	-ĕre	conscondi	consensum	<i>go up</i>
Consentio	-ire	consensi	consensum	<i>agree</i>
Consēro	-ĕre	consēvi	consītum	<i>sow, plant</i>
Consēro	-ĕre	consērui	consertum	<i>put close together</i>
Consido	-ĕre	consēdi	consessum	<i>sit down</i>
Conspergo	-ĕre	conspersi	consersum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Consūlo	-ĕre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Contingo	-ĕre	contīgi	contactum	<i>touch, happen</i>
Convello	-ĕre	convolli	convulsum	<i>tear up</i>
Converto	-ĕre	converti	conversum	<i>turn towards</i>
Cōquo	-ĕre	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
Crēdo	-ĕre	crēdīdi	crēdītum	<i>believe</i>
Crēpo	-āre	crēpui	orēptum	<i>creak</i>
Cresco	-ĕre	crēvi	[crētum]	<i>grow</i>
Cūbo	-āre	cūbui	cūbītum	<i>lie down</i>
[-cumbō]	-ĕre	-cūbui	-cūbītum	<i>lie down]</i>
Cūdo	-ĕre	cūdi	cūsūm	<i>fashion</i>
Cūpio	cupēre	cūpīvi	cūpītum	<i>covet, desire</i>
Curro	-ĕre	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
[-cūtio ¹]	-ĕre	-cussi	-oussum	<i>shake]</i>
Dēcerno	-ĕre	dēcrēvi	dēcretum	<i>decree</i>
Dēcido	-ĕre	dēcīdi	—	<i>fall down</i>
Dēcido	-ĕre	dēcīdi	dēcīsum	<i>decide</i>
Dēourro	-ĕre	dēōūcurri and decurri	dēcursum	<i>run a course</i>
Dēdisco	-ĕre	dēdīdīoi	—	<i>unlearn</i>
Dēfendo	-ĕre	dēfendi	dēfensum	<i>defend</i>
Dēgo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>live</i>
Dēleo	-ĕre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
Dēmo	-ĕre	dēmpsi	dēmptum	<i>take away</i>
Dēpello	-ĕre	dēpūli	dēpulsum	<i>drive down</i>
Dēpendoo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>hang down (Intr.)</i>
Dēpendo	-ĕre	dēpendi	dēpensum	<i>pay down</i>
Dēposco	-ĕre	dēpoposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Descendo	-ĕre	descendi	descensum	<i>descend</i>
Dēsīno	-ĕre	dēsī [-īvi]	[dēsītum]	<i>cease</i>

¹ A form of *quātio* only found in the compounds *concūtio*, *percūtio*, &c.

Despondeo -ēre	despondi [-spondi]	desponsum	<i>pledge</i>
Detergeo -ēre	dētersi	dētersum	<i>wipe away</i>
Dēvincio -īre	dēvinxi	dēvinctum	<i>bind down</i>
Dico -ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
Diffido -ēre	diffisus (sum)	—	<i>distrust</i>
Diffindo -ēre	diffidi	diffissum	<i>cleave asunder</i>
Digēro -ēre	digessi	digestum	<i>set apart</i>
Dignosco -ēre	—	—	<i>distinguish</i>
Diligo -ēre	dilexi	dilectum	<i>love</i>
Dilucesco -ēre	diluxi	—	<i>dawn</i>
Dimētiar -īre	dimensus (sum)	—	<i>measure out</i>
Dimileo -āre	dimileāvi & ui	dimileātum	<i>fight</i>
Dirūno -ēre	dirēmi	dirēptum	<i>break off, or up</i>
Dirūpio -ēre	dirūpi	dirēptum	<i>tear asunder</i>
Dirumpo -ēre	dirūpi	diruptum	<i>burst asunder</i>
Discēdo -ēre	discessi	discessum	<i>depart</i>
Discindo -ēre	discidi	discissum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Disco -ēre	didici	—	<i>learn</i>
Discumbo -ēre	discūbui	discūbītum	<i>recline (at dinner)</i>
Discurro -ere	discurri	discursum	<i>run in different directions</i>
Discutio -ēre	discussi	discussum	<i>shake asunder</i>
Disjicio -ēre	disjeci	disiectum	<i>cast asunder</i>
Dispergo -ēre	dispersi	dispersum	<i>scatter apart</i>
Dissentio -īre	dissensi	dissensum	<i>disagree with</i>
Dissēro -ēre	dissēri	[dissertum]	<i>set forth distinct- ly, discourse</i>
Dissīdeo -ēre	dissēdi	dissessum	<i>be at variance with</i>
Dissilio -īre	dissilui	dissultum	<i>leap apart</i>
Dissolvo -ēre	dissolvi	dissolutum	<i>dissolve</i>
Dissuādeo -ēre	dissuāsi	dissuāsum	<i>dissuade</i>
Distinguo -ēre	distinxi	distinctum	<i>discriminate</i>
Disto -āre	—	—	<i>be distant</i>
Distrāho -ēre	distraxi	distractum	<i>draw apart</i>
Divello -ēre	divelli	divulsum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Divido -ēre	divisi	divisum	<i>divide</i>
Do -dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give</i>
Dōceo -ēre	dōcui	doctum	<i>teach</i>
Dōmo -āre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Dūco -ēre	duxi	ductum	<i>lead</i>
Edisco -ēre	edidici	—	<i>learn off</i>
Edo -ēdēre	edi	esum	<i>eat</i>
	& esse		
Edo -ēre	edidi	editum	<i>give out</i>
Effervesco -ēre	efforbui	—	<i>effervesce</i>

Effulgeo	-ēre ¹	effulsi	effulsum	shine forth
Effundo	-ēre	effūdi	effūsum	pour forth
Elīcio	-ēre	elīcui	elīctum	entice forth
Elido	-ēre	elīsi	elīsum	knock out
Elīgo	-ēre	elēgi	elēctum	choose out
Ēmentior	-īri	ēmentītus (sum)	—	lie outright
Ēmico	-āre	ēmīcui	ēmīcatum	flash out
Ēmo	-ēre	ēmi	emptum	buy, take
Ēnēco	-āro	ēnēcui	ēnectum	
		[ēnēcavi]	[ēnēcātum] ²	kill
Ēnīteo	-ēre	ēnītui	—	shine out
Ēnītor	-i	ēnīsus (enixus)	—	strive hard
Eo	īre	īvi	ītum	go
Ēvello	-ēre	ēvelli	ēvulsum	tear out
Ēvōmo	-ēre	ēvōmui	ēvōmītum	vomit forth
Excēdo	-ēre	excēssi	excessum	retire from
Excello	-ēre	excellui	[exclsum]	exceed
Excerpo	-ēre	excerpsi	excerptum	pick out
Excīdo	-ēre	excīdi	excīsum	hew out
Excīdo	-ere	excīdi	—	fall out
Excōlo	-ēre	excōlui	excultum	cultivate carefully
Excūbo	-āre	excūbui	excūbitum	lie out of doors
Excūdo	-ēre	excūdi	excūsum	hammer out
Excuro	-ēre	excūcurri	excursum	run out
Excūtio	-ēre	excussi	excussum	shake out
Exēdo	-ēre	exēdi	exēsum	gnaw out
Exīmo	-ēre	exēmi	exemptum	take out
Exōlesco	-ēre	exōlēvi	exōlētum	grow out of date
Expello	-ēre	expūli	expulsum	expel
Expergis-	-i	experrectus	—	awake oneself
cor		(sum)		
Expērior	-īri	expertus sum	—	test
Expēto	-ēre	expētīvi	expētītum	seek out
Expleo	-ēre	explēvi	explētum	fill up
Explico	-āre	explicāvi (-ui)	explicātum (-itum)	unfold
Explōdo	-ēre	explōsi	explōsum	hiss off the stage
Expōno	-ēre	expōsui	expōsitum	set forth
Exposco	-ēre	expōposci	—	demand earnestly
Exprīmo	-ēre	expressi	expressum	squeeze out
Exquīro	-ēre	exquīsīvi	exquīsītum	search out
Excīndo	-ēre	excīdi	excīsum	extirpate
Exsēco	-āre	exsēcui	exsectum	cut out
Exsēro	-ēre	exsērui	exsertum	protrude

¹ So in Virgil. Perhaps the verb should be *effulgo*, 3.

² The forms in -āvi, -ātum, are less classical; but note that *nēco* is of the first conj., and regular.

Exsilio	-īre	exsīlui	exsultum	<i>leap forth</i>
Exsisto	-ēre	exstīti	[exstītum]	<i>come forth, arise</i>
Exsolvo	-ēre	exsōlui	exsōlūtum	<i>unloose</i>
Exstinguo	-cre	exstinxi	extinctum	<i>extinguish</i>
Exsto	-āre	exstīti	—	<i>project, be extant</i>
Exstrūo	-ēre	exstruxi	exstructum	<i>heap up</i>
Exsurgo	-ēre	exsurrexi	exsurrectum	<i>rise up, recover</i>
Extendo	-ēre	extendi	extentum (-tensum)	<i>stretch out</i>
Exuo	-ēre	exūi	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Fācesso	-ēre	fācessīvi	fācessītum	<i>accomplish</i>
Fācio	fācēre	fēcī	factum	<i>do, make</i>
Fallo	-cre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Farcio	-īre	farsi	farum	<i>stuff</i>
Fāteor	-ēri	fassus (sum)	—	<i>confess</i>
Fāveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Fērio ¹	-īre	—	—	<i>strike</i>
Fēro	ferre	tūli	lātum	<i>bear</i>
Ferveo & vo	-ēre	fervi and -bui	—	<i>boil</i>
Fido	-ēre	fīsus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
Figo	-ēre	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Findo	-ēre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
Fingo	-ēre	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion</i>
Fio	fīcī	factus sum	—	<i>be made, become</i>
Flecto	-ēre	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Fleo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	<i>weep</i>
Fligo	-ēre	fixi	flictum	<i>dash</i>
Fluo	-ēre	fluxi	[fluxum]	<i>flow</i>
Fōdio	fōdēre	fōdi	fossūm	<i>dig</i>
Fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
Frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	<i>break</i>
Frēmo	-ēre	frēmui	[frēmītum]	<i>mutte, murmur</i>
Frendo	-ēre	—	fressum & frēsum	<i>gnash</i>
Frīeo	-āre	frīeui	frictum	<i>rub</i>
Frīgeo	-ēre	frixi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Frīgo	-ēre	frixi	frictum	<i>roast</i>
Fūgio	fūgēre	fūgi	[fūgītum]	<i>flee</i>
Fulcio	-īre	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Fulgeo	-ēro	fulsi	—	<i>glitter</i>
Fundo	-ēre	fūdi	fūsum	<i>pour, rout</i>
Fūro ²	-ēre	[fūru]	—	<i>be mad</i>
Gaudeo	-ēre	gāvīsus sum	—	<i>rejoice</i>
Gēmo	-ēre	gēmui	gēmītum	<i>groan</i>
Gēro	-ēre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>

¹ The perfect forms percussī, percussū, are supplied from percūtio.² The perfect form generally supplied instead of fūruī, insānīvi.

Gigno	-ĕre	gĕnui	gĕnŭtum	<i>produce</i>
Grādior	-i	gressus (sum)	—	<i>step</i>
Hāereo	-ĕre	haesi	haesum	<i>stick</i>
Haurio	-ire	hausi	haustum	<i>drain</i>
Īco	-ĕre	īci	ictum	<i>strike</i>
Ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	<i>pardon</i>
Illīno	-ĕre	illēvi	illitum	<i>smear</i>
Illūcesco	-ĕre	illuxi	—	<i>dash</i>
Illūdo	-ĕre	illūsi	illūsum	<i>make game of</i>
Imbuo	-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Immisceo	-ĕre	immiscui	immixtum(-mistum)	<i>intermix</i>
Impendo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>impend</i>
Impendo	-ĕre	impendi	impensum	<i>expend</i>
Impingo	-ĕre	impēgi	impactum	<i>thrust against</i>
Impleo	-ĕre	implēvi	implētum	<i>fill</i>
Incēdo	-ĕre	incessi	incessum	<i>step</i>
Incendo	-ĕre	incendi	incensum	<i>set on fire</i>
Incesso	-ĕre	incessīvi	—	<i>assail</i>
Incidō	-ĕre	incīdi	[incāsum]	<i>fall, light on</i>
Incido	-ĕre	incīdi	incīsum	<i>cut into, engrave</i>
Incingo	-ĕre	incinxi	incinctum	<i>gird</i>
Includo	-ĕre	inclūsi	inclūsum	<i>shut in</i>
Incolō	-ĕre	incōlui	incultum	<i>inhabit</i>
Incūbo	-āre	incūbui	incūbūtum	<i>brood over</i>
Incumbo	-ĕre	incūbui	incūbūtum	<i>lean on, bend one's mind to</i>
Incurro	-ĕre	incurri[-cūcurri]	incursum	<i>run towards, meet</i>
Incūtio	-ĕre	incussi	incussum	<i>strike against</i>
Indīgeo	-ĕre	indīgui	—	<i>need</i>
Indo	-ĕre	indīdi	indītum	<i>put in, apply . .</i>
Indulgeo	-ĕre	indulsi	indultum	<i>indulge</i>
Induo	-ĕre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Īneo	-ire	īni	īnītum	<i>enter</i>
Inflūo	-ĕre	influxi	[influxum]	<i>flow into</i>
Insēro	-ĕre	insēvi	insītum	<i>sow in</i>
Insēro	-ĕre	insērui	insertum	<i>put in, mingle</i>
Insisto	-ĕre	instīti	—	<i>stand on, persevere</i>
Insto	-āre	instīti	[instātum]	<i>press on</i>
Insurgo	-ĕre	insurrexi	insurrectum	<i>rise up, or to</i>
Intellēgo	-ĕre	intellexi	intellectum	<i>understand</i>
Intendo	-ĕre	intendi	intentum, or -sum	<i>stretch, direct</i>
Intercēdo	-ĕre	intercessi	intercessum	<i>intervene, interpose</i>
Intēreo	-ire	intērī	intērītum	<i>perish</i>
Interīmo	-ĕre	intērēmī	interemptum	<i>destroy</i>
Interlīno	-ĕre	interlēvi	interlītum	<i>smear, falsify by crasures</i>
Internosco	-ĕre	internōvi	—	<i>distinguish</i>

Intūno	-āre	intōnni	intōnitum	thunder
Intorqueo	-ēre	intorsi	intortum	twist, hurl
Intueor	-rī	intuītus (sum)	—	look on, regard
Invidéo	-ēre	invīdi	invīsum	envy
Jacio	-ēre	jēcī	jactum	throw
Jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	command
Jungo	-ēre	junxi	junctum	join
Jūvo	-ēre	jūvi	jūtum	help
Lābor	-i	lapsus (sum)	—	glide
Lācesso	-ēre	lācessīvi	lācessitum	provoke
Laedo	-ēre	laesi	laesum	hurt
Lambo	-ēre	lambi	—	lick
Lāvo	-āre ¹	lāvi	lāvātum lautum, lotum	} wash
Lēgo	-ēre	lēgi	lectum	
Lībet	-ēre	lībītum est	—	read, choose
Lingo	-ēre	linxi	linctum	it pleases, suits
Līuo	-ēre	līvi and lēvi	lītum	lick
Līquo	-ēre	līqui	[līctum]	smear
Lūcco	-ēre	luxi	—	leave
Lūdo	-ēre	lūsi	lūsum	shine
Lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	—	play
Luo	-ēre	lūi	lūitum	mourn
Mālo	mallo	mālui	—	wash, atone
Mando	-ēre	mandi	mansum	prefer
Māneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	chew
Mēdeor	-ēre	—	—	remain
—	mēmīn- isse	mēmīni	—	heal
Mergo	-ēre	mersi	mersum	remember
Mētor ²	-rī	mensus (sum)	—	drown
Mēto	-ēre	messui	messum	measure
Mētuo	-ēre	mētui	—	mow, reap
Mīco	-āre	mīcai	—	fear
Mīnuo	-ēre	mīnui	mīnūtum	glitter
Misceo	-ēre	miscui	mīstūm or mīxtūm	lessen
Misēreor	-ēri	mīsērītus (sum)	—	mix
Mitto	-ēre	mīsi	missum	mix
Mōlo	-ēre	mōlui	mōlītum	pity
Mordeo	-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	send
Mōxor	-i	mōrtūus (sum)	—	grind
Mōveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtūm	bite
Mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	die
				move
				soothe

¹ There is an ante-classical and poetical form *lāvēre*.² The form *libit* is perhaps not found in Cicero.³ Distinguish this from *mentior*, *mentiri*, *mentitus*, *lie*.

Mulgo	-ēre	mulsi	multum	milk
Nanciscor	-i	nactus, nactus (sum)	—	obtain
Nascor	-i	nātus (sum)	—	be born
Necto	-ēre	nexui & nexi	nexum	tie, bind
Neglēgo	-ēre	neglexi	neglectum	neglect
Neo	nēre	nēvi	nētum	spin
Ningo	-ēre	ninxī	—	snow
Niteo	-ēre	—	—	shine
Nitor	-i	nīsus and nixus	—	strive
Nōlo	nolle	nōlui	—	be unwilling
Nosco ¹	-ēre	nōvi	nōtum	come to know
Nūbo	-ēre	nupsi	nuptum	be married
Ōbeo	-īre	ōbīi and īvi	—	go towards, down
Ōblino	-ēre	oblēvi	oblītum	besmear
Obliviscor	-i	oblītus (sum)	—	forget
Obrēpo	-ēre	obrepsi	obreptum	creep up to
Obrūo	-ēre	obrui	obrūtum	overwhelm
Obsīdeo	-ēre	obsēdi	obsessum	besiege
Obsisto	-ēre	obstīti	[obstītum]	oppose
Obsōlesco	-ēre	obsōlēvi	obsōlētum	wear out
Obsto	-āre	obstīti	obstātum	stand in the way of
Obstringo	-ēre	obstrinxi	obstrictum	bind (by oath)
Obtēro	-ēre	obtrīvi	obtritum	trample underfoot
Ocīdo	-ēre	occīdi	occīsum	slay
Occīdo	-ēre	occīdi	occāsum	fall, die
Occūlo	-ēre	occūlui	occultum	hide
Occurro	-ēre	occurri	occursum	meet, resist
—	—	ōdisse	ōdi	hate
Offendo	-ēre	offendi	offensum	knock against
Offero	-erre	obtūli	oblātum	offer
Omitto	-ēre	ōmīsi	ōmissum	pass over
Ōpērio	-īre	ōpēruī	ōpertum	cover
Oppōno	-ēre	oppōsui	oppōsītum	put in the way
Opprīmo	-ēre	oppressi	oppressum	press down, over-
—	—	—	—	power
Ordior	-īri	orsus (sum)	—	commence
Ōrior	-īri	ortus (sum)	—	arise
Pāciscor	-i	pactus (sum)	—	bargain
Pando	-ēre	pandi	passum & pansum	expand, spread
Pango	-ēre	{ pēpīgi pēgi panxi	{ pactum panctum parsum	{ frame, fasten
Parco	-ēre	pēperci	—	spare

¹ Nosco means, *I make acquaintance with*; nōvi means, *I have made the acquaintance of*, i.e. *I know*.

Pārio ¹	-ēre	pēpēri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
Pasco	-ēre	pāvi	pastum	<i>feed</i>
Pāveo	-ēre	pāvi	—	<i>fear</i>
Pecto	-ēre	pexui and pexi	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Pello	-ēre	pēpūli	pulsum	<i>drive away</i>
Pellicio	-ēre	pellexi	pellectum	<i>allure</i>
Pendo ²	-ēre	pēpendi	—	<i>hang (intr.)</i>
Pendo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	<i>hang, weigh (tr.)</i>
Pērāgo	-ēre	perēgi	peractum	<i>complete</i>
Percello	-ēre	percūli	perculsum	<i>strike (with terror)</i>
Percutio	-ēre	percussi	percutsum	<i>strike</i>
Perdi	-ēre	perdidī	perditum	<i>lose, destroy</i>
Pergo	-ēre	perrexi	perrectum	<i>continue</i>
Persino	-ēre	peremi	peremptum	<i>make away with</i>
Perlēgo	-ēre	perlēgi	perlectum	<i>read through</i>
Perpetiō	-i	perpassus (sum)	—	<i>endure</i>
Persto	-ēre	persisti	perstatum	<i>persevere</i>
Peto	-ēre	pētivi & pētii	pētītum	<i>seek</i>
Pingo	-ēre	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Pinso	-ēre	pinsi & pinsui	pinsum	<i>pound</i>
Plango	-ēre	plaxi	planctum	<i>beat</i>
Plaudo	-ēre	plansi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Plecto	-ēre	—	—	<i>lash</i>
Plecto	-ēre	plexui, plexi	plexum	<i>plait</i>
[Pleo	plēre	plēvi	plētum	<i>fill</i>
Plico	-ēre	plīcui	plīcatum & plīctum	<i>fold</i>
Pluo	-ēre	plūit and plūiv	—	<i>rain</i>
Pōno	-ēre	pōsui	pōsitum	<i>place</i>
Posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Possum ³	posse	pōtui	—	<i>be able</i>
Pōto	-ēre	pōtāvi	pōtātum & pōtum	<i>drink</i>
Præcāveo	-ēre	præcāvi	præcautum	<i>take precautions</i>
Præcello	-ēre	—	—	<i>excel</i>
Præcido	-ēre	præcīdi	præcīsūm	<i>cut off, abridge</i>
Præcino	-ēre	præcīnui	præcentum	<i>play before, fore-</i>
				<i>tell</i>
Præcurro ³	-ēre	præcūcurri	præcursum	<i>precedes</i>
Prædico ⁴	-ēre	prædixi	prædictum	<i>predict</i>
Praeco	-ēre	præii, or -ivi	præitum	<i>go before, dictate</i>
Praesto	-ēre	præstiti	præstatum [-itum]	<i>excel, answer for</i>

¹ Distinguish this from pāreo, pāre, pāri, pāritum, obey.

² Distinguish this from the forms of the regular Verb pōtio, I gain possession of.

³ Note that here, and in excurro, the longer form of the Perfect is the more common.

⁴ Distinguish this from prædico, prædicāre, prædicavi, prædicātum, proclaim.

Praetexo	-ēre	praetexui	praetextum	<i>border, pretend</i>
Prandeo	-ēro	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine</i>
Prēhendo	-ēre	prēhendi	prēsum	<i>seize, grasp</i>
Prēmo	-ēre	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Prōcumbō	-ēre	prōcūbui	prōcūbitum	<i>fall (on one's knees, rounded, &c.)</i>
Prōdeo	-īre	prōdīi	prōdītum	<i>go forth</i>
Prōdo	-ēre	prōdīdi	prōdītum	<i>betray</i>
Prōficiscor	-i	prōfectus (sum)	—	<i>set out</i>
Prōfiteor	-ēri	prōfessus (sum)	—	<i>atone</i>
Prōfundo	-ēre	prōfūdī	prōfūsum	<i>pour forth</i>
Prōmo	-ēre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Prōmōveo	-ēre	prōmōvī	prōmōtūm	<i>move forward</i>
Prōpello	-ēro	prōpūli	prōpulsum	<i>drive before one</i>
Proscribo	-ēro	proscripsi	proscriptum	<i>publish, proscribe</i>
Prōvīdeo	-ēre	prōvīdī	prōvīsum	<i>foresee, provide</i>
Psallo	-ēro	psalli	—	<i>play on harp</i>
Pungo	-ēre	pūpūgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Quaero	-ēre	quaesivī	quesitum	<i>seek</i>
Quātio	quātēre	—	quassum	<i>shake</i>
Queo	quīre	quīvī	quītum	<i>be able</i>
Quēror	-ī	questus (sum)	—	<i>complain</i>
Quiesco	-ēre	quīēvī	quīētum	<i>rest</i>
Rādo	-ēre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>scrape</i>
Rāpio	rāpēre	rāpui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Rēcīdo	-ēre	reccīdi ¹	rēcīsum	<i>fall back, relapse</i>
Rēcīdo	-ēre	rēcīdi	rēcīsum	<i>lop, retrench</i>
Rēcumbō	-ēro	recūbui	—	<i>lie down</i>
Reclūdo	-ēre	reclūsi	reclūsum	<i>disclose</i>
Reddō	-ēre	reddīdi	reddītum	<i>restore, render</i>
Rēdeo	-īre	rēdīi	rēdītum	<i>return</i>
Rēdigo	-ēre	rēdēgi	rēdactum	<i>bring back, reduce</i>
Rēdīmo	-ere	rēdēmi	rēdemptum	<i>buy back, buy up</i>
Rēfello	-ēre	rēfelli	—	<i>refute</i>
Rēfercio	-īre	rēfersi	rēfortum	<i>cram</i>
Rēfigo	-ēre	rēfixi	rēfixum	<i>unfasten</i>
Rēdōleo	-ēre	rēdōlui	—	<i>smell of</i>
Refrigesco	-ēre	refrīxi	—	<i>grow cool, flag</i>
Refringo	-ēre	rēfrēgi	refractum	<i>break open, destroy</i>
Rēgero	-ēre	rēgessi	rēgestum	<i>cast back</i>
Relēgo ²	-ēre	rēlēgi	rēlectum	<i>gather up, get through again</i>
Rēmaneo	-ēre	rēmansi	—	<i>stay behind</i>

¹ Other verbs that lengthen compound re- in the perfect, are, rettūli and reppēri.

² Distinguish this from rēlēgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *vanish*.

Rēor	-īri	rātus (sum)	—	think, suppose
Rēpello	-ēre	reppūli	rēpulsum	drive back
Rēpendo	-īre	rēpendi	rēpensum	pay back
Rēpērio	-ire	reppēri	rēpertum	discover
Rēpo	-ēre	repsi	reptum	creep
Rēquiro	-ēre	rēquisivi	rēquisitum	seek again
Rescindo	-ēre	rescidi	rescisum	break open, down, rescind
Rēsco	-āre	rēsēui	rēsctum	prune
Rēsideo	-ēre	rēsēdi	rēsessum	remain behind
Rēsido	-ēre	rēsēdi	—	sit down, settle
Rēsipi	-ire	rēsīpiui and ni	—	recover one's senses
Rēsisto	-ēre	restiti	—	halt, resist
Respergo	-ēre	respersi	respersum	besprinkle
Respicio	-ēre	respexi	respectum	have regard to
Respondeo	-īre	respondi	responsum	answer
Restinguo ¹	-ēre	restinxi	restinctum	quench
Resto	-āre	restiti	—	remain, hold out
Rētexo	-ēre	retexui	rētextum	uniceave
Rētundo	-ēre	rētūdi & rettūdi	rētūsum	blunt
Rēvello	-ēre	rēvelli	rēvulsum	tear away
Rēvertio ²	-ēre	rēverti	rēversum	return
Rideo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	laugh
Rōdo	-īre	rōsi	rōsum	gnaw
Rūdo	-īre	[rūdivi]	[rūditum]	bray
Rumpo	-ēre	rūpi	ruptum	break
Ruo	ruere	rui	ruītum [rūtum] ³	rush, fall
Saepio	-īre	saepsi	saeptum	hedge in
Sālio	-īre	sālui	[saltum]	leap
Sālio	-īre	—	salitum	salt
Sancio	-īre	sanxi [-īvi]	sanctum [-itum]	render sacred, enact
Sāpio	-ēre	sāpīvi and -ii	—	savour of, have taste, or wisdom
Sarcio	-īre	sarsi	sartum	patch
Scābo	-īre	scābi	—	scratch
Scalpo	-ēre	scalpsi	scalptum	scratch
Seando	-ēre	—	—	climb
Scindo	-ēre	scidi	scisum	cut, tear

¹ The obsolete *stinguo* is only found (in Present form) in Lucretius and quotations of Priscian.

² In the Present and Present-derived Tenses *rēvertitur* is more common: in the Perfect and Perfect-derived Tenses *rēverti*, *rēvertēram*, &c.: but the best authors use the Dep. Participle *rēversus*.

³ The Fut. Part. *ruītūrus* points to sup. *ruītum*; but in an old legal word "*rūta*," *things dug up (on an estate)*, the vowel was long. In the compounds *obrūtus*, *ērūtus* and *surrūtus* the vowel was short.

Scisco	-ūro	scīvi	scītum	<i>decrec</i>
Scribo	-ōre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Sculpo	-ūre	sculpsi	sculptum	<i>engrave</i>
Sēco	-āre	sēcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Sēdeo	-ēro	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
Sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i>
Sēpūlio	-īre	sēpēlivi	sēpultum	<i>bury</i>
Sēro	-ūro	sēruī	sortum	<i>join together</i>
Sōro	-ēre	sēvi	sātum	<i>sow</i>
Serpo	-ēre	serpsi	serptum	<i>crawl</i>
Sido	-ōre	sidi	—	<i>sit down</i>
Singultio	-īre	singultivi	—	<i>sob</i>
Sīno	-ūre	sīvi	sītum	<i>allow</i>
Sisto	-ēre	—	—	<i>stop, make stand</i>
Sōleo	-ēro	sōlītus sum	—	<i>be accustomed</i>
Solvo	-ūro	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loosen</i>
Sōno ¹	-āre	sōnnui	sōnūtum	<i>sound</i>
Sorbeo	-ēre	sorbui [sorpsi]	—	<i>suck up</i>
Spargo	-ēre	sparai	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
[Spēcio	-ēre	spexi	spectum]	<i>spy</i>
Sperno	-ēre	sprēvi	sprētum	<i>despise</i>
Spondeo	-ēre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise</i>
Stātuo	-ēre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
Storno	-ōro	strāvi	strātum	<i>strew</i>
Sterto	-ēre	stertui	—	<i>snore</i>
Sto	stāro	stēti	stātum	<i>stand</i>
Strēpo	-ēre	strēpui	[strēpītum]	<i>roar</i>
Strideo & Strido	-ēro & -ēre	stridi	—	<i>creak, hiss, whizz</i>
Stringo	-ēre	strinxi	strictum	<i>tie</i>
Struo	-ēre	struxi	structum	<i>build, pile</i>
Suādeo	-ēro	suāsi	suasum	<i>advise, persuade</i>
Sūbēo	-īre	sūbīi	subītum	<i>go under, spring up</i>
Sūbligo	-ōro	sūbēgi	subactum	<i>bring under, sub- due</i>
Subnecto	-ēre	subnexui	subnexum	<i>tie under</i>
Subruo, <i>see</i> surruo.				
Subsido	-ēre	subsēdi	subsessum	<i>sink down</i>
Subvēnio	-īre	subvēni	subventum	<i>help</i>
Subverto	-ūre	subverti	subversum	<i>subvert</i>
Succēdo	-ēre	successi	successum	<i>approach, follow</i>
Succendo	-ēre	succendi	succensum	<i>set on fire</i>
Succurro	-ēre	suecourri	succursum	<i>help</i>
Suesco	-ēro	suevi	suetum	<i>be accustomed</i>
Suffēro	-orre	sustūli	sublātum	<i>endure</i>

¹ Note *insōnnui* and *consōnnui*, but *rēsōnāvi*.

Suffundo	-ēre	suffūdi	suffūsum	<i>suffuse</i>
Suggēro	-ēre	suggesti	suggestum	<i>supply, subjoin</i>
Sūgo	-ēre	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Summōveo	-ēre	suminōvi	suminōtum	<i>thrust off</i>
Sūmo	-ēre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take</i>
Suo	-ēre	—	sūtum	<i>sew</i>
Suppēto	-ēre	suppētivi	suppētītum	<i>be in store, suffice</i>
Suppleo	-ēre	supplēvi	supplētum	<i>fill up</i>
Suppōno	-ēre	suppōsui	suppōsitum	<i>substitute, counterfeit</i>
Supprīmo	-ēre	suppressi	suppressum	<i>check, conceal</i>
Surgo	-ēre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>arise</i>
Surrēpo	-ere	surrepsi	surreptum	<i>creep up to</i>
Surrīgo ¹	-ēre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>raise</i>
Surrīpio	-ēre	surrīpui	surreptum	<i>snatch by stealth</i>
Surruo	-ēre	surrui	surrūtum	<i>undermine</i>
Suspendo	-ēre	suspendi	suspensum	<i>suspend</i>
Suspicio	-ēre	suspexi	suspectum	<i>look up to</i>
Tango	-ēre	tēgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Tēgo	-ēre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
Temno	-ēre	—	—	<i>despise</i>
Tendo	-ēre	tētendi	[tentum & tensum] ²	<i>stretch</i>
Tēneo	-ēre	tēnui	[tentum]	<i>hold</i>
Tergeo & tergo	-ēre } -ēre }	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Tēro	-ēre	trīvi	tritum	<i>rub</i>
Texo	-ēre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
Tinguo	-ēre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>dye</i>
Tollo	-ēre	sustūli ³	sublātum ³	<i>take up</i>
Tondco	-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shave</i>
Tōno	-āre	tōnui	tōnitum	<i>thunder</i>
Torqueo	-ēre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
Torreo	-ēre	torrui	tostum	<i>roast</i>
Trādo	-ēre	trādidi	trādītum	<i>hand over</i>
Trāho	-ēre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Transeo	-ire	transīi and -ivi	transītum	<i>pass over</i>
Transigo	-ēre	transēgi	transactum	<i>transact</i>
Transilio	-ire	transīlui [-ivi] ⁴	—	<i>leap across</i>
Trēmo	-ēre	trēmui	—	<i>tremble</i>
Trībuo	-ēre	tribui	tribūtum	<i>assign</i>
Trūdo	-ēre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>

¹ This is the uncontracted form of *surgo* used transitively.

² These Supine forms have probably no existence, and are merely inferred from the *Pass. Part. tentus* and *tensus*.

³ These forms do not properly belong to *tollo*, but are assigned to it, as it has no perfect and supine: see note on *fūro* above.

⁴ *Livy* uses *-ui*; *Plautus* and *Pliny*, *-ivi*.

Tūoor[tuor]-ēri	tūtus and tūtus (sun)	—	regard, guard
Tundo -ēre	tūtuli	tūsum & tūsum	thump
Turgeo -ēro	tursi	—	swell
Ulciscor -i	ultus (sun)	—	avenge myself on
Uguo -ēre	uixi	uictum	anoint
Urgeo -ēre	ursi	—	urge
Uro -ēre	ursi	ustum	burn
Utor -i	usus (sun)	—	use
Vādo -ēre	[vāsi]	[vasum]	go
Vāho -ēro	vexi	vectum	carry
Vello -ēre	velli and vāsi	vulsum	rend
Vēneo -īro	vēni	—	be sold
Vēnio -īre	vēni	ventum	come
Vergo -ēre	[versi]	—	bend
Verro -ēre	verri	verum	steep
Verto -ēre	verti	versum	turn
Vēto -āre	vētui	vētum	forbid
Vīdeo -ēre	vīdi	vīsum	see
Vīcio -īro	vīxi	vīctum	bind
Vīco -ēro	vīci	victum	conquer
Vīso -ēro	vīsi	—	visit
Vīvo -ēre	vīxi	victum	live
Vōlo -vello	vōlvi	—	wish
Volvo -ēre	volvi	volutum	roll
Vōmo -ēro	vōmui	vōmum	omit
Vōveo -ēro	vōvi	vōtum	row

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Defective Verbs *coepl*, *begin*, *mēmīnī*, *remember*, and *ōdī*, *hate*, have no Tenses except those derived from the Perfect. Thus *I remembered* is *mēmīnēram*; *that they may remember*, or *let them remember*, *mēmīnērint*; *I shall remember*, *mēmīnēro*; and the same of *ōdī*.

INDICATIVE.

	(1)	(2)	(3)
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepl</i>	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>Ōdī</i>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	<i>Coeplēro</i>	<i>Mēmīnēro</i>	<i>Ōdēro</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Coeplēram</i>	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>Ōdēram</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coep̃rim	Mēm̃ñerim	Ōd̃erim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coep̃issem	Mēm̃ñissem	Ōdissem

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting)	Mēm̃ento Mēm̃entōte	(wanting)
----------------	-----------	------------------------	-----------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coep̃issē	Mēm̃ñissē	Ōdisē
-----------------	-----------	------------	-------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	Coep̃tūrus	(wanting)	Ōstūrus
----------------	------------	-----------	---------

4. Aio, I say :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>
<i>S.</i> Aio	—	<i>S.</i> Aiēbam	—
Aīs	Aiās	Aiēbās	—
Aīt	Aiūt	Aiēbāt	—
<i>P.</i> —	—	<i>P.</i> Aiēbāmūs	—
—	—	Aiēlātīs	—
Aiunt	Aiant	Aiēbant	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

5. Inquam, say I :—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Inquam	—	—	Inquāi
Inquīs	—	Inquīs	Inquisti
Inquīt	Inquēbāt ¹	Inquēt	—
Inquīmīs	—		
Inquītīs	—		
Inquīunt	—		

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Inquē	2 Pers. Inquīto.

N.B.—*Inquam* is always used after the first emphatic word in a speech, and is almost always separated from its Nominative.

Then *Balbus* said, “*This I* *Tum Balbus*, “*Haec*,” inquit,
 deny.” “*nēgo.*”

¹ But this form is found without the e.

APPENDIX III.

HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

Take as an example :

Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in aequor
Trinaeris, a positu nomen adepta loci.

I.—QUESTIONS ON THE SENTENCE.

1. The first question is, *Which is the Principal Verb?*
Ans., *procurrit—runs forth.*

2. *What is the Subject of the Principal Verb?* Ans.,
Terra, a land.

3. (a) *Is the Principal Verb Intransitive; or has it (b) a Direct Object? (c) an Indirect Object?*

Ans., It is Intransitive.

4. (a) *Is there any Noun in Apposition with the Subject?*
(b) *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Subject, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

Ans., (a) *Trinaeris* (i.e. *trin-acris, three-promontoried*) is sometimes a Noun (a name of Sicily), sometimes an Adjective, and may be regarded either as in Apposition to *terra*, or as agreeing with it; (b) *Adepta*, from *adipiscor*, is a Participle agreeing with *terra*, meaning *having obtained*.

¹ Bear in mind that *two Adjectives* (unless connected by a Conjunction) rarely agree with the same Noun: *many serious sorrows, multi et graves dolores* (153). But an *Adjective and Participle* may agree with the same Noun, without a Conjunction.

5. *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Object, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

6. The next question is to ask, *Are there any Adverbial Clauses attached to the Principal Verb?* i.e. any Clauses answering to the question (a) *How?* (b) *When?* (c) *Where?* (d) *Whence?* (e) *Why, &c.*

Ans. *How?* *tribus scopulis*, with *three rocks*; (c) *Where?* or *Whither?* *vastum in aequor*, into the vast sea.

7. Coming to *adepta*, repeat the above questions. Is it Transitive? Has it an Object? Adverbial Clauses, &c.?

Ans. (3) (b). The Object is *nomen*, the name; (5) *loci*, of the place, is Gen. depending on *nomen* (or *positu*); (6) *Whence?* Ans., a *positu*, from its position.¹

8. No further questions are required for this sentence: but instead of the Participle *adepta*, a prose author might have written *quod*, or *quia* *adepta fuerat*, because it had obtained, and the Conjunction *quod* or *quia* would have introduced a Subordinate Sentence.

Therefore it must be borne in mind that the answer to the question (6) *How? When? Why? &c.*, may be conveyed by a Subordinate Sentence introduced by a Conjunction, *because, though, when, in order that, &c.*: and this Subordinate Sentence must be taken to pieces in the same way as the Principal Sentence.

N.B.—A Subordinate Sentence may sometimes be the Subject or Object of the Principal Verb, e.g. "*incertum est (or nescio) num locus a positu nomen adeptus fuerit*," it is uncertain whether the place obtained its name from its position: here *est (or nescio)* is the Principal Verb, and has for its Subject (or Object) "*num . . . fuerit*."

¹ Possibly, *loci* may be transposed, as is sometimes done in poetry, and may be dependent on *positu*: from the position of the place.

II.—RULES FOR THE CASES.

In order to answer the question *What Case?* it is not enough, for example, to say that "*loci* is Genitive because it means *of the place*;" the pupil must say "Genitive Case, governed by *nomen* (or *positum*)."
In other words, the pupil must give the Rule.

The Rules for the Cases are as follows:—

1. NOMINATIVE.

1. *The Subject of a Verb.*
2. *In Apposition to another Nominative.*
3. *The Complementary Nominative* (Par. 260).
4. *By connection*, i.e. because it is connected with another Nom. by some Conjunction, *quam, vel, et, &c.*

2. ACCUSATIVE.

1. *The Subject of an Infinitive* (Par. 208, 209).
2. *The Object of a Verb.*

This includes the Accusative (often called *Cognate Accusative*) found after some Intransitive Verbs, when the Verb and Noun are of kindred, i.e. *Cognate* meaning, e.g. "*lūdo ludum*," *I play a game*; "*eo viam*," *I go my way*.

3. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 183).

4. *In Apposition to another Accusative* (Par. 123).

* 5. *The Accusative of Respect* (or *the Accusative of the Part affected*).

This is more common in poetry than in prose, especially with Passive Participles: "*tectus cāliginē vultum*," *covered with darkness as to his features*.

6. *The Accusative of Extension* of (a) time or (b) space (Par. 262).

* This mark denotes a construction more common in poetry than in prose.

7. The *Accusative of Place Whither* (towns and small islands, Par. 249).

8. The *Exclamatory Accusative*: "me miserum!" *wretch that I am!* "O sortem infelicam," *O, unhappy fate!* (206).

9. The *Double Accusative* (after Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*): Par. 312.

10. The (a) *Primary* and (b) *Complementary Accusative*: see Par. 259.

We thought you a second Cato. Alterum te Catonem putabamus.

They will create you king. Te regem creabunt.

Here the person (te) is (a) the *Primary Object* of the Verb, and requires (b) a *Complementary Accusative*, Catonem or regem, to make the meaning complete.¹

* 11. An *Adverbial Accusative* is sometimes formed from the Neuter of an Adjective, especially in poetry: "torva tuens," *looking grimly*; "dulce ridentem Lalagen," *Lalage sweetly laughing*.

3. THE DATIVE.

1. *Of the Remote Object*: after Verbs of *giving, pleasing, helping, obeying*, and their opposites (Par. 142); also after *Verbs Compounded of Prepositions* (Par. 192); after many Adjectives signifying *nearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.*, and their opposites (Pars. 27, 90, 112).

* 2. *Of Advantage or Disadvantage* (sometimes called "Commodi et Incommodi"):

Thou sowest for thyself.
We desire office for thee.

Tibi seris.
Tibi honores optamus.

This construction should be rarely employed by beginners in Latin Prose.

¹ In the *Public School Grammar* this is called the *Oblique Double Accusative with Factitive Verb*.

3. *Of Purpose* (Par. 268): often accompanied by the *Dat. of Advantage or Disadvantage*, or some other Dative:

He came for a help to us.

Venit auxilio (Dat. of P.)

nobis (Dat. of Advantage).

He gave this for a present to me.

Hoc mihi (Dat. of Recipient.)

dono (Dat. of P.) dedit.

4. *Of the Recipient used for the Agent*, found only with Perfect Passive, Passive Participles, especially Gerundives (Par. 168), and Verbals in *-bills*.¹

I have now made up my mind.

Mihi jam consilium captum est.

4. THE ABLATIVE (Par. 273—280).

1. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 178).

This includes the Ablative of *the Agent* with *a* or *ab*.

2. *Of the Instrument* (Par. 8).

3. *Of the Measure of Excess or Defect* (Par. 274).

4. *Of Definite Price* (Par. 273).

5. *Of Manner* (Par. 276).

This requires an Adjective joined to the Noun (Par. 181), except with a few Adverbial Ablatives: *nomine*, *in name*; *re*, or *re ipsa*, *in fact*; *verbo*, *in word*; *specie*, *in appearance*; *jure*, *rightly*; *neque injuria*, *and not unnaturally*; *recte atque ordine*, *in due course*; *via atque ratione*, *methodically*; *vi*, *forcibly*; *dolo*, *craftily*.

6. *Of Quality*.

This also requires an Adjective (Par. 281).

7. *Of the Point of Time* (Par. 30, 263).

8. *Of Comparison* (Par. 63).

9. *Absolute* (Par. 196).

¹ The poets use this Construction with Tenses not derived from the Perfect.

I am scarce heard by any. *Vix audior ulli.—Ovid.*

10. Used with *dignus, indignus, fretus* (Par. 28, 278).¹

11. Object of *fungor, fruor, utor, potior* (Par. 207).

12. (a) *Of Plenty and Want*; (b) with "*opus est*," "*usus est*"; see Par. 279.

13. *Of the Place Where* (with towns and small islands in the Third Declension, and in the Plural of the First and Second Declension); see Par. 265.

* 14. *A Poetic Local Ablative*, where Prose writers would insert the Preposition *in*.

15. *Of the Place Whence* (of all towns and small islands); see Par. 265.

* 16. *Of Separation* (after a few words, mostly legal, "*abdico me magistratu*," *I resign my office*; "*moveo te senatu*," *I expel you from the senate*").

Most of the Verbs (Par. 8) which allow an *Abl. of Separation* in Poetry require or allow a Preposition in Prose.

17. *Of Origin*, after *natus, ortus, genitus, satus, cretus*.

5. THE GENITIVE.

Genitives may be divided into two large classes, those in which the Gen. can be readily replaced (i.) by a Subject; (ii.) by an Object. The former are called *Subjective*; the latter, *Objective*.

Thus "*injuriae Æduorum*" may mean (i.) "*wrongs inflicted by the Ædui*" (i.e. "*the Ædui wronged some one*"), a *Subjective Genitive*; but it may mean (ii.) "*wrongs inflicted on the Ædui*" (i.e. "*some one wronged the Ædui*"), an *Objective Genitive*.

¹ The Abl. after the Verbal Adjectives *contentus, fretus, onustus*, is really an Abl. of the Instrument.

(i.) THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Par. 281—292).

1. *The Possessive Genitive.*

The Noun governing this Genitive is often omitted (Par. 289) in such phrases as *it is the mark of, characteristic of, &c.*

2. *The Descriptive or Adjectival Genitive*; see Par. 282.

This may be illustrated by the English descriptive Adjective formed out of a Noun, *sun-light* (i.e. *sun's light*), *a pine forest*, &c. So in Latin: "*lauri nemus*," *a laurel grove*; "*nomen regis*," *the name of king* (or *the royal name*); *virtus constantiae*, *the virtue of constancy*.

3. *Of the charge*, after Verbs of accusing and condemning.

This is really governed by some Noun understood, as *crimine*, *nomine*, *causa*, &c.: see Par. 290.

4. *Of Quality* (Par. 282), *Value*, or *Indefinite Price* (Par. 283).5. *The Partitive Genitive* (Par. 91).

*6. A Genitive, in Poetry, often follows a Neuter (mostly Plural) used instead of a Noun: "*secreta silvarum*," *the secret place of the woods*.

7. After some Verbs and Adjectives of *plenty* and *want* (285).¹

(ii.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

8. *Governed by a Noun.*

This Gen. must be rendered by different English Prepositions: *auri fames*, *hunger for gold*; *militiae vacatio*, *exemption from military service*; *remedium irae*, *remedy against anger*; *incitamenta periculi*, *incitements to peril*; *quies laborum*, *rest from evils*. (In writing Latin avoid this construction where it is ambiguous: *obsequium coelibis*,

¹ This is said (*Pub. Sch. Gr.* p. 420) to be a Partitive Genitive, and it would therefore fall under the head of Subjective, not Objective Genitives.

respect to a bachelor; praestantia animarum reliquarum, superiority to other souls.)

9. *With Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles used as Nouns* (Par. 288).

10. *With Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, and some Adjectives of desire* (Par. 287).

11. *With Impersonal Verbs* (as the Impersonal Object): see Par. 219.

12. *With Verbs of remembering and forgetting*: Par. 203.

13. An apparent Genitive, more properly called *the Locative Case in -i*, is used in the Second Declension to represent *Place Where*, of towns and small islands, and with a few other Nouns (Par. 265.)

6. ALL CASES.

N.B.—A Noun may be in any Case by (1) *Connection*, i.e. through being connected with some other Noun by a Conjunction, e.g. *quam, vel, et*; or by (2) *Apposition*.

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING TABLE.

The following Table shows how the different parts of speech should be parsed.

The pupil is intended to use the Table, principally to show him how to parse *visa-voce*; but he may occasionally make similar Parsing Tables for himself in order to fill up the columns in writing.

“Rogāvērant cīves ut urbs, incendio fērē dēlēta, a nostris restituerētur.”

SYNTAX.

ACCIDENCE.

Verb ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Con- jugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voleo.	Mood.	Tense.	Number.	Person.	Agrees with what Noun? Has what Object? Principal? or how de- pendent? ¹
Noun or Pro- noun.	Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Person.]	—	—	Why that Case?
Adjective ...	Nom. S. of all Gend.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Comp. Superl.]	—	—	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Participle ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Con- jugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voleo.	Tense.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Preposition ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs what Noun or Pronoun?
Adverb ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies what Verb?
Conjunction ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins what?

¹ (1) The Verb must have a Subject, which should always be stated in the Syntax; (2) it may be (a) Intransitive, or have (b) a Direct Object, or (c) an Indirect Object; (3) it may be (a) Principal, or (b) Coordinated, or (c) Subordinate to another Verb; or, if Inf., (d) Subject or Object of some Verb, or Partial Object or Subject.

"Rogaverunt," Verb.	rego	-re 1st	-vi	-tūm	Act.	Indic.	Pluperf.	Pl.	3rd	Agrees with Noun. "cives," has for its Obj. the sentence "ut urbs ... restitue- retur."
"Cives," Noun.	civis	civis	3rd	Masc.	Pl.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "rogavo- raut."
"Ut," Conjunction.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins "rogaverunt" with "restituetur."
"Urbs," Noun.	urbs	urbis	3rd	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "resti- tuetur."
"Incendio," Noun.	incendium	-i	2nd	Neut.	Sing.	Abl.	—	—	—	Abl. of Instrument.
"fero," Adverb.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies "deleta."
"deleta," Participle.	doleo	-ēre 2nd	-vi	-tūm	Passive	Perf.	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	Agrees with "urbs."
"a," Preposition.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs the Abl. "nos- tris (hominibus)."
"nostris," Pronoun Adj.	noster, -ra, -rum	nostrī, -ae, -ī	2nd	Masc.	Pl.	Abl.	no Compar.	no Superl.	—	Agrees with "homi- bus," understood, which is Abl. of the Agent, governed by "a."
"restituetur," Verb.	restituō	-ēre 3rd	-ti	-tūm	Pass.	Subj.	Imperf.	Sing.	3rd	(1) Agrees with its Nom. "urbs"; (2) Subor- dinate to "rogavo- raut," Subjunctive after "ut." RULE. Verbs signifying ask, command, &c., take "ut" with the Subjunctive.

APPENDIX V.

LATIN GENDERS.

Fem. Nouns are in black type; Neut., in CAPITALS; Masculine in ordinary type; (f. means sometimes fem.; m., sometimes masc.).

I.—BY TERMINATIONS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

FEMININE.¹

SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings -er, -ir, -us. Neuter endings -UM.

Exceptions { *alvus, cōlus (m.), dōmus, hūmus, vannus;*
arctus,† ātōmus,† carbāsus,† diālectus,†
phārus,† pēlagus,† vīrus, vulgus.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Masculine Terminations.

-er, -or, -os.

-es increasing in the Genitive.

-o (when not -do, -go, -io).

Principal Exceptions.

-er]	linter	CĀDĀVER
	ITER	PĀPĀVER ²
	ŪBER	VĒR
	VERBER	
-or]	arbor	ÆQUOR
	cŭr	MARMOR
-os]	oŏs	dŏs
	ōs	ōs
-es]	CHAOST†	ĒPOST†
	compēs	mercōs
	mergēs	quīēs
	rēquīēs	sēgēs
	tēgēs	ÆS
-o]	cāro	ēcho†

¹ Excepting names of men and men's occupations, and national names, such as Scythia, a Scythian, pōeta, a poet &c.; for which see "Genders by Meaning" below. Add also the Greek-derived words cōmēta m., and plānēta m.

² Also some other names of vegetable products, as ācer, cīcer, pīper, sīler, sīser. tūber, &c.

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

Feminine Terminations.

- do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, x.
 -es, not increasing in the Genitive.
 -s, preceded by a consonant.
 -ūs (long) in words of more than one syllable.

Principal Exceptions.

-do]	cardo	cupido (f.)	ordo	
-go]	harpago	ligo	margo	
-io]	concrete nouns, such as pāpilio.			
	pugio	unio		
-as]	as	elephas†	vas	
	vas	fas	nefas	
-is]	amnis	anguis	axis	cassis (-is)
	caulis	cinnis	collis	clunis
	crinis	oculmis	ensis	fascis
	finis (f.)	follic	funis	fustis
	ignis	lapis	mensis	orbis
	panis	piscis	postis	pulvis
	sanguis	torris	unguis	vectis
	vermis			
-x]	apex	callex	codex	cortex (f.)
	frutex	grex	lutex	murex
	pollex	silex (f.)	thorax	vertex
-es]	actinæa			
ns, -ps, &c.]	bident (f.)	dens	fons	hydrops
	mons	pons	rudens (f.)	_

Neuter Terminations.

- C, -A, -T, -L, -L, -N.
 -AR, -UR, -ŪS (short).
 -ŪS (long) in monosyllable.

Principal Exceptions.

-L]	sāl	sōl
-N]	liēn	pectēn
	rēn	splēn
-UR]	fūr	furfūr
	turtūr	vultūr
-ŪS]	lepūs	pectūs (udis)
-ŪS]	grūs m.)	sūs (m.)
	mūs	

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

MASCULINE.

Except ācus, īdus (pl.), mānus, portūcus, trībus.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

FEMININE.

Except diēs (*f. in Poets*), mēridiēs.

II.—GENDERS REGULATED BY MEANING.

A.—MASCULINE.

Names of (1) men, (2) men's occupations, (3) months, (4) winds, (5) mountains, (6) rivers, (7) peoples.¹ The exceptions arise from the terminations, such as :—

- Exceptions { (5) Aetna, Hybla, Īda; Calpē, Cyllēnē, Rhōdōpē; Alpēs (pl.); Pēlīōs and *Plurals implying ranges* (JŪGA) such as GARGĀRA, ĪMĀRA, &c.; SŪRACTĒ.
(6) Allia, and others in -ā, Lēthē, Styx.

B.—FEMININE.

Names of (1) women, (2) p'ants, (3) countries, (4) islands, (5) cities.²

- Exceptions { (2) *Nouns of Decl. 2, in -us and -er, e.g.* ācantūs, ōleaster; *Nouns in -um, e.g.* ārium; *Nouns of 3rd Decl. in -er, e.g.* ācre, cīcer, fāpāver, nīver, sīler, sīser, and sūber; also rōrer and rūs.
The following are common : bālānus, cŷtīens, lōtus, rūlus, spīnus.
(3) *Masc. Decl. 2.* Pontus; *Neut. Nouns. in -um.*
(5) *Masc. (a) all Plurals in -i, e.g.* Cōriōli; also (b) Cānōpus and Orchōmēnus; (c) *Nouns in -as, -ant, e.g.* Aerāgas, -antis; (d) *several in -o, -on, e.g.* Hippo, -ōnis; (e) *a few in -us, -unt, e.g.* Pessīnus, -antis. *Neut. (a) Nouns in -um, -on, -a (pl.) of Decl. 2; (b) most in -i, -er, -os of Decl. 3.*

¹ These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) and, (2) lūmo, (3) mensis, (4) ventus, (5) mons, (6) fluvīus, (7) pōplūs.

² These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) mūlier, (2) planta, (3) terra, (4) insūla, (5) urbs.

APPENDIX VI.

RULE FOR TURNING THE DAYS OF THE MONTH
FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN.

In Latin the day of the month is reckoned not as in English, from the first day of the month but from (1) the *Nones*, i.e. the 5th or 7th of the current month; (2) the *Ides*, i.e. the 13th or 15th of the current month; (3) the *Kalends*, i.e. the first day of the next month.

The Latin terms are—

(1) *Nōnae*, -ārum (f.), i.e. nine days before the *Ides*.¹

(2) *Īdūs*, -ūm (f.), i.e. the dividing days of the month, falling about the middle.²

(3) *Kālendae*, -ārum (f.), i.e. the calling days (Old Latin *calāre*, *proclaim*), the day when the order of the days of the month was proclaimed to the people, the first day.

There is in every month an interval of 8 days between the *Nones* and the *Ides*. The *Nones* are on the 5th, and the *Ides* on the 13th, in every month, except March, July, October and May; in which four months the *Nones* are on the 7th and the *Ides* on the 15th.

This is sometimes remembered from the rhyme:—

“In March, July, October, May,
The *Nones* are on the seventh day.”

I. When the day falls between the first and the *Nones*, or between the *Nones* and the *Ides*, the rule is (since the Romans reckoned inclusively) Add one to the *Nones* or *Ides* and subtract the day.

Thus, if the day be 4 March, add 1 to the *Nones* of March; $7 + 1 = 8$, subtract 4, the result is 4. This is written “*antē diem quartum Nōnas Martias*.”³

If the day be 11 April, add 1 to the *Ides* of April; $13 + 1 = 14$; subtract 11, the result is 3. This is written “*antē diem tertium Idus Apriles*.”³

II. When the day falls after the *Ides*, the rule is (since here we are reckoning not from the last day of the month but from the day after that), Add two to the total number of days in the month, and subtracting the day from the result, reckon from the *Kalends* of next month.

Thus if the day be 20 January, add 2 to 31, and from 33 subtract 20, the result is 13 days before the *Kalends* of February; and this is written thus “*ante diem tertium dēcimum Kāendas Februārias*.”³

III. If the day is (a) on, or (b) the day before, the *Nones*, *Ides* or *Kalends*, it is expressed by (a) the Abl., or (b) *Prīdie*, followed by the Acc.: (a) 7th of May, “*Nōnis Maiis*”; (b) 12th of June, “*Prīdiē Īdus Jūnias*”; 30th of June, “*Prīdiē Kāendas Quintiles*”; 4th of August, “*Prīdiē Nōnas Sextiles*.”

IV. Note that Adjectives, (and not Nouns in the Genitive) are used in each case. The Adjectives are, (“*antē diem*—*Kāendas*, *Nōnas*, *Īdus*) *Jānuārias*, *Februārias*, *Martias*, *Apriles*, *Maias*, *Jūnias*, *Quintiles*, *Sextiles*, *Septembres*, *Octōbres*, *Nōvembres*, *Dēcembres*.”

¹ We should say “eight days before”: but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

² This is the derivation commonly given from an Etruscan word *idūāre*, divide: but more probably from Sanscr. *indh-*, *idh-*, *kindle*, *enlighten*, (*indu*, *moon*) from being the days of light, the days of the full moon.

³ A rarer form is “*tertio*, *quarto*, *tertio dēcimo die antē*,” &c. The common construction cannot be explained except as a confusion.

APPENDIX VII.

ELEMENTARY RULES ON THE QUANTITY
OF SYLLABLES*As a Guide to Pronunciation.*

I.—GENERAL RULES.

1. Diphthongs (*aēs, brass*) and contracted syllables (*quīs* for *quībus*) are long.

2. A vowel before another vowel (*monēo*) is short.

3. A vowel naturally short (*e.g.* the *a* in *cāno, I sing*), when placed before two consonants (*e.g.* in *cantus, song*), is said to be *long by position*, and is long for the purposes of verse-making; but it is *pronounced* in the same way as the *a* in *cano*, so that *length by position does not affect pronunciation.*

II.—FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Final *-ā* is *long*: exceptions; Nom., Voc., and Acc. cases; also *itā, quā*.¹

2. Final *-ē* is *short*: exceptions: (1) Adverbs in *-ē* derived from Adj. in *-us, -a, -um*, as *maximē*, (*save bēnē, mālē, supernē*); (2) Abl. Sing. of 5th Decl.; (3) 2nd Pers. Sing. Imper. of 2nd Conj.; (4) *nē, mē, tē, sē*.

3. Final *-ī* is *long*; but *-ī* is mostly *short* in *mīhī, tībī, ūbī, ībī, sībī*, always in *nīlī*.

4. Final *-ō* is *long*; but mostly *short* in *ēgō, mōdō* (adv.) only.

5. Final *-ū* is *long*.

6. A vowel before *-o* is *long*; exceptions, *nēo, dōnēo, faci*.

7. A vowel is *short* before final *-b, -d, -l, -n, -r, and t*.²

¹ None but the more important exceptions are given to every rule.

² The quantities of syllables not final must be learned by experience; but the quantity of one word often helps the pupil to that of many derived words. For example, the short *ō* in *mōneō* determines the quantity in *admōneō, commōneō, mōnitus, -us, mōnitor, -ōris, monumentum, -ī, &c.*: exceptions, *dūcōis, of a leader, dūco, I lead; sēdēs, a seat; sēdeo, I sit.*

8. -ās and -ēs are *long* : but nouns in -es, increasing the Genit., are short, *e.g.* mīlēs, mīlītis; and ēs (*thou art*) is *short*, both in sum and in its compounds.

9. -ēs is *short* : exceptions (a) Plural Cases, *e.g.* insūlis, dōmīnis, nōbīs; (b) second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic., of fourth Conj., audīs; (c) sīs (Pres. Subj. of sum) and vīs (Pres. Indic. of vōlo), and their compounds, as well as velīs, mālīs, nōlīs; (d) vīs, *violence*.

10. -ōs is *long* : exception, ōs (Gen. ossis).

11. -ūs is *short* : exceptions; (a) Gen. Sing., and Nom. and Acc. Pl. of Fourth Decl.; (b) nouns in -us which increase in the Gen. with a long penult, virtūs, -ūtīs.

N.B.—It will be seen that (by Rules 7 and 9) many of the commonest monosyllables are short; ōb, sūb, ād, āt, ēt, īd, īn, ān, vēl, pēr, tēr, vīr; also īs, and quīs.

But although (according to Rule II. 2) -quē, -vē, and -nē? are short, nē *let* is long, and so are the pronouns mē, tē, se. Also cūr? *why?* is long.

APPENDIX VIII.

ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

- Ablative (Case)** [L. *ab*, "from;" *latus*, "carried"]. The Case denoting, among other things, *ablation*, or *carrying away from* (8, 273).
- Absolute (Construction)** [L. *ab*, "from;" *solut-*, "loosed"]. A construction in which a Noun, Participle, &c., is supposed to be used apart, *i.e.* *loosed from*, its ordinary Grammatical adjuncts. But the *Abl. Absolute* is really an *Abl. of circumstance* (196).
- Abstract (Noun)** [L. *abs*, "from;" *tract-*, "drawn"]. The name of an *abstraction*, *i.e.* of something considered by itself, apart from (*drawn away from*) the circumstances in which it exists.
- Accent** [L. *ad*, "to;" *cantus*, "song"]. Perhaps originally a *sing-song*, or modulation of the voice, added to a syllable. Now used of stress laid on a syllable.
- Accidence** [L. *accident-*, "befall"]. That part of grammar which treats of the changes that *befall* words. (1); Quintilian I. 5, 41, "frequentissime in verbo quia plurima huic *accidunt*." 2. Probably a Latin mistake. The Greek original meant (1) *cause*, (2) *accusation*. The Latins took it in sense (2) instead of (1). The Latin name for the Direct Objective Inflection. Possibly the Romans regarded the object as confronted with the agent, like an *accused* person with the prosecutor.
- Active (Voice)**. The form of a Verb that usually denotes *acting* or *doing*.
- Adjective** [L. *ad*, "to;" *jact-*, "cast or put"]. A word *put to* a Noun.
- Adverb** [L. *ad*, "to;" *verb-*, "word" or "Verb"]. A word generally joined *to* a Verb.
- Adversative** [L. *adversus*, "opposite"]. An epithet applied to Conjunctions that (like "but") express *opposition*.
- Affix** [L. *ad*, "to;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. A syllable or letter *fixed* to the end of a word.
- Agreement**. The change made in the inflections of words so that they may suit or *agree* with one another.
- Alphabet** [Gr. *alpha*, *beta*; "a," "b"]. The list of letters, so called from the names

of the first two letters in Greek.

Anacolouthon [Gr. *a-*, "not;" *anolouthon*, "following"]. A break in the Grammatical sequence, or *following*.

Anomaly. A Greek-formed word meaning "unevenness," "irregularity."

Antecedent [L. *ante*, "before;" *cedent*, "going"]. (a) That part of a sentence which expresses a condition. So called because the condition must *go before* its consequence. (b) Also used for the Noun that *goes before* a Relative Pronoun (107).

Apodosis [Gr. *apo-dosis*, "a paying back"]. A Greek name for the "Consequent," or "Then-Clause," in a Conditional Sentence (293). The Consequence was regarded as a sort of *debt*, to be *paid* in return for the fulfilment of the Condition.

Appellative [L. *appella*, "call to"]. A name for the *Vocative* or *calling* use of a noun.

Apposition [L. *ad*, "near;" *posit*, "placed"]. The *placing* of one noun in the same case with another noun or pronoun, to express some quality, or circumstance, of the latter (123).

Asyndeton [from Greek "not bound together."] The placing of words together without a Conjunction : see Par. 32.

Attribute [L. *attribut*, "assigned"]. An Adj. *assigned* to qualify a Noun.

Cardinal (Numbers) [L. *cardin*, "hinge"]. That on which

anything *linges* or turns : hence, "important." A name given to those more *important* forms of Numeral Adjectives from which the Ordinal forms are derived.

Case [L. *casus*, "falling"]. The Latin translation of the Greek term for the forms of a Noun. The subjective form was regarded as "erect," and the other forms as more or less *falling* away from it. Hence "oblique," "decline," &c.

Clause [L. *claus*, "enclosed"]. A general term for a part of a Sentence, whether it be a Phrase or a Subordinate Sentence.

Cognate (Object) [L. *co*, "together;" (*g*)*nat*, "born"]. The name given to an object that denotes something *akin* to (*born together* with) the action denoted by the Verb.

Common (Noun). A name that is *common* to a class and not *peculiar* or *proper* to an individual.

Comparative (Degree). The form of an Adjective denoting that a quality exists in a greater degree in some one thing than in some other with which it is *compared*.

Complementary [L. *comple*, "fill up"]. That which completes, or *fills up*.

Complete (State). A name given to an action (whether Past, Present, or Future) that was, is, or will be *complete*.

Complex (Sentence) [L. *con*, "together;" *plic*, "fold"]. A sentence that is *folded together*, or involved by con-

- taining one or more Subordinate sentences.
- Compound (Sentence)** [L. *con*, or *com*, "together;" *pon*-, "place"]. A sentence made up of a number of Co-ordinate sentences placed together.
- Concord.** The name given to syntactical agreement between words, e.g. between Verb and Subject.
- Conjugation** [*con*, "together;" *jung*io, "joining"]. A number of Verbs joined together in one class.¹
- Conjunction** [L. *con*, "together;" *junct*-, "joined"]. A word that joins together two sentences expressed or implied.
- Consequent.** The name given to that part of a Sentence which expresses the consequence of the fulfilment of a condition. See *Antecedent*.
- Consecutive.** The name sometimes given to a clause introduced by "ut" so that, expressing result, or consequence, of an action.
- Consonant** [L. *con*, "together;" *son*ant-, "sounding"]. Letters (such as *p*) that can only be sounded together with a vowel.
- Coordinato** [L. *co*-, "with;" *ordin*-, "rank"]. The name given to a Sentence that ranks with the Principal Sentence (§34a): see Note following the Glossary.
- Correlatives.** Words that are related together or mutually related, e.g., "either," "or;" "both," "and;" "when," "then."
- Dative** [L. *datus*-,² "that which has arisen from giving"]. The Latin name for the Indirect Objective case used after Verbs of giving, &c. (192)
- Declension.** The bending or declension of the Oblique (see *Oblique* below) cases from the Subjective form, which was regarded as "erect."
- Defectivo (Verbs)** [L. *deficio*, "I fail"]. Verbs that are deficient in some of their forms: see p. 215.
- Degree (of comparison)** [L. *gradus*, Fr. *degré*, "step"]. The forms expressing the steps or degrees in which a quality can be expressed by an Adjective.
- Dependent (Sentence).** Sometimes used for Subordinate. But generally applied to Subordinate sentences that are the Subjects or Objects of Verbs (208, 239).
- Deponent (Verbs)** [L. *deponens*, "laying aside"]. Verbs that retain an Active meaning, while laying aside Active forms: Par. 199.
- Dieresis** [Gr. *diairesis*, "separation"]. The mark placed over one of two vowels to show that each is to be

¹ Hence to conjugate a Verb is to repeat the inflections belonging to the class or conjugation. But the Romans used *decline* and not *conjugate* in this sense (Madvig).

² Termination *-ivus* in Latin, when added to Participles, denotes that which has arisen from, e.g. "captivus," that which has arisen from "capture."

- pronounced *separately*, e.g. in "aërial."
- Diphthong [Gr. *di*, "twice;" *phthongos*, "sound"]. Two vowel sounds pronounced as one.
- Direct (Object). The Noun that denotes what is regarded as the *direct object* of the action of a Verb.
- Ellipsis [Gr. *elleipsis*, "omission"]. The omission of words (said to be "understood" i.e. implied) in a Sentence.
- Enclitics [Gr. "lean on"]. Words that cannot stand without *leaning on*, and being attached to, the words before them, e.g. -quē, -vē, -nē.
- Epithet [Gr. *epithetos*, "placed to"]. An Adjective *placed to* a Noun to describe some quality of the person or thing denoted by the Noun.
- Final [L. *finis*, "end"]. A *final* clause expresses an *end* or *purpose*; and "ut" *final* ("in order that") is distinguished from "ut" *consecutive* ("so that") (296).
- Finite (Verb). A name given to those parts of the Verb which are *defined* by Number and Person, as distinct from the *Infinitive* or *Infinite*.
- Frequentative (Verb). A Verb that expresses a *frequently* repeated action, e.g. "ven-tito," *I often come*.
- Gender [L. *genus*, Fr. *genre*, "breed," or "class"]. Forms to denote *classification* according to sex.
- Genitive (Case) [L. *genitiv*-, "generating"]. The Case denoting *generation*, *origin*, *possession* (282).¹
- Gerund [L. *gero*, "I carry on"]. Part of the Verb denoting the *carrying on* of the action of the Verb. The *Gerundive* is Adjectival, the *Gerund* is a Noun (163, 170, 251).
- Gutturals [L. *guttur*, "throat"]. Throat letters, *k*, and hard *g*.
- Historic Infinitive. The Infinitive used for the Indicative, as is sometimes the case in rapid *historical* narrative: see Par. 320.
- Idiom [Gr. *idioma*, "peculiarity"]. A mode of expression *peculiar* to a language.
- Imperative (Mood). [L. *impera*-, "command"]. The *commanding* Mood (129).
- Impersonal (Verbs). Verbs not used with a *Personal* Subject: see Par. 219.
- Indicative (Mood). [L. *indica*-, "point out"]. The Mood that *points out* or *indicates* an action, &c., as a past, present, or future existence.
- Indirect (Object). The Noun or Pron. denoting the person or thing regarded as not directly but only *indirectly* influenced by the action of the Verb (192).
- Infinitive (Mood) [L. *in*, "not;" *finit*-, "limited"]. A Mood *not limited* by any definition of Person or Number.
- Inflection. [L. *inflecto*, "I

¹ The Latin "genitivus" is a mistranslation of the Greek *genike*, which meant the *generic* case i.e. the case that denoted the *genus* or *class*. For example "life," "What *class* of life?" "Man's life."

- . bend"]. The *bending* of a word from the simple form, by means of varying the termination. See *Oblique*.
- Interjection [L. *inter-ject*-, "thrown between"]. An utterance *thrown in between* words, to express emotion.
- Intransitive (Verb). [L. *in*, "not"; *transitiv*-, "passing across"]. A Verb whose action is not supposed to *pass across* to any Object.
- Labials [L. *labium*, "lip"]. Lip-letters: *f*, *v*, *p*, *b*, *m*, *hw* and *w*.
- Linguals [Latin *lingua*, "the tongue"]. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *tongue*: *sh*, *s* in *pleasure*.
- Locative (Case) [L. *locus*, "place"]. A case expressing *place* (Par. 265).
- Liquids. Letters of a flowing, *liquid* sound, as *l*, *r*.
- Monosyllable [Gr. *mono*, "only"]. A word of *only one* syllable.
- Mood [L. *mod*-, "manner"]. The form of a Verb expressing the *manner* of action.
- Mutes [L. *mut*-, "dumb"]. Letters that are *dumb* without the aid of a vowel: *k*, *g*, *t*, *d*, *p*, *b*.
- Nasal [L. *nas*-, "nose"]. Consonants sounded through the *nose*; *n*, *m*.
- Neuter (Gender). [L. *neuter*, "neither"]. That Gender which is *neither* Masc. nor Feminine.
- Nominative (Case) [L. *nomina*-, "to name"]. A Latin term for the Subject, because the Subject was regarded as a person or thing *named*.
- Noun [L. *nomen*, Fr. *nom*, "name"]. The *name* of anything.
- Object. The word, or group of words, denoting that which is regarded as the *object* or mark aimed at by the action of Verbs or the motion of Prepositions.
- Oblique (Case). A name given to all Cases but the Subjective. By the Greeks the Subjective form of a Noun was regarded as *erect*, and all the other forms as *fallings* or *oblique* deviations from the Subjective.
- Oblique (Speech). Speech reported, not *directly* in the First Person with the exact words of the speaker, but *indirectly* or *obliquely* in the Third Person.
- Ordinal (Adjective) [L. *ordin*-, "order"]. An Adjective, that answers to the question "in what *order*."
- Palatals. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *palate*: *ch*, *j*.
- Participle [L. *particip*-, "participating"]. A form of a Verb *participating* in a Verb and an Adjective.
- Particle. A "little part": a name given to the four undeclined "*parts of speech*," Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection and Preposition.
- Partitive (Genitive). A Genitive implying *partition* (91).
- Passive (Voice). A form of the Verb expressing *passiveness* rather than *activeness*.
- Perfect (Tense) [L. *perfect*-, "complete"]. The Name

for the Latin Tense that has to represent (1) our Indef. Past, (2) our Complete Present.

Period [Gr. *peri*, "round"; *od*-, "path"]. (1) The full, rounded path of a complex sentence, (2) a mark at the end of a sentence.

Person [L. *per*, "through"; *son*-, "sound"; hence, *persona* "a mask through which an actor sounds"; "an actor's part in a play"]. The part played in conversation, (1) speaking; (2) spoken to; (3) spoken of.

Phrase [Gr. *phrasis*, a "saying"]. A group of words not expressing a statement, question, or command.

Pluperfect (Tense) [L. *plu*-, "more"; *perfect*-, "complete"]. A more than complete Tense. The Latin equivalent of our Complete Past (121).

Plural (Number) [L. *plu*-, "more"]. The form denoting more than one.

Polysyllable [Gr. *poly*-, "many"]. A word of many syllables.

Positive. The simple form of an Adjective; so-called because it expresses a quality not comparatively, but positively.

Possessive [L. *possess*-, "possessed"]. The name given to the use or case of a Noun denoting possession.

Predicate [L. "*praedica*-" "proclaim," "state"]. A word or group of words

making a statement about a Subject.

Prefix [L. *prae*, "before"; *fix*-, "fixed"]. A letter, syllable, or word fixed before another word.

Preposition [L. *prae*, "before"; *posit*-, "placed"]. A Word (not a Verb) generally placed before a Noun or Pronoun as its Object. N.B. A Preposition and its Object make up an Adverbial Phrase.

Pronoun [L. *pro*, "for"; L. *nomen*, "noun"]. A word used for a Noun.

Proper (Noun). [L. *propri*-, *F. propre*; "peculiar"]. A name that is peculiar or proper to the individual, not common to a class.

Prose [L. *prosa*, for *prorsa*, for *pro-versa*,¹ i.e. "turned forward"]. Writing that does not turn like verses but runs straight on. Hence, the straightforward arrangement of prose.

Prosody [Gr. *prosodia*, a "song"]. Hence, that part of Grammar which treats of verse, whether intended to be sung or not.

Protasis [Gr. *pro*, "before"; *tasis*, "stretching"]. Literally, stretching before. Hence, in a sentence, the Antecedent or Condition. See *Apodosis*.

Punctuation [L. *punctum*, "point"]. Dividing a sentence by means of points representing the pauses.

Quantity. The quantity of time necessary to pronounce a syllable.

¹ Compare our *é'er*, *o'er* for *ever*, *over*.

Reduplication. The *reduplicating* or *redoubling* of a syllable, mostly found (but with some change) in a few Latin Perfects, *e.g.* "tendo," "te-tendi."

Reflexive (Pronoun) [*reflexus*, "bent back"]. A Pronoun which is as it were *bent back* on the Subject, so that the Pronoun and the Subject denote the same person or thing.

Relative (Pronoun) [L. *re*, "back;" *lat*-, "carried"]. A name given to *qui*, *quae*, &c., when used not Interrogatively to carry one forward, but to *carry one back* to the Antecedent.

Root. A word that gives birth to a group of kindred words, as a *root* to branches.

Sentence [L. *Sententia*, a "meaning"]. A group of words of *meaning* so complete as to express a statement, question, or command.

Sibilant L. [*sibila*-, hiss]. *Hissing* letters: *s*, *z*, *sh*.

Stem. That part of a word which remains the same when the word is inflected.

N.B.—The True Stem of a word is sometimes concealed by changes, *e.g.* the "o" which is part of the True Stem of "dominus" is lost in almost all the Cases. Hence the Stem of "dominus" as printed in Par. 12 appears to be "domin-." This false Stem, which is obtained by clipping the True Stem of its final vowel, is sometimes called the Clipt Stem. (Par. 55, note 1.)

Subject [L. *subject*-, "placed

under"]. That which is placed *under* one's thoughts, as the basis for speech. Hence, the Subject of a Verb is that about which the Verb makes a statement (127).

Subjunctive (Mood) [L. *subjunct*-, "subjoined"]. A Mood expressing a purpose, condition, &c., *subjoined* to some statement, question, or answer.

Subordinate (Sentence) [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *ordin*-, "rank"]. See Note p. 239.

Substantive (Noun) [L. *substantia*, "substance"]. A name given to Nouns, perhaps as being the *substance* or *ground standing beneath* the Adjective. It is from a Greek term, applied not to Nouns but to the *Substantive Verb*, "to be."

Suffix [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *fix*-, "fixed"]. Same as *Affix*.

Supine. A name given to two very rarely used Noun forms of the Verb used only in the Accusative and Ablative. Its origin is unknown, but it may at least serve to remind the pupil that these forms are the laziest and most *supine* of all the parts of the Verb: see Par. 246, 247.

Superlative (degree) [L. *super*, "above;" *lat*-, "carried"]. An Adjectival form denoting the expression of a quality in a degree *carried above* other degrees.

Syllable [Gr. *syn*, "together;" *lab*-, "take"]. A group of letters *taken together* so as to form one sound.

Syntax [Gr. *syn*, "together;"

<i>taxis</i> , "arranging"]. The arrangement of words together in a sentence.	because the action of the Verb is regarded as passing or going across to the Object.
Temporal (Clause) [L. <i>tempus</i> , "time"]. An Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of time.	Verb [L. <i>verb-</i> , "word"]. The chief word in a sentence.
Tense [L. <i>tempus</i> , Fr. <i>temps</i> , "time"]. The forms of a Verb indicating the time of an action.	Vocative [L. <i>voca-</i> , "call"]. The use, or Case, of a Noun when the person or thing is called to.
Transitive [L. <i>trans</i> , "across; it-, "going"]. A Verb that has an Object, so called	Vowels [L. <i>vocalis</i> , "having voice"]. The letters that have a voice or are sounded (not as the "consonants but) by themselves: <i>a, e, i, o, u</i> .

NOTE ON SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Subordinate Sentences are those which express some (1) **Noun**, (2) **Adjective**, or (3) **Adverb** in another Sentence called the Principal Sentence.¹

(1) (Noun) { (a) (Subject.) "WHEN *he-will-come* is uncertain."
(b) (Object.) "I say THAT *he-will-come*."

(2) (Adjective.) "The battle *that-was-fought at Cannæ* was gained by Hannibal."

(3) (Adverb.) (a) (When?) "WHEN *he-had-heard-this* he departed"; (b) (Why?) "I will strive THAT *you-may-succeed*"; (c) (How?) "He behaved so gently THAT *he-surprised-every-body*"; (d) (Where?) "WHERE *the-Turk's-horse-goes*, nothing grows."

For a list of the Principal Subordinate and Coordinate Conjunctions see Par. 334a.

¹ A Subordinate Sentence (called also a Subordinate Clause) is sometimes defined as one that is "constructively dependent" on another Sentence. If this definition were adopted, a sentence in the Subjunctive preceded by "antequam" would be Subordinate, while the same sentence in the Indicative, preceded by "antequam," would not be Subordinate.

APPENDIX IX.

VOCABULARIES.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>adj.</i>	= adjective
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb
<i>c.</i>	= common gender
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction
<i>f.</i>	= feminine
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive
<i>indec.</i>	= indeclinable
<i>inter.</i>	= interrogative

<i>m.</i>	= masculine
<i>n.</i>	= neuter
<i>pl.</i>	= plural
<i>prep.</i>	= preposition
<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun
<i>sing.</i>	= singular
<i>v.</i>	= verb

EXERCISE I.

āqua, f. water
āquīla, f. eagle
filīa, f. daughter
insūla, f. island
nauta, m. sailor
pēcūnia, f. money
pūella, f. girl
rēgina, f. queen

violētia, f. violence
āmat, v. loves
dāt, v. gives
lāvat, v. washes
libērat, v. frees, delivers
monstrat, v. points out, shows
sūperat, v. overcomes
vōrat, v. devours
ēt . . . ēt, conj. both . . . and

EXERCISES II.—VI.

constantia, f. constancy
culpa, f. blame, fault
dextra, f. right hand
expēriētia, f. experience
fēmīna, f. woman
intempērantia, f. intemperance
ira, f. anger
pātientia, f. patience
patriā, -ae, f. native land
prōcella, f. storm
prudentia, f. prudence
sāpientia, f. wisdom
stella, f. star

EXERCISE VII.

dōmīnus, m. lord, owner
ēquus, m. horse
filīus, m. son
flūvīus, m. river
glādīus, m. sword
hortus, m. garden
māgister, m. master (mostly teacher)
mīna, f. threat
mīnister, m. servant, attendant
servus, m. slave
hābet, v. has
tīmet, v. fears
terret, v. terrifies, frightens

EXERCISES VIII.—XI.

āger, *m. field*
 agrīcōla, *m. husbandman*
 āper, *m. boar*
 arbīter, *m. umpire*
 Auster, *m. south wind*
 cancer, *m. crab*
 cāper, *m. goat*
 cōlūber, *m. snake*
 culter, *m. knife*
 fāber, *m. artificer, workman*
 gēner, *m. son-in-law*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 invīdia, -ae, *f. envy*
 liber, *m. book*
 Liber, *m. Liber, the god of wine*
 libēri, *m. pl. children*
 pūer, *m. boy*
 sōcer, *m. father-in-law*
 vesper, *m. evening*
 vīr, *m. man, hero*
 culpat, *v. blames*
 laudat, *v. praises*
 nēque, or nēc, *conj. and not, neither*
 nōn, *adv. not*
 ā (āb before vowels or h), *prep. by*
 sup̄erantur, terrentur, *see p. 11*

EXERCISE XII.

argentum, *n. silver*
 arvum, *n. cornfield*
 aurum, *n. gold*
 diligentia, *f. diligence*
 dōnum, *n. gift*
 mūrus, *m. wall*
 Neptūnus, *m. Neptune*
 oppīdum, *n. town*
 porta, -ae, *f. gate*
 praemīum, *n. reward*
 terra, *f. land*
 templum, *n. temple*
 delectat, *v. delights, charms*

EXERCISE XIII.

aurīga, *m. charioteer*
 bōnus, -a, -um, *good*
 dīrus, -a, -um, *terrible*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 ēpistūla, -ae, *f. letter*
 impāvīdus, -a, -um, *fearless*
 imprōbus, -a, -um, *dishonest*
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 jussum, *n. command*
 justus, -a, -um, *just*
 magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
 parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*
 pāvīdus, -a, -um, *fearful*
 pēlāgus, *n. sea*
 pēricūlum, *n. danger*
 prōbus, -a, -um, *honest*
 scrība, *m. scribe, clerk*
 splēdīdus, -a, -um, *splendid*
 strēnūus, -a, -um, *vigorous*
 tīmīdus, -a, -um, *timid*
 vastus, -a, -um, *vast*
 vīa, *f. way*

EXERCISES XIV. AND XV.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ailing*
 āla, *f. wing*
 albus, -a, -um, *white*
 altus, -a, -um, *high, tall*
 Brītanīa, *f. Britain*
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*
 impīger, -gra, -grum, *active*
 incōla, *m. inhabitant*
 lātus, -a, -um, *broad*
 mācer, -cra, -crum, *lean*
 mīser, -era, -erum, *wretched*
 morbus, *m. disease*
 nīger, -gra, -grum, *black*
 pīger, -gra, -grum, *sllothful*
 pōēta, -ae, *m. poet* [perous
 prosper, -pēra, -pērum, *pros-*
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beauti-*
 ful
 rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*
 sācer, -cra, -crum, *sacred*

stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
 taeter, -tra, -trum, *foul*
 vāser, -fra, -frum, *cunning*
 vālidus, -a, -um, *strong*
 verbum, -i, *n. word*
 est, *v. (he) is; (there) is*
 sunt, *v. (they) are; (there) are*

EXERCISE XVI.

acutus, -a, -um, *sharp*
 aestus, aestatis, *f. summer*
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*
 bellum, -i, *n. war*
 clārus, -a, -um, *renowned*
 cōmēs, cōmitis, *m. companion*
 dignus, -a, -um, *worthy (g. abl.)*
 dux, dūcis, *m. leader*
 ēquēs, ēquitis, *m. horse-soldier*
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*
 ignāvia, -ae, *f. sloth, cowardice*
 impērator, -ōris, *m. general*
 indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*
 ingrātus, -a, -um, *displeasing*
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
 iudex, iudicis, *m. judge*
 lāpis, -idis, *m. stone*
 lēx, legis, *f. law*
 mālus, -a, -um, *bad*
 mēmōria, *f. memory, recollection*
 milēs, militis, *m. soldier*
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
 nox, noctis, *f. night*
 obscurus, -a, -um, *dark*
 pēdēs, pēditis, *m. foot-soldier*
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*
 rēx, regis, *m. king*
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*
 spina, -ae, *f. thorn*
 verbum, -i, *n. word*
 delectat, *v. (he) delights*
 laedit, *v. hurts*

EXERCISE XVII.

annus, -i, *m. year*
 ēlēphās, elephantis, *m. elephant*
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage*
 grus, grūis, *c. crane*
 hiemps, hiēmis, *f. winter*
 hōmo, hōminis, *m. human being*
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*
 lēo, lēonis, *m. lion*
 longitudo, -tudinis, *f. length*
 longus, -a, -um, *long*
 mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 multitudo, -tudinis, *f. multitude*
 multus, -a, -um, *many, much*
 pāpilio, pāpilōnis, *m. butterfly*
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
 princeps, principis, *m. chief*
 terra, -ae, *f. land*
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*
 virgo, virginis, *f. maiden*
 vivit, -unt, *v. (he) lives, (they) live*

EXERCISE XVIII.

āmīcus, -i, *m. friend*
 amor, amoris, *m. love*
 anser, ansēris, *m. goose*
 arbor, arbōris, *f. tree*
 causa, -ae, *f. cause*
 cinis, cinēris, *m. ashes*
 clamor, clamōris, *m. clamour*
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, renowned*
 cōlor, cōlōris, *m. colour*
 consul, consūlis, *m. consul*
 flōs, flōris, *m. flower*
 frāter, -tris, *m. brother*
 frīgīdus, -a, -um, *cold* [abl.
 injucundus, -a, -um, *disagree-*
 jussum, -i, *n. command*
 māter, māttris, *f. mother*
 oculus, -i, *m. eye*
 pāter, patris, *m. father*
 paucus, -a, -um, *(mostly pl.) few*
 sēpulerum, -i, *n. sepulchre*
 timor, timōris, *m. fear*
 vōx, vōcis, *f. voice*

EXERCISE XIX.

căput, căpitis, *n.* head
 carmen, carminis, *n.* poem, song
 cibus, -i, *m.* food
 corpus, corpōris, *n.* body
 Dēus, -i, *m.* God
 doctrīna, -ae, *f.* learning
 factum, -i, *n.* deed
 frutex, fruticis, *m.* shrub
 fulmen, fulminis, *n.* lightning
 (that strikes)
 jūis, jūris, *n.* right or law
 longus, -a, -um, long [chant
 mercātor, mercatōris, *m.* mer-
 nomen, nōminis, *n.* name
 mens, mentis, *f.* mind, under-
 standing
 ōpus, ōpēris, *n.* work
 pōeta, -ae, *m.* poet
 scēlus, scēleris, *n.* crime
 sidus, sidēris, *n.* star
 verber, verbēris, *n.* lash, stripe
 -quē, *conj.* and
 ērat, *v.* (he) was; there (was)
 ērant, *v.* (they) were; (there) were

EXERCISE XX.

ānimal, ānimalis, *n.* animal
 āvidus, -a, -um, greedy
 aurēus, -a, -um, golden
 Brītanus, -i, *m.* adj. used as
 noun, a Briton
 calcar, calcāris, *n.* spur
 certāmen, certāminis, *n.* contest,
 strife
 cīvis, cīvis, *m.* citizen
 civitas, civitātis, *f.* state,
 country, citizenship
 crēber, -bra, -brum, repeated,
 frequent
 dēcus, dēcōris, *n.* honour
 exitiūm, -i, *n.* destruction
 ferrum, -i, *n.* iron, sword [rage
 fūr, fūrōris, *m.* madness,

gens, gentis, *f.* nation
 gēnus, gēneris, *n.* kind, race
 hostis, hostis, *m.* enemy; oft.
 pl. in Lat. where Eng. is
 sing.; hostiūm castra, the
 camp of the enemy
 ignāvus, -a, -um, slothful
 ignis, ignis, *abl.*, -i, *m.* fire
 imber, imbris, *abl.*, -i, *m.* shower
 māre, māris, *n.* sea
 nāvis, nāvis, *f.* ship
 notūs, -a, -um, known
 nūbēs, nūbis, *f.* cloud
 ōs, ōris, *n.* mouth, countenance
 ōs, ossis, *n.* bone
 pastor, pastōris, *m.* shepherd
 rāpidus, -a, -um, rapid
 rōbur, robōris, *n.* strength
 saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce
 tempestās, -tātis, *f.* tempest
 tōtus, -a, -um, whole
 urbs, urbis, *f.* city
 nēque . . . nēque, *conj.* neither
 . . . nor
 saepē, *adv.* often
 consūmit, *v.* (he) consumes

EXERCISE XXI.

ācer, *m.* ācris, *f.* ācre, *n.* keen
 ānīmus, -i, *m.* mind
 audāx, *gen.* audācis, bold
 cēlēr, *m.* cēlēris, *f.* celērē, *n.*
 swift
 consiliūm, -i, *n.* plan [gent
 diligens, *gen.* diligēntis, dili-
 divēs, *gen.* divītis, rich
 dulcis, *m.* & *f.* dulce, *n.* sweet
 ēquester, *m.* -tris, *f.* -tre, *n.*
 equestrian
 fērāx, *gen.* ferācis, fruitful
 fēlix, *gen.* fēlicis, happy
 fortis, *m.* & *f.*, forte, *n.* brave
 infēlix, *gen.* infēlicis, unhappy
 insignis, *m.* & *f.* insigne, *n.*
 distinguished, illustrious

lāhor, lāhōris, *m.* labour
 laetitia, -ae, *f.* joy
 laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*
 melior, *m.* & *f.* melius, *n.* better
 mors, mortis, *f.* death
 prudens, *gen.* prudentis, *prudent*
 saluber, *m.* -bris, *f.* -lre, *n.*
healthful

sāpiens, *gen.* sāpientis, *wise*
 seditio, seditiōnis, *f.* sedition
 tergum, -i, *n.* back
 tristis, *m.* & *f.* triste, *n.* sail
 tristior, *m.* & *f.* tristius, *n.*
sadder
 verber, -uris, *n.* lash, stripe
 vestis, -is, *f.* garment
 vita, -ae, *f.* life

EXERCISE XXII.

almus, -a, -um, *loving*
 ātrōx, *gen.* ātrōcis, *stern, gloomy*
 āter, -tra, -trum, *dark, black*
 bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*
 brevis, *m.* & *f.* breve, *n.* short
 cohors, cohortis, *f.* a cohort, the
tenth part of a Roman legion
 fama, -ae, *f.* reputation, fame
 fēritās, fēritātis, *f.* savageness
 hasta, -ae, *f.* spear
 infirmus, -a, -um, *weak*
 inhonestus, -a, -um, *dishonour-*
able
 iracundus, -a, -um, *angry*
 omnis, *m.* & *f.* omne, *n.* all, the
whole
 poenitentia, -ae, *f.* penitence
 primus, -a, -um, *first*
 tēnex, tēnis, *m.* old man
 tener, -era, -erum, *tender*
 turpis, *m.* & *f.* turpe, *n.* dis-
graceful, base
 vetus, *gen.* vētēris, *old*

vinum, -i, *n.* wine
 virtus, virtutis, *f.* virtue
 vitium, -i, *n.* vice
 quem, *pron. acc. m.* whom?
 quis, *pron. nom. m.* who?

EXERCISE XXIII.

nece, -as, *f.* necesse¹
 adversus, -a -um, *adverse*
 areus, -as, *bow*
 auditus, -as, *hearing*
 Caesar, -aris, *m.* Caesar
 cervus, -i, *m.* stag
 copia, -ae, *f.* plenty
 cornu, -as, *n.* horn
 cursus, -as, *m.* running, course
 digitus, -i, *m.* finger [*ferent*
 diversus, -a, -um, *diverſe, dis-*
ſtans, -a, -um, *hard*
 fructus, -as, *m.* fruit
 frumentum, *n.* corn
 gelu, -as, *n.* frost
 genu, -as, *n.* knee
 glans, glandis, *f.* acorn
 mulier, mulieris, *f.* woman
 myrtus, -i or -as, *f.* myrtle
 perniciosus, -a, -um, *destructive*
 pinus, -as, or -i, *f.* pine-tree
 plebs, plebis, *f.* the common
people
 portus, -as, *m.* harbour
 querens, -as, *f.* oak
 ramus, -i, *m.* branch
 Romanus, -a, -um, *Roman*
 sagitta, -ae, *f.* arrow [*peron*
 secundus, -a, -um, *second, pro-*
ſiſter, -tra, -trum, *left*
 Scythia, -ae, *m.* a Scythian
 sollertia, -ae, *f.* skill, subtlety
 taurus, -i, *m.* bull
 tribus, -as, *f.* tribe

¹ For the future, the quantity of the Nom. of the Fourth Decl. will not be marked. The pupil must bear in mind that the Nom. Sing. of the Fourth Decl. is to be pronounced short, diff. from the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Acc. Pl. which are long.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*
 ūtilis, *m. & f. ūtile, n. useful*
 ūtilitās, ūtilitātis, *f. utility*
 vĕnātor, vĕnātōris, *m. hunter*
 ventus, -i, *m. wind*
 vĭsus, -ūs, *sight*
 vulpēs, vulpis, *f. fox*
 dātur (*not dātur*) *v. is given*
 āgīt, *v. drives*
 cōmpārat (-ant), *v. obtains (-ain)*
 expectat, (-ant), *v. awaits (-ait)*
 intellĕgit, *v. understands*
 vītāt, (-ant) *v. avoids (-oid)*
 vulnĕrat (-ant), *v. wounds (-nd)*
 nāvēs longae, *long ships, i.e. ships of war*

EXERCISE XXIV.

āciēs, -īei, *f. line (of battle)*
 āpricus, -a, -um, *sunny*
 cālor, calōris, *m. heat*
 densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*
 diēs, diēi, *f. day*
 dōlor, dolōris, *m. grief*
 exercĭtus, -ūs, *m. army*
 faciēs, -īei, *f. face*
 flumen, -inis, *n. river*
 fūga, -ae, *f. flight*
 glāciēs, -īei, *f. ice*
 inīmĭcus, -a, -um, *hostile*
 lūx, lūcis, *f. light*
 mōra, -ae, *f. delay*
 mĕridiēs, -īei, *f. mid-day*
 nōvus, -a, -um, *new*
 nūmĕrus, -i, *m. number*
 pars, partis, *f. part*
 plānitiēs, -īei, *f. level ground*
 rēs, rei, *f. thing; rēs adversae, adverse things, i.e. adversity; rēs sĕcundae, prosperity*
 sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*
 spēs, -ei, *f. hope*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*
 tĕnuis, *m. & f. tenue, n. thin*
 āgītur, *v. (he) is (being) driven*
 interdum, *adv. sometimes*
 tam, *adv. so*

EXERCISE XXV.¹

āmĭcĭtiā, -ae, *f. friendship*
 āsĭnus, *m. ass*
 asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *rough, rugged*
 āvis, *f. bird*
 brāchium, -i, *n. arm*
 campus, -i, *m. a plain*
 cānis, -is, *m. dog*
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
 difficĭlis, -e, *difficult*
 discĭpulus, -i, *m. pupil*
 dissĭmĭlis, -e, *unlike*
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*
 grācĭlis, -e, *slender*
 hūmĭlis, -e, *low, low-minded*
 ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n. journey*
 nĭhĭl, *indecl. n. nothing*
 pātriā, -ae, *f. native land*
 praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*
 prōcĕrus, -a, -um, *tall*
 rĕgiō, -iōnis, *region, district*
 sāgax, sāgācis, *sagacious*
 similis, -e, *like*
 sōror, ōris, *sister*
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow*
 testūdo, -inis, *f. tortoise*
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*
 uxor, ōris, *f. wife*
 vallis, -is, *f. valley*
 vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift*
 virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valour*
 autem, *conj. in the second place, however, but, (never comes after a stop)*
 māgis, *adv. more*

¹ The pupil must not expect to find the Comparative or Superlative forms of Adjectives in this Vocabulary. In looking out the meaning of hūmĭlior, for example, he will only find hūmĭlis, the Positive

quam, *conj. than*
 quidē, *conj. in the first place,*
indeed
 complet, *v. fills*
 dūcit, *v. leads*

EXERCISE XXVI.¹

Alexander, -āri, *m. Alexander*
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*
 bēnēvolus, -a, -um, *well-wishing,*
benvolent
 castra, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*
 cōfio, -fōnis, *f. speech*
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*
 maxime, *adv. very greatly, most*
 mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*
 nātus, -us, *m. (used only in*
Abl. nātū, by birth)
 pius, -a, -um, *dutiful*
 praestans, -antis, *excellent*
 ratio, -fōnis, *f. reason*
 rēvērētia, -ae, *f. reverence*
 Socrātes, -is, *m. Socrates*
 tempus, -oris, *n. time*
 Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*
 quid, *pron. (nom. and acc.) n.*
what?

EXERCISE XXVII.

antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*
 centūria, -ae, *f. century*²
 centurio, -fōnis, *m. a centurion*
 cerasum, -i, *n. cherry*
 Decēber, *gen. -bris, adj. of*
December
 Germānus, -a, -um, *German*
 Jānuārius, -a, -um, *adj.*
January
 iuvēnis, -is, *m. young man*
 lēgio, -fōnis, *f. legion*

manipulus, -i, *m. manipule*²
 Martius, -is, -ium, *of March*
 mensis, -is, *m. month*
 nux, nucis, *f. nut*
 ovum, -i, *n. egg*
 patrimonium, *n. patrimony*
 pauper, -ēris, *poor*
 primum, -i, *n. first*
 Septēber, *gen. -bris, adj. of*
September
 tribunus, -i, *m. tribune*
 nunc, *adv. now*
 quondam, *adv. formerly, once*
 tūm, *adv. then, during that*
period
 tunc, *adv. then, at that moment*
 castigatur *v. (he) is chastised*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

armentum, -i, *n. herd*
 avarus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 carus, -a, -um, *dear*
 corona, -ae, *f. crown*
 ensis, -is, *m. sword*
 laus, laudis, *f. praise*
 malum, -i, *n. evil*
 mores, mōrum, *m. pl. conduct*
 mos, mōris, *m. custom*
 nemo, *gen. nullius, dat. nōmīni.*
acc. nēmīnem, abl. nullo, no
one
 scutum, -i, *n. shield*
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many*
 uterque, utraque, utrumque,
adj. either, both
 valde, *adv. strongly, exceed-*
ingly
 voluptas, -tatis, *f. pleasure*
 clamant, *v. (they) cry out*
 vitare, *v. to avoid*

¹ The irregular Comparatives and Superlatives given in the text are intended to be learned there, and are consequently not repeated here.

² These terms are explained in a sentence of Exercise XXVII.

EXERCISES XXIX. AND XXX.

āliēnus, -a, -um, *another's*
 crudēlis, *m. & f. -e, n. cruel*
 ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant*
 immēmōr, *gen. -ōris, adj. un-*
mindful
 mēmōr, *gen. -ōris, mindful*
 -nē? *enclitic, asks a question*
(emphasizing the word to
which it is attached)
 nōnnē, *interrog. adv. (expects*
the answer 'Yes')
 num? *interrog. adv. (expects*
the answer 'No')
 porcūs, -i, *m. pig*
 sēd, *conj. but (on the other*
hand); but yet; but still
 tālis, -e, *adj. such*
 cūrat, *v. (he) takes-care-of*

EXERCISES XXXI. AND XXXII.

Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 finītīmus, -a, -um, *bordering on*
 fons, fontis, *m. fountain, source*
 Gallus, -i, *a Gaul*
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*
 hūc, *adv. hither*
 indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*
 jūre, *rightly, see Par. 38*
 maximē, *adv. very greatly, espe-*
cially, most of all
 mīserīcordīa, -ae, *f. pity*
 nīmīs, *adv. too much*
 nōmen, -īnis, *n. name*
 pārīter, *adv. equally*
 pārens, -rentis, *c. parent*
 patriā, -ae, *f. native land*

poena, -ae, *f. (mostly pl.) penalty*
 prāvus, -a, -um, *depraved*
 proxīmus, *see Par. 69*
 semper, *adv. always*
 sūi, -ōrum, *m. pl. (adj. used as*
noun) his (own) men
 vestis, -is, *f. garment*
 Virgīlius, -i, *(more correctly*
Vergīlius) m. Virgil
 vītīōsus, -a, -um, *full-of-vice*
 errat, *v. (he) errs*
 gustat, *v. (he) tastes*
 intrat, *v. (he) enters*
 laedit, *v. (he) hurts*
 sērit, *v. (he) sows, plants*
 do poenas, *I pay the penalty*

EXERCISE XXXIII.¹

[The Conjugation of a Verb is denoted by the figure placed after it.]

Castīgo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *punish*
chastise
 culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give*
 deo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *presen.*
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *excellent*
 ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *im-*
prove
 erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err*
 īnīmicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*
 laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*
 monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *shew,*
point out
 optimus, -a, -um, *very good*
 rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask*
 saepe, *adv. often*
 sī, *conj. if*
 Tullia, -iae, *f. Tullia*
 vītūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *revile*

¹ Henceforth words must be looked out in the Vocabularies, pp. 248-327.

² This Verb is irregular.

APPENDIX X.

VOCABULARY—I.

LATIN INTO ENGLISH.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	=	ablative	<i>indef.</i>	=	indefinite
<i>acc.</i>	=	accusative	<i>interj.</i>	=	interjection
<i>adj.</i>	=	adjective	<i>inter.</i>	=	interrogative
<i>adv.</i>	=	adverb	<i>m.</i>	=	masculine
<i>c.</i>	=	common gender	<i>n.</i>	=	neuter
<i>comp.</i>	=	comparative	<i>num.</i>	=	numeral
<i>conj.</i>	=	conjunction	<i>p.</i>	=	page
<i>dat.</i>	=	dative	<i>part.</i>	=	participle
<i>def.</i>	=	defective	<i>pass.</i>	=	passive
<i>dep.</i>	=	deponent	<i>pl.</i>	=	plural
<i>f.</i>	=	feminine	<i>prep.</i>	=	preposition
<i>g. gen., dat.,</i>	}	governs the gen., dat., abl., &c.	<i>pron.</i>	=	pronoun
<i>abl., &c.</i>			<i>rel.</i>	=	relative
<i>gen.</i>	=	genitive	<i>sing.</i>	=	singular
<i>impers.</i>	=	impersonal verb	<i>sup.</i>	=	superlative
<i>indec.</i>	=	indeclinable	<i>v.</i>	=	verb.

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the Conjugation of a Verb.

<i>Ab</i> (<i>ā</i> , <i>abs</i>), <i>prep.</i> with <i>abl.</i> from, by	<i>am</i> almost perishing, Par. 195 ;
<i>ābēo</i> , - <i>ī</i> or - <i>īvi</i> , - <i>īvī</i> , - <i>īvī</i> , 4, to go away	<i>ābest</i> quinquē milia passūm, <i>he</i> <i>is five miles off</i> ; <i>prōpū ābest</i> ā
<i>ābhīno</i> , <i>adv.</i> (216) (313) ago (with <i>acc.</i> or <i>abl.</i>)	<i>nōbīs</i> , <i>he is close to us</i> [the forms
<i>abjicio</i> , - <i>jēci</i> , - <i>jectum</i> , 3, cast away	<i>abfui</i> , <i>abfūtūrus</i> , &c., for <i>āfui</i> , <i>āfūtūrus</i> , &c., are incorrect]
<i>absens</i> , - <i>entis</i> , absent	<i>absumo</i> , - <i>mpsi</i> , - <i>imptum</i> , 3, consume. destroy
<i>abstūli</i> , see <i>aufēro</i>	<i>absurdus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> , <i>adj.</i> absurd
<i>absum</i> , <i>afui</i> , <i>abesse</i> , <i>I am absent</i> ;	<i>ābundo</i> , - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātum</i> , 1, abound
<i>minimū ābest</i> quīn pēream, <i>I</i>	<i>ābutor</i> , - <i>ūsus</i> , 3, <i>v. dep.</i> rise up, &c.

ac, a form of atque
 accēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, approach
 accīdo, -īdi (no sup.) 3, n. v. to
 happen (of ill fortune) [take
 accīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, receive,
 accumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, re-
 clinc (at dinner)
 accurro, -cūcurri & -curri, -cursum,
 3, run up, or towards
 accūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, accuse (g.
 gen. of the charge)
 ācer, -cris, -cre, keen, sharp, active
 ācerbus, -a, -um, bitter, painful
 Āchillēs, -is, m. Achilles
 ācies, -iēi, f. line (of battle)
 ācūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, I sharpen
 ācus, -ūs, f. needle
 ācūtus, -a, -um, sharp
 ād, prep. (g. acc.) to, at, near,
 towards, for (185, 186).
 ādāmāntīnus, -a, -um, adamantine
 ādēo, adv. so, to such an extent
 ādēo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, go to, come
 to, visit, consult (g. acc.)
 ādeptus, see ādīpiscor
 ādhībēo, -ui, -ītum, 2, apply
 ādhūc, adv. as yet
 ādīpiscor, -eptus, 3, acquire, obtain
 adjūmentum, -i, n. assistance
 adjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, 1, assist
 admīrōr, -ātus, 1, wonder at, admire
 admitto, -misi, -misum, 3, to ad-
 mit; admisit in se (acc.) scelus,
 he gave crime entrance into him-
 self, i.e. committed a crime
 admōneo, -ui, -ītum, 2, warn; re-
 mind, (eum eius rei)
 ādōlescens, see ādūlescens
 adsum, affui, ādesse, I am present,
 stand by, side with
 ādulātio, -iōnis, f. flattery
 ādulātor, -ōris, m. flatterer
 ādūlescens, -ntis, m. young man
 advēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, arrive
 adventus, -ūs, m. arrival
 adversus, -a, -um, adverse; res
 adversae, adversity

adversūs or -um, prep. (g. acc.) to-
 wards, against
 aedēs, -is, f. sing. temple; pl. house
 aedificiū, -ii, n. building
 aedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, build
 Aedui, -ōrum, m. pl. the Aedui, a
 Gallie tribe
 aeger, -gra, -grum, sick; aegrē
 fēro hoc, I bear this ill, i.e. I
 resent this
 Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt [just
 aequus, -a, -um, adj. level, even,
 āēr, āēris, m. the air
 aes, aeris, n. brass, money; aes
 āliēnum, debt
 aestas, -ātis, f. summer
 aestimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I value;
 with magni, pluris, &c. (283)
 aetas, -ātis, f. age, time of life
 aeternus, -a, -um, adj. eternal
 aether, -ēris, m. the upper air,
 heaven
 affēro, attūli, allātum, afferrē, I
 bring to, cause; (impers.) allatum
 est, word was brought
 afficio, -feci, fectum, 3, treat; aff.
 te hōnōre, voluptāte, supplicio,
 mētū, I treat you with honour,
 pleasure, &c., i.e. I honour you,
 cause you pleasure, visit you with
 punishment, &c.
 affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, assert
 affligo, -ixi, -ictum, 3, I cast down,
 prostrate
 Africa, -ae, f. Africa
 āger, -gri, m. field, lands
 agger, -ēris, m. a mound
 agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, recognize
 āgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3, drive, lead,
 act, do; id āgo ut, I am doing
 my best to; grātiās āgēre, to re-
 turn thanks; causam a., plead
 a cause; vītā a., lead a life;
 nihil a., do nothing; actum est
 de nōbīs, it is all over with us;
 hōc āgitur, this is being done, i.e.
 this is the point, or question

agricōla, -ae, *m.* husbandman
 uīo, *v. def.* say, see p. 215; nt aiunt,
 as they say, i.e. as the proverb
 goes

ala, -ae, *f.* wing

Albānus, -a, -um, *Alban*

albus, -a, -um, *white*

Alcibiādes, -is, *m.* Alcibiades

Ālexander, -dri, *m.* Alexander (the
 Great) [time

ālis, *adv.* at one time, at another

ālībi, *adv.* at one place, at another
 place; alii a. stant, some stand
 in one place, others in another

aliēnus, -a, -um, *another's*; āliēna
 sūis antēpōnit, he places the in-
 terests of others above his own;
 aes āliēnum, *debt*; in nerō āliēno
 esse, to be in debt [place

ālīo, *adv.* to one place, to another

ālīquando, *adv.* sometimes, at some
 time or other

ālīquis, -quae, -quid, *pron.* some one,
 something, *decl.* like quis

ālīquo, *adv.* somewhat; ālīquo
 terrārum, (*part. gen.*) to some
 place in the world

ālīter, *adv.* otherwise, differently

ālīus, -a, -ud, *irr. adj.* one of any
 number, one another. See Par. 86

allātum, see affero

allīcīo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *allure*

Allōbrōges, -um, *m.* the Allobroges

allōquor, -lōcūtus, 3, *dep.* speak to,
accost (*g. acc.*)

alms, -a, -um, *loving*

ālō, alūi, altum, 3, *nourish, rear*

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* the Alps.

alter, -tēra, -tērum, (*gen.* -erius,
dat. -eri), one of two, second, the
 other; unus et a. one or two;
 vicēsīmus a., *twenty-first*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

āmābīlis, -e, *adj.* lovely [Par. 288

āmāns, -ntis, *adj.* loving, (*g. gen.*

āmārus, -a, -um, *bitter*

ambo, -ae, -o, *both.* See Par. 77

ambūlo, -āvi, -ātum, *I walk*

āmens, -ntis, *senseless, mad*

amīcīo, -īcūi or -īxi, -ictum, 4,
cover, clothe

āmīcīlia, -ae, *f.* friendship

āmīcus, -i, *m.* friend

āmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *love*

āmor, -ōris, *m.* love

āmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *lose*

amnis, -is, *m.* river

ān, or (in *dep. quest.*, see Par. 171);
 (also in *direct quest.*, an alterna-
 tive being understood), An nō
 prōdēs? i.e. (you will be faith-
 ful, will you not?) Or will you
 actually betray us? (171, 302)

Angli, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Englishmen

anguis, -is, *m.* snake

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* narrow

ānimāvertō, -i, -sum, 3, *observe*

ānimāl, -ālis, *n.* animal.

ānimus, -i, *m.* mind, soul, courage

annōn, see Par. 172

annus, -i, *m.* year [investigate

anquīro, -quīsi, -quīsitum, 3, in-
 anser, -seris, *m.* goose

antē, *prep. (g. acc.) before*, (183);
adv. paucis ante annis, a few
 years before; N.B.—distinguish

the *prep.* from the *conj.* ante...
 quam, or antequam; antea, *adv.*

before those things, beforehand

antēpōno, -pōsi, -pōsitum, 3,
prefer (*g. acc. and dat.*) (192)

antēquam, *conj.* before, until

Anthrōpophāgi, -ōrum, *m. pl.* man-
 eaters, cannibals

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*

anūlus (not annūlus), -i, *m.* ring

ānūs, -ūs, *f.* old woman

aper, -pri, *m.* wild boar

āpērio, āpērii, āpertum, 4, *open*

āpertus, -a, -um, *open, clear*

Āpollo, -īnis, *m.* Apollo

appollo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *call*

apricus, -a, -um, *sunny*

āpūd, *prep. g. acc.* See Par. 183

aptus, -a, -um, *fit*
 aqua, -ae, *f. water*
 aquila, -ae, *f. an eagle*
 arbiter, -tri, *m. umpire*
 arbitor, -atus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *consider, judge*
 arbor, -oris, *f. tree*
 Archimēdes, -is, *m. Archimedes*
 arcī, *see arx*
 arcus, -ūs, *m. bow*
 ardēo, arsi, -sum, 2, *v. intr., I burn, am on fire*
 arduus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, steep, difficult*
 argenteus, -a, -um, *silver*
 argentam, -i, *n. silver; money*
 Ariovistus, -i, *m. Ariovistus*
 arma, -rum, *n. pl. arms*
 Armēnia, -ae, *f. Armenia*
 armentum, -i, *n. herd*
 armo, -avi, -atum, 1, *arm, equip*
 āro, -avi, -atum, 1, *plough*
 Arpinum, -i, *n. Arpinum, the birth-place of Cicero*
 ars, artis, *f. art, handicraft*
 arvum, -i, *n. corn-field*
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*
 as, assis, *m. the smallest Roman coin; it may be translated a farthing (used in the genit. of indef. price; see Eo. LXXX.)*
 Asia, -ae, *f. Asia (mostly Ἀ)*
 assinus, -i, *m. ass*
 asper, -era, -erum, *rough, rugged*
 aspernor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. reject, despise*
 aspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look at*
 assequor, -secutus, 3, *attain*
 at, *conj. but (more abrupt than sed)*
 ater, atra, atrum, *black, gloomy*
 Athēnae, -arum, *f. pl. Athens*
 Athēniēnsis, -o, *Athenian*
 atque (or ac, but not before vowels), *conj. and further, and; often used to couple words of similar meaning, e.g. socii atque amici, honestissimus atque ornâtissimus*

atrox, -ocis, *stern, gloomy*
 auctor, -oris, *m. adviser, author;*
 Tullio auctore, *at the advice of Tullius (197)*
 auctoritās, -ātis, *f. authority*
 auctumnus, -i, *m. autumn*
 audacter, *adv. boldly, daringly*
 audāx, -ācis, *bold*
 audēo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, *to dare, venture*
 audio, -ivi, -itum, 4, *hear*
 auditus, -us, *m. hearing*
 aufero, abstuli, ablātum auferre, *I carry away, take away*
 augeo, auxi, auctum, 2, *augment*
 Augustus, -i, *m. Augustus, the first emperor of Rome*
 aurēus, -a, -um, *golden*
 auriga, -ae, *m. charioteer*
 auris, -is, *f. an ear*
 aurum, -i, *n. gold*
 ausus, *see audeo*
 Auster, -tri, *m. South wind [173]*
 aut...aut, *either...or else (157a, autem, conj. but, in the second place (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs); see quidem (67))*
 auxilium, -i, *n. help, aid*
 avārus, -a, -um, *avaricious, greedy*
 avidus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 avis, -is, *f. bird*
 avus, -i, *m. a grandfather*
 Bābylōn, -onis, *f. Babylon*
 balæna, -ae, *f. a whale*
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*
 barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*
 beatē, *adv. happily*
 beatus, -a -um, *adj. happy*
 Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj. warlike*
 bello, -avi, -atum, 1, *I wage war*
 bellum, -i, *n. war*
 hēlūs, -ae, *f. a great beast*
 bēnē, *adv. well*
 bēnēficiū, -i, *n. benefit*

bēnēficus, -a, -um, *beneficent*
 bēnēvolentia, -ae, *f. benevolence*
 bēnēvōlus, -a, -um, *well-wishing,*
benevolent. See Par. 68a

bēnignē, *adv. kindly*
 bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*
 bestia, -ae, *f. a beast; damnari ad*
bestias, to be condemned to be ex-
posed to the beasts (in the amphi-
theatre)

bībo, bībi, bībītum, 3, *I drink*
 Bībūlus, -i, *m. Bibulus*
 bīdūm, -i, *n. two days; bīdūi*
iter, two days' journey

bionnium, -i, *n. two years*
 binī, -no, -a, *two apiece (314)*

bis, *adv. twice*
 blandior, -itus, *with dat. 4, v. dep.*
I flatter, ieu upon

bōna, -arum, *n. pl. goods, blessings*
 bōnus, -a, -um, *adj. good [311]*
 bōs, bōvis, *c. ox, cow, see Par.*
 braccium, -i, *n. arm*
 brēvis, -e, *short, brief*
 Brītanīa, -ae, *f. Britain*
 Brītanūs, -i, *m. a Briton*
 Brūtus, -i, *m. Brutus*
 būbus, *see būs*

Cādāvēr, -ēris, *n. corpse*
 cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, 3, *I fall; N.B.*
distinguish this from cēcīdi

caecus, -a, -um, *adj. blind*
 caedēs, -is, *f. slaughter*
 caedo, cecīdī, cecsum, 3, *strike, cut*
down, slay; N.B. distinguish
this from cēcīdi

caelestis, -e, *celestial*
 caelicolae, -arum, *m. pl. lit. heaven-*
dwellers, i.e. gods

caelum, -i, *n. heaven*
 Caesar, -āris, *m. Caesar*
 cālāmītas, -ātis, *f. calamity*
 calcār, -āris, *n. spur*
 cālīx, -īcis, *m. cup*
 cālor, -ōris, *m. heat*
 Cāmillus, -i, *m. Camillus*

Campānīa, -ae, *f. Campania*
 campus, -i, *m. plain*
 cancer, -eri, *m. crab*
 cānis, -is, *c. dog*

Cannae, -arum, *f. pl. Cannae, a*
village where Hannibal defeated
the Romans

cāno, cēcīni, cantum, 3, *sing; tūbā*
cēcīnit, the trumpet sounded

canto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *I sing*

cantus, -us, *m. song*

cāper, -pri, *m. goat*

cāpillus, -i, *m. hair (pl. once in*
Cicero, but in poetry often)

cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3, *take [ire*
captivus (or captus) -a, -um, capt-

Cāpūa, -ae, *f. Capua, the most*
luxurious city in Italy

cāpūt, -ītis, *n. head; gentis cāput,*
the capital city of the nation;

cāpīte multo, *I punish with*
death; cāpītis damno, I con-

demn to death (Ex. LXXX)

carcer, -ēris, *m. prison*

cardo, -īnis, *m. hinge*

cāreo, -ui, 2, *I am without (g. abl.);*
fīcīle c. vīno, I easily do with-
out wine

carmēn, -īnis, *n. song*

cāro, carnis, *f. flesh [ginian*

Carthāgīniēsis, -e, *adj. Cartha-*

Carthāgo, īnis, *f. Carthage*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*

cāsa, -ae, *f. cottage*

cāsēus, -i, *m. cheese*

castīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *chastise*
punish

castrā, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*

cāsus, -us, *m. chance, accident;*
diversis cāsibus, with varied for-

tures

cātēna, -ae, *f. chain*

Cātīlīna, -ae, *m. Catiline*

Cāto, -ōnis, *m. Cato*

causa, -ae, *f. cause; audiendi*
causā, for the sake of hearing;

causam ēgit, he pleaded a cause

cāvēo, cāvi, cautum, 2, *be ware, beware of (g. acc.)*; cāvē nū fūcias, *take care not to do*; cūv-bātur, *precautions were taken*
 cēcidi, sec cūdo and cecido
 cēdo, cēssi, cessum, 3, *yield*; c. tibi, *I yield to you*; c. hōiē or ex hōiē, *I retire from the battle*
 cēlor, -ēris, -ēro, *swift*; cēlērīter, *adv. swiftly* (61)
 cēlērītās, -tātis, *f. speed*
 cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *conceal, (g. two acc.)*. See Par. 312
 cēlsus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, tall*
 cēna, -ae, *f. dinner*; cēno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dine (perf. also cēnātus sum)*; cenātus, *having dined*
 centum, *see Par. 81*
 centūria, -ae, *f. a (military) century* (see Ex. XXVII., sent. 8)
 centūrīo, -iōnis, *m. centurion (the officer of a century)*
 cērāsum, -i, *n. cherry*
 cērāsus, -i, *f. the cherry-tree*
 cērobrum, -i, *n. brain*
 Cērēs, Cērēris, *f. Ceres*
 certāmen, -inīs, *n. contest, strife*; in-certāmen hōnōris vōnērunt, *they entered into a competition for distinction*
 cerno, 3, *I see, discern*
 certus, -a, -um, *adj. certain*; certī-orem to fēcī, *I informed you (foll. by Gen., or Object Infinitive)*; *fixed*, certum ōpus, *a fixed task*
 cervus, -i, *m. stag*
 [cēter], -ēra, -ērum, *adj. the rest, the rest of (see Eng. Latin Vocab., of)*; pl. cēlēri, *the others*
 cibus, -i, *m. food*
 Cīcēro, -ōnis, *m. Cicero*
 cinis, cinēris, *m. ashes*
 cingo, -nxi, -notum, 3, *I surround*
 circā, circum, *prep. (g. acc.) around*
 circūter, *prep. with acc. about*
 circumdo, -dāre, -dēdi, dātum, 1,

(1) *to put round (acc. and dat.)*;
 (2) *to surround (acc. and abl.)*
 circumspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look round*
 circumsto, -stēti, -stāre, *stand round*; (part. as noun) circum-stantes, -ium, *by-standers* [of
 cis, citrā, *prep. (g. acc.) on this side*
 Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine*
 cithāra, -ae, *f. lute* [quickly
 cito, *adv. quickly*; citius, *more*
 cīvīlis, -e, *adj. belonging to a citizen, civil*
 cīvis, -is, *m. citizen*
 cīvitas, -tātis, *f. state, citizen-ship*; dōnant eum cīvītātē, *they present him with the citizen-ship*
 clādēs, -is, *f. slaughter*
 clam, *adv. secretly*; *prep. (g. abl.) without the knowledge of*
 clāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry out, shout*
 clāmor, -ōris, *m. clamour, shout*
 claudo, -si, -snm, 3, *shut*
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, renowned*
 classis, -is, *f. a fleet*
 clēmenter, *adv. gently, mercifully*
 coactus, *see cūgo*
 coelestis, *see caelestis*
 coelum, *see caelum*
 coena, *see cēna*
 coeno, *see cēno*
 cōō, -īvi or -īi, itum, 4, *join together (v. intrans.)*
 cōorcō, -ūi, -itum, 2, *restrain*
 cōgīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think, meditate*
 cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, *learn, ascertain*
 cūgo, cōēgi, cūactum, 3 *compel*
 cūhōrs, -rtis, *f. cohort, a tenth part of the legion*
 cūhortor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. encourage*
 colligo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3, *collect*

contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) *contented* (278)
 continēo, -ūi, -entum, 2, *I hold together*
 contingo, -tīgi, 3, *be fall*; contigit mīhī, *it was my good luck*
 continūo, *adv. forthwith*; *N.B. not continually*
 contio, -iōnis, *f. speech, harangue*
 contrā, *prep. (g. acc.) against*
 contrāho, -axi, -actum, 3, *draw together*
 contrārius, a, -um, *contrary* (189)
 contūmēlia, -ae, *f. an insult*
 convalesco, -vālūi, 3, *recover from illness*
 convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I assemble*
 convertō, -verti, -versum, 3, *turn round*; conversus, *being turned i.e. turning (himself)*
 conviciūm, -i, *n. reviling, abuse*
 convoco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *call together*
 cōpia, -ae, *f. plenty*; cōpiaē, -ārum, *f. pl. forces*
 cōr, cordis, *n. the heart*
 cōram, *prep. (g. abl.) in presence of*
 Cōrinthus, -i, *f. Corinth*
 Cornēlia, -ae, *f. Cornelia*
 cornū, -ūs, *n. a horn*
 cōrōna, -ae, *f. a crown*
 corpus, -ōris, *n. body*
 corrigo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *correct*
 corripio, -rīpui; -reptum, 3, *snatch away*; morbo correptus est, *he was carried off by disease*
 cottidie, *see quōtidie*
 crās, *adv. to-morrow*
 Crassus, -i, *m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero*
 creātor, -ōris, *m. creator* [peated
 creber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, re-credibilis, -e, adj. credible* [dat.]
 crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *believe (g. creō, -āvi, -atum, 1, I create, make*
 Crēta, -ae, *f. Crete*

crīmen, -īnis, *n. charge, accusation*
 crīnis, -is, *m. hair*
 crūciātus, -ūs, *m. torture*
 crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*
 crūdēlitas, -ātis, *f. cruelty*
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
 culpa, -ae, *f. blame, fault*; *see extrā*
 culpo, -āvi, -atum, 1, *blame*
 culter, -tri, *m. knife*
 cum, *prep. (g. abl.) with*
 cum, (*sometimes wrongly spelt quum*) *conj. when*, (Par. 151) *since*; cum . . . tum *not only . . . but also*; *N.B. — cum is never interrogative: see quando*
 Cūmae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cumæ, (a city)*
 cunctor, -atus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*
 cunctus, -a, -um, *adj. all (together)*
 cūpiditas, -ātis, *f. desire, passion*
 cūpidus, -a, -um, *fond of (g. gen.)*
 cūpio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 3, *desire*
 cūr, *adv. why? (also conj. in dep. sent.)*; nōn est cūr timēas, *there is not (any reason) why you should fear*
 cūra, -ae, *f. care*
 cūro, -āvi, -atum, 1, *take care*; cūrā ut, or nē, ēās *take care to, or not to, go*
 curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3, *run*
 currus, -ūs, *n. chariot*
 cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*
 custodio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *guard*
 custos, custodis, *m. a guardian*
 Cyprus, -i, *f. Cyprus*

Damno, -āvi, -atum, 1, *condemn*
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*
 dē, *prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning*
 dea, -ae, *f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. deabus)* *see Par. 311*
 debēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *owe*; debui dāre, *I ought to have given* (223)
 debilis, -ē, *adj. feeble*
 decem, *see Par. 81*

contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) *contented* (278)
 continēo, -ūi, -entum, 2, *I hold together*
 contingo, -tigi, 3, *be fall*; contigit
 mīlī, *it was my good luck*
 continūo, *adv. forthwith*; *N.B. not continually*
 contio, -tōnis, *f. speech, harangue*
 contrā, *prep. (g. acc.) against*
 contrahio, -axi, -actum, 3, *draw together*
 contrārius, a, -um, *contrary* (189)
 contumēlia, -ae, *f. an insult*
 invālesco, -vālūi, 3, *recover from illness*
 convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I assemble*
 convertō, -verti, -versum, 3, *turn round*; conversus, *being turned i.e. turning (himself)*
 conviciūm, -i, *n. reviling, abuse*
 convoco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *call together*
 cūpia, -ae, *f. plenty*; cūplae, -ārum, *f. pl. forces*
 cōr, cordis, *n. the heart*
 cōram, *prep. (g. abl.) in presence of*
 Cōrīnthus, -i, *f. Corinth*
 Cornēlia, -ae, *f. Cornelia*
 cornū, -ūs, *n. a horn*
 cōrūna, -ae, *f. a crown*
 corpus, -ōris, *n. body*
 corrigo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *correct*
 corripio, -rīpui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away*; morbo correptus est, *he was carried off by disease*
 cottidie, *see quōtidie*
 crās, *adv. to-morrow*
 Crassus, -i, *m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero*
 crēator, -ōris, *m. creator* [*peated*]
 crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, re-*
 credibilis, -e, *adj. credible* [*dat.*]
 crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *believe (g. creō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I create, make*
 Crēta, -ae, *f. Crete*

crimen, -inis, *n. charge, accusation*
 crīvis, -is, *m. hair*
 crūciātus, -ūs, *m. torture*
 crudēlis, -e, *cruel*
 crudēlitas, -ātis, *f. cruelty*
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
 culpa, -ae, *f. blame, fault*; *see extra*
 culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*
 culter, -tri, *m. knife*
 cum, *prep. (g. abl.) with*
 cum, (*sometimes wrongly spelt quum*) *conj. when, (Par. 161) since*; cum . . . tum *not only . . . but also*; *N.B. — cum is never interrogative: see quando*
 Cūmae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cumae, (a city)*
 cunctor, -atus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*
 cunctus, -a, -um, *adj. all (together)*
 cūpiditas, -ātis, *f. desire, passion*
 cūpidus, -a, -um, *fond of (g. gen.)*
 cūpio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 3, *desire*
 cūr, *adv. why? (also conj. in dep. sent.)*; nōn est cūr timēas, *there is not (any reason) why you should fear*
 cūra, -ae, *f. care*
 cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *take care*; cūrū ut, or nē, cās *take care to, or not to, go*
 curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3, *run*
 currus, -ūs, *m. chariot*
 cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*
 custōdio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *guard*
 custos, custōdis, *m. a guardian*
 Cyprus, -i, *f. Cyprus*

Damno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *condemn*
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*
 dē, *prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning*
 dēa, -ae, *f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. dēabus) see Par. 311*
 debēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, *owe*; debui
 dāro, *I ought to have given* (223)
 debilis, -e, *adj. feeble*
 dēcem, *see Par. 81*

Dēcember, -bris, -bre, of *December*.

See Appendix VI., p. 229

dēcemvir, -virī, *m. decemvir, one of ten commissioners*

dēcēt, dēcūit, dēcērē, 2, *impers. v. it becomes, befits, Par. 220.*

dēcīmus, -a, -um, *Par. 81.*

dēcīpiō, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *I deceive*

dēcōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *honour, distinguish*

dēcus, -ōris, *n. ornament, honour, glory; Horace addresses his patron as "my guardian and glory (dēcus)"*

dēdēcēt, dēcūit, dēcērē, 2, *impers. v. it misbecomes*

dēdēcus, -ōris, *n. disgrace, baseness*

dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3, *defend*

dēfensor, -ōris, *a defender*

dēflāgro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to be burnt down*

dēfluō, -fluxi, 3, *flow down*

dēformis, -c, *ugly*

dējīcio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3, *cast down*

dēlecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *delight*

dēlectus, -ūs, *m. a levy* [out

dēlēō, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *destroy, blot*

dēlibēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *deliberate*

dēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, *choose*

Dēlōs, -i, *f. the isle of Delos, the seat of an oracle of Apollo*

Delphi, -ōrum, *m. pl. Delphi, the city containing the principal oracle of Apollo*

dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3, *subtract*

Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, *m. Demosthenes*

dēmum, *adv. indeed; id dēmum, that, and nothing else; tum dēmum, then, and not till then*

dēnārius, -ii, *m. a denarius, a Roman coin worth about 9d.*

dēnīquē (*adv.*) *finally, in short*

densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*

dens, -ntis, *m. tooth*

dēpello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *drive down*

dēplūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lament over, deplore*

dēposco, -poposci, 3, *demand*

dērīsīs, -īs, *m. laughing-stock*

descendo, -scendi, -scensum, 3, *come, or go, down*

deseisco, -scīvi, -scītum, 3, *revolt*

dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3, *I abandon*

dēsīdēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *long for (what is absent)*

dēsūm, -fui, -esse, (*dat.*) *be wanting to, fall short, fail*

dēlēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *reveal, disclose*

dētērrō, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *frighten*

dētēxo, -texīi, -textum, 3, *finish wearing, finish*

dētīnco, -ni, 2, *detain, keep back*

dētrāho, -traxi, -tractum, *take away, withdraw*

Dēus, -i, *m. God*

dēvinco, -vīci, -victum, 3, *subdue*

dextra, -ae, *f. right hand*

Diāna, -ae, *f. Diana*

dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *say, speak; dīcitur Tullius, &c., it is said that Tullius, &c. (Par 177)*

dīctīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *say often*

dictum, -i, *a saying*

dīes, -ēi, *m. (f. in poets) day*

diffīcīlis, -c, *difficult (60)* [trust

diffīdo, -fīsus sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *dis-*

diffīndo, -fīdi, -fissum, 3, *cleave asunder*

dīgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *arrange*

dīgītus, -i, *m. finger* [authority

dīgūitas, -ātis, *f. dignity, worth,*

dīgūus, -a, -um, *worthy (g. abl.)*

dīlābor, -lapsus, 3, *slip away in different directions*

dīlīgēns, -ntis, *adj. diligent, careful*

dīlīgēnter, *adv. carefully*

dīlīgēntia, -ae, *f. diligence*

dīlīgēntissimē, *adv. most carefully*

dīlīgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *love, esteem*

dīmīco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight (a battle)*

dīmīdium, -i, *n. half*
 dimitto, -isi, -issum, 3, *I let go, dismiss*
 Dīōnysius, -ii, *m. Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse*
 diripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, *plunder*
 discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *depart*
 disciplina, -ae, *f. discipline*
 discipulus, -i, *m. pupil*
 disco, didici, 3, *learn*
 discordia, -ae, *f. discord*
 displicēo, -ui, -itum, (*g. dat.*) 2, *displease*
 dispūto, -avi, -atum, 1, *discuss*
 dispūtatio, -ōnis, *f. discussion*
 dissimilis, -e, *adj. unlike; g. gen. or dat. (see Par. 66, 60)*
 distrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw asunder*
 distribuo, -ui, -itum, 3, *distribute*
 diū, *adv. long, for a long time*
 diūtius, *adv. longer*
 diversus, -a, -um, *diverse, different*
 dīvēs, -itīs, *rich* [*parate*
 dīvido, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3, *divide, se-*
 dīvinus, -a, -um, *divine*
 dīvitiae, -arum, *f. pl. riches*
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give; do litteras, I date a letter*
 docēo, -ui, -ctum, 2, *I teach (g. two acc.) See Par. 312*
 doctē, *adv. learnedly, skilfully*
 doctrīna, -ae, *f. learning*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 dōlēo, -ui, 2, *grieve*
 dōlor, -ōris, *m. pain, grief*
 dōlus, -i, *m. craft, treachery; per dolum, treacherously*
 dōmesticus, -a, -um, *domestic*
 dōmicilium, -ii, *n. an abode*
 dōmīna, -ae, *f. mistress*
 dōmīnātus, -ūs, *m. rule, sovereignty*
 dōmīnus, -i, *m. master, owner*
 dōmo, -ui, -itum, 1, *tame, subdue*
 dōmus, -i, *f. house, home; dōmi, at home; dōmum, homeward, Pars. 249, 265*

dōno, -avi, -ātum, 1, *present, g. acc. and dat. like do; or else acc. and abl.; dōno eum equo, I present him with a horse*
 dōnum, -i, *n. gift*
 dormio, -ivi or -iī, -itum, 4, *sleep*
 dorsum, -i, *n. back*
 dūbīto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *doubt*
 dūbīus, -a, -um, *adj. doubtful; nōn dūbīum est quīn, it is not doubtful that, i.e., there is no doubt that (foll. by Subjunct.)*
 dūcenti, -ae, -a, *see Par. 81 [(237)*
 dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *lead, marry*
 dulcis, -e, *sweet, delightful*
 dum, *conj. (Par. 272) while*
 dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*
 dux, dūcis, *c. leader. general*

Ē, ex, *prep. (g. abl.) out of, from; ex improbo, fīs improbiōr, from bad, you are becoming worse*
 ēbur, ēbūris, *n. ivory*
 eccē, *interjeet. lo! behold!*
 ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3, *eat*
 ēdūco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *educate*
 ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead out*
 effēro, extūli, ēlātum, efferrē, 3, *irr. v. I carry out*
 efflōresco, -flōrui, 3, *blossom*
 effōdio, -fōdi, -fossū, 3, *scoop out, strike out*
 effūgio, -fūgi, 3, *escape (g. acc.)*
 ēgēo, -ui, 2, *to need (g. abl.)*
 ēgo, *see Par. 90*
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *adj. excellent, eminent*
 eīsmōdi, *see mōdus*
 ējicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3, *east out*
 ēlēgans, -antis, *adj. elegant, exquisite*
 ēlēgantia, -ae, *f. tastefulness*
 ēlēphas, ēlēphantis, *m. (also ēlēphantus, -i, m.) elephant*
 ēlicio, -licui, -licitum, 3, *draw forth*
 ēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *choose*
 ēlōquens, -entis, *adj. eloquent*

elōquentia, -ae, *f. eloquence*
 ēmenlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *improve*
 emigro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I depart from*
 ēminus, *at a distance [military term opp. to cominus (cum, mānus), hand to hand]*
 ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, *I buy*
 enarro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I relate*
 enim, *conj. for (differs from nam in never standing first in a clause)*
 enītor, -īsus or -īsus, 3, *v. dep. strike hard*
 ensis, -is, *m. sword*
 eo, *adv. abl. of is, by so much; (with compar.) eo melius (by) so much the better; in eo (166)*
 ēo, īvi, ītum, īre, *go, Par. 241*
 epistōla, -ae, *f. letter, epistle (perhaps better, epistula)*
 Epāminondas, -ae, *m. Epaminondas, a Theban patriot and general*
 Ephēsus, -i, *f. Ephesus*
 ēquēs, -ītis, *m. horse soldier*
 ēquester, -tris, -e, *equestrian*
 equidem (Par. 139) *for my part*
 equito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ride*
 equitātus, -ūs, *m. cavalry*
 equus, -i, *m. a horse*
 ergā, *prep. (g. acc.) towards (only of the feelings) Par. 183*
 ēripio, -rīpi, -reptum, 3, *snatch away (g. acc. and dat., 192)*
 erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err, wander*
 error, -ōris, *m. error, fault*
 erūdō, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *train up, educate*
 erūdītus, -a, -um, *adj. trained, educated*
 erumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst, rush forth*
 et, *conj. and; et...et, both...and; even, (see Par. 12, 32, 153)*
 etiā, *conj. also, even (141); (mostly before the word it modifies); nōn solum...sed etiā, not only...but also*

Euphrātes, -is, *m. the Euphrates*
 Euripīdēs, -is, *m. Euripides*
 Eurōpa, -ae, *f. Europe*
 evādo, -vāsi, -vāsūm, *escape*
 ēvēnīo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *to return*
 eventūs, -ūs, *m., event, result*
 ex or ē, *prep. with abl. out of, from; ex itinere, on a journey*
 exalbescō, -albi, 3, *turn pale*
 exaudio, -īvi, -ītum, 4, *catch the sound of (g. acc.)*
 excēdo, -cēsi, -cēssum, 3, *I depart from*
 exclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I cry out*
 excūlo, -cūli, -cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully; agri exculti frumento, lit. fields richly cultivated with corn, i.e. fields with rich corn-crops*
 excūsātio, -tōnis, *f., excuse*
 excūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to excuse*
 excūtio, -cūsi, -cūssum, 3, *shake off*
 excēplum, -i, *n. example*
 exēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum, 3, *eat out, gnaw away; exēsus pūnex, weather-hollowed rock*
 exēo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *I go out*
 exercēo, -ēi, -ītum, 2, *exercise*
 exercītus, -ūs, *m. army*
 exhaurio, -hausi, -haustum, 4, *drain off, drink off*
 exīgūns, -a, -um, *scanty, little*
 exīlium, *see exsīlium*
 exīlium, -īi, *n. destruction*
 exordior, -orsus, 4, *(v. dep.), begin a web; hence exorsa, -ūrum, n. pl. a beginning*
 expecto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *await*
 expello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *I drive out [awakened]*
 expergiscor, expectectus, 3, *I am*
 expēriētia, -ae, *f. experience*
 expērior, -pertus, 4, *dep. try, experience*

expers, -rtis, *destitute of (g. gen.)*
 expēto, -īvi, -itum, 3, *seek out*
 explorātor, -ōris, *m. spy, scout*
 explorō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *investigate*
 expōno, -pōnī, -pōsitum, 3, *put forth, dicembarh*
 expugno, -āvi, ātum, 1, *take by storm* [*destroy*]
 exciundo, -scīdi, -scisum, 3, *rend*
 exīlio, -īlī, -sultum, 4, *leap forth*
 exīliam, -ī, *n. exile*
 exstrūo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *build up*
 extīnescō, -tīnūi, 3, *take alarm at (acc.)*
 extrā, *prp. (g. acc.) outside of; extrā culpam, free from blame*
 extrādo, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw out*
 extrēmus, -n, -um, *last*, Par. 69
 exulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *exult*
 exūo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *strip off*

Fāber, -bri, *m. workman, artificer*
 Fābius, -ii, *m. Quintus Fabius Maximus, called Cunctator, because by "delaying action" he restored success to Rome in the Second Punic War*

fābūla, -ae, *f. story, fable*
 faciēs, -ei, *f. face*
 faciē, *adv. easily; comp. facilius*
 faciēs, -e, *adj. easy (60)* [*crime*]
 faciūus, -ōris, *n. daring deed*
 faciō, feci, factum, faciēre, 3, *make, do; fac (ut) venias, cause that you, i.e. take care to, come; (with assis, flocci) I value (284)*
 factum, -i, *n. deed*
 fallāx, -ācis, *deceitful*
 fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3, *deceive; fidem fēfellit, he broke his word; non f. opīnionem, it did not deceive our expectation*
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*
 fama, -ae, *f. fame, reputation; Fāma, the goddess Fame*
 familiāris, -e, *belonging to the*

household; res f. one's property, estate
 fāmēs, -is, *f. hunger*
 fās, *n. indecl. divine law, heaven's will; contrā jās fāsque, against human and divine law*
 fascis, -is, *m. bundle, faggot; fascēs, the rods carried before consuls*
 fātōr, fassus, 2, *dep. confess*
 fātum, -i, *n. fate*
 faux, -eis, *f. jaw*
 fāveo, fāvi, fāutum, 2, *favour (g. dat.)*
 febris, -is, *f. (-im or -em, -ī or -ē), fever*
 feliciter, *adv. luckily, prosperously*
 felix, -icis, *happy, fortunate*
 femīna, -ae, *f. a woman*
 fēra, -ae, *f. a wild beast*
 fērax, -ācis, *fruitful*
 fēre, *adv. almost, commonly; nemo fēre, hardly anyone*
 fēritas, -ātis, *f. savageness [peace*
 fērio, 4, *strike; f. pacem, I make*
 fēro, tūli, lātum, ferro, bear, carry, endure; fertur Gaius dixisse, it is reported that Gaius said
 fērox, -ōcis, *adj. fierce, spirited*
 ferrum, -ī, *n. iron, sword*
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage, wild*
 fessus, -a, -um, *wary*
 fētus, -ūs, *m. offspring*
 fions, -ūs, *f. a fig*
 fidēlis, -e, *adj. faithful*
 fides, -ei, *f. faith; sorvo fidem, I keep my word*
 fido, fisis sum, fidere, 3, *(g. dat. or abl.) I trust*
 fidus, -a, -um, *adj. faithful*
 figo, fixi, fixum, 3, *fix*
 filia, -ae, *f. a daughter*
 filius, -ii, *m. a son*
 fingo, sinxi, fictum, 3, *feign*
 finis, -ivi, -ii, -itum, 4, *I end*
 finis, -is, *m. end, boundary (pl. territories)*

finitimus, -a, -um, *bordering on*
fio, factus sum, fieri, 3, v. irr. *to*
become, be made (258)

firmitas, -atis, n. *strength*

firmitas, -a, -um, *strong*

Flaccus, -i, m. *the surname of*
Quintus Horatius Flaccus, com-
monly called Horace

flagitium, -i, n. *disgraceful crime*

flo, flevi, fletum, 2, *weep*

flo, flavi, flatum, 1, *blow*

flocus, -i, m. *the down of wool*;
hence non flocci facio, I do not
value at a feather (281)

florere, -ntis, adj. *flourishing*

florere, -ntis, 2, *I bloom, flourish*

flor, floris, m. *flower*

fluctus, -us, m. *wave, billow*

flumen, -inis, n. *current, river*

fluo, -xi, 3, *flow* (*fat. part. act.*
fluxurus)

fluvius, -ii, m. *a river*

fodis, fodi, fossam, fodere, 3, *dig*

foedo, -avi, -atum, 1, *denile*

foedus, -eris, n. *treaty*

foedus, -a, -um, *foul, shameful*

fons, -ntis, m. *fountain, source*

fore, ful. inf. of sum (*Par. 212*);

forem, foret, &c. *see sum*

foras, *adv. (motion) out of doors*;

foris, *adv. (rest) out of doors*

foris, -um, f. pl. *doors*

formido, -avi, -atum, 1, *dread*

formido, -inis, f. *terror*

fortasse, *adv. perhaps* (*mostly re-*
fers to the future, unlike fortū
below)

forte, *adv. by chance, once upon a*
time, never refers to the Fut., ex-
cept in the phrases, si forte, nisi
forte, ne forte

fortis, -e, *brave, strong*; -tissimē,
adv. very bravely; -titor, *adv.*
bravely

fortuna, -ae, f. *fortune*; fortunae
nostrae penes te sunt, *our*
fortunes are in your hands

forum, -i, n. *market-place, forum*

fossa, -ae, f. *ditch*

frango, frangi, fractum, 3, *break*

frater, -tris, m. *brother*

fraus, fraudis, f. *deceit, mischief*

frimo, -ui, itum, 3, *murmur*

frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*

frigus, -oris, n. *cold*

frons, -ntis, f. *foliage*

frons, -ntis, f. *the forehead, brow*

fructus, -us, m. *fruit, advantage*

fruges, -um, f. pl. *fruits, a crop*

fruo, fruor, fruor or fructus, 3, *dep.*
enjoy (207, 256)

frumentum, -i, n. *corn* (*mostly*
harvested); frumentum, -orum,
corn (*mostly in the fields*)

frustrā, *adv. in vain*

frutex, -icis, m. *shrub*

fuga, -ae, f. *flight*

fugio, fugi, 3, *flee*

fugo, -avi, -atum, 1, *put to flight*

fulcio, fulsi, fultum, 4, *prop up*

fulgeo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine*

fulgur, -uris, n. *lightning* (*that*
shines); in poets used for fulmen

fulmen, -inis, n. *lightning* (*that*
strikes) [*route*]

fundo, fudi, fustum, 3, *pour, scatter*

fundus, -i, m. *farm*

funestus, -a, -um, *fatal, deadly*

fungor, functus, 3, v. dep. *I dis-*
charge (207)

funis, -is, m. *rope*

funus, -eris, n. *a funeral*

fur, furis, m. *thief*

furo, -oris, m. *madness, rage*

Gades, -ium, f. pl. *Cádiz*

Gaius, gen. Gai, m. (*less cor-*
rectly Caius, Caii) *Gaius, a*
Roman praenomen or fore-name

Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul*

Gallus, -i, m. *a Gaul*

gaudeo, gāvissus sum, gaudere, 2,
I rejoice

gaudium, -i, n. *joy*

glāidus, -a, -um, *ice-cold*
 glō, -ūs, *n. frost*
 gēner, -ēri, *m. son-in-law*
 gens, gentis, *f. nation*
 gēnū, -ūs, *n. knee*
 gēnus, -ūs, *n. kind, race*
 Germanur, -a, -um, *German*
 gēro, gēsi, gētum, 3, *carry on;*
 rem bonē gēro, *I succeed;* bel-
 lum gēro, *I wage war*
 glāciē, -iē, *f. ice*
 glādiator, -ōris, *m. gladiator*
 glādīus, -iī, *m. a sword*
 glans, -idīs, *f. acorn*
 Gracchus, -i, *m. Gracchus, the name*
of two brothers, both of whom
brought forward Agrarian laws
in Rome
 grācilis, -e, *slender, GO*
 Gracīa, -ae, *f. Greece* [Greek
 Graccus, -a, -um, *adj. Grecian,*
 grāmen, -inis, *n. grass*
 grandis, -e, *adj. large*
 grānum, -i, *n. a grain*
 grātīa, -ae, *f. favour, in grātiam*
 rēdīre, *to be restored to favour;*
(abl. sing.) for the sake of;
 grātias āgere, *to return thanks*
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, grateful*
 grāvis, -e, *heavy, severe*
 grāviter, *adv. heavily, severely,*
seriously; hōc g. tūli, *I was*
vexed at this
 grāvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *weigh down*
 grex, grēgis, *m. flock*
 grus, grūs, *c. crane*
 gūberno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *govern*
 gusto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *taste*
 guttur, -ūris, *n. throat*

Hābēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *have;*
 hābēo in ānīmo, *I purpose*
 hābitō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dwell*
 haerēo, haesi, haesum, 2, *stick*
fast; (of the voice) *falter*

Hannībal, -ālis, *m. Hannibal*
 hāruspex, -icis, *m. soothsayer*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 haud, *adv. not (rarely with verbs*
and adj. except haud scīo ān,
haud dūbium est, &c.) [land]
 Helvētia, -ae, *f. Helvetia (Switzer-*
 Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj. Helvetian*
 herba, -ae, *f. herb*
 hercle! (*an oath used as an ex-*
clamation) by Hercules, certainly
 hērī, *adv. yesterday*
 hesternus, -a, -um, *of yesterday*
 hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl. winter quar-*
ters; hibernus, -a, -um, *adj. of*
winter, wintry
 hic, *pron. see* Par. 103; *hic...ille,*
the latter . . . the former, one . . .
another; tribus his mensibus,
within the next three months
 hic, *adv. here*
 hiemps, hiēmīs, *f. winter*
 hilāris, -e, *adj. cheerful*
 hinc, *adv. hence, from this place*
 histōria, -ae, *f. history;* Natūrālis
 h. the *Natural History of Pliny*
 histriō, -iōnis, *actor*
 hōdiē, *adv. to-day*
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*
 hōmo, -inis, *m. man*¹
 hōnestus, -a, -um, *honourable (this*
word never means "honest")
 hōnor, -ōris, *m. on honour, office;*
in hōnōre est, it is held in honour
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*
 hordeum, -i, *n. barley*
 Hōrātius, -iī, *Horace*
 hortor, -ātus, 1, *v dep. exhort*
 hortus, -i, *m. a garden*
 hostīa, -ae, *f. a victim*
 hostis, -is, *m. the enemy*
 hūc, *adv. hither;* often, though not
perhaps with strict correctness,
rendered in modern English,
"here"

¹ Hōmo means a human being, and is occasionally (but very rarely) used of women: vir means a good or brave man.

hūmānitas, -ātis, *f.* courtesy, kindness
hūmānitās, *adv.* after the manner of men; (hence used of misfortunes) *aliquid ei h. accidit*, he died
hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* human, gentle, courteous
hūmīlis, -e, low, low-minded (60)
hūmus, -i, *f.* ground; *hūmi*, on the ground

I, imperative of *eo*

ibi, *adv.* there

ictus, -ūs, *m.* a blow; *sub ictum venire*, to come within striking distance

igitur, *conj.* therefore, then; differs from *itaque* in not standing first in a clause (in the best authors)

ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant; *tibi ignāro prōfui*, I helped you without your being aware of it

ignāvā, *adv.* indolently

ignāvia, -ae, *f.* sloth, cowardice

ignāvus, -a, -um, slothful, cowardly

ignēus, -a, -um, *adj.* fiery

ignis, -is, *m.* fire, *abl.* *igni* (except in poets)

ignōrāntia, -ōnis, *f.* ignorance

ignosco, -nōvi, -nūtum, 3, (*g. dat.*) pardon

illātūri, see *infēro*

illē, (103) *Alexander ille*, the great, well-known, &c., *Alexander*

illēcēbrāe, -ārum, *f. pl.* allurements

illūc, *adv.* thither

imāgo, -inis, *f.* image, likeness

imbellis, -e, unwarlike

imber, -ris, *m.* (Abl. -i), shower

imitor, -atus, 1, *v. dep.* imitate

immemor, *gen.* -ōris, unmindful

immortalis, -e, *adj.* immortal

immortalitas, -ātis, *f.* immortality

impār, *gen.* -āris, unequal

impavidus, -a, -um, fearless

impello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *impel*

impendeo, (no *Perf.* or *Sup.*) 2, *impend*

impērator, -ōris, *m.* general

impēritus, -a, -um, (*g. gen.*) unskilful in

impērium, -iī, *n.* command, empire

impēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, (*g. dat.*) give orders to; *i. tibi frumentum*, I exact corn from you; *fol.* by *ut* (143)

impētus, -ūs, *m.* attack, onset

impiger, -gra, -grum, active

implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *implore*

impūno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3, *impose* (a task, tribute, &c.) on, *Par.* 192

imprōbus, -a, -um, *adj.* dishonest, wicked, bad

imprūdēns, -ntis, ignorant; *i. fēci*, I did it ignorantly

imprudentia, -ae, *f.* ignorance, imprudence

in, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) into, towards; (*g. abl.*) in

inānis, -e, idle, empty [tion

incendium, -i, *n.* a fire, conflagration

incendo, -di, -sum, 3, set fire to, burn

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* uncertain

incipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, begin

incōla, -ae, *m.* inhabitant

incōlo, -ui, -ultum, 3, inhabit

incōlūmis, -e, safe

incōlūmitās, -ātis, *f.* safety

incrēpo, -crēpui, -crēpitum, 1, *reproach*

inectus, -avi, -ātum, 1, I accuse, find fault with

indē, *adv.* thence, thereupon; *indē a pūritā*, even from boyhood

Indi, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Indians

indico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, point out

indignus, -a, -um, unworthy

indoctus, -a, -um, unlearned

indulgēo, -si, -tum, 2, (*g. dat.*) indulge

industrius, -a, -um, *adj.* industrious,
busy
 īre, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *go into*,
enter, begin
 ineptē, *adv.* (in-aptē, *unfitly*), *fool-*
ishly, without tact
 ineptus, -a, -um, *silly*
 īnert, -tis, *adj.* helplese, *sluggish*
 infāmia, -ae, *f.* infamy
 infāmis, -i, *adj.* infamous
 infectus, -a, -um, *unaccomplished*;
 rē infectā, (*abl. abs.*) *the affair*
being unaccomplished, i.e. with
nothing done (Par. 197)
 infelicitē, *adv.* unluckily; pugnā-
 tum est i. *we have been defeated*
 infelix, -icis, *unfortunate, unhappy*
 inferior, -ius, *comp.* of inferus, *adj.*
lower, inferior
 infēro, intālī, illātum, inferrē, 3, *v.*
irr.; bellum i. tibi, *I declare war*
against you
 infinitus, -a, -um, *adj.* unbounded,
infinite
 infirmū, -ātis, *f.* weakness
 infirmus, -a, -um, *infirm, weak*
 infrā, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) below
 ingens, -ntis, *huge, great*
 ingēnium, -i, *n.* disposition
 ingratus, -a, -um, *displeasing, un-*
grateful
 ingrēdior, -gressus sum, 3, *v.* *dep.*
enter
 īnhacrēo, -hacsi, -hacsum, 2, *stick*
fast
 inhōnustus, -a, -nm, *dishonour-*
able
 īnimicitia, -ae, *f.* enmity
 īnimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile*;
 īnimicus, -i, *m.* a private enemy;
opp. to hostis, an enemy of the
state
 īnitium, -i, *n.* a beginning
 īnjicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3, *cast* (*fear,*
&c.) *into, inspire*
 īnjūcundus, -a, -um, *disagreeable*
 īnjustē, *adv.* unjustly

īnjustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 īnnōcens, -ntis, *innocent*
 īnnūmērus, -a, -um, *adj.* innumera-
ble
 īnops, -ōpis, *destitute*
 īnquā, inquit, *see Defective Verbs,*
Appendix II., p. 215
 īnsānio, -īvi, -itum, 4, *I am mad*
 īnsēquor, -sēcūtus, 3, *follow after,*
pursue
 īnsīdine, -arum, *f.* snares, *an am-*
bush; per īnsīdias, *insidiously*
 īnsignis, -e, *distinguished, noted*
 īnsōlens, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) *unaccus-*
tomed to
 īnstītio, -ui, -itum, 3, *I appoint,*
institute
 īnstrūmentum, -i, *n.* an instru-
ment
 īnstrūo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *arrange,*
draw up
 īnsūctus, -a, -um, *untrained to* (*g.*
gen.)
 īnsūla, -ae, *f.* island
 īnsum, -fui, -esse, *v. irr.* (*g. dat.*)
I am in
 īntellēgo, -lēxi, -lectum, 3, *under-*
stand, hear, perceive (*less cor-*
rectly intolligo)
 īntēr, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *between, among*;
 īntervēnandū, *duyng, hunting*;
 hācō īnter sē rēpūgnant, *these*
things are inconsistent with one
another
 īnterclūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum, 3, *I cut*
off; i. hostes comunicātū, *I cut*
off the enemy from supplies
 īnterdum, *adv.* sometimes
 īntērēo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *perish*
 īntērest, -fūit, -esse, (*v. impers.*) *it*
makes a difference, it concerns,
 Par. 329
 īnterficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *slay*
 īntērītus, -ūs, *m.* destruction
 īnterjūcēo, -jācui, 2, *lie between*
 īnterrūgo, -āvi, -ūtum, 1, *ask, ques-*
tion

intersum, -sui, -esse, (*g. dat.*) *I am among, I take part in*
 intervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *interrupt, (g. dat.) (192)*
 intrā, *prep. (g. acc.) inside, within*
 intro, -īvi, -itum, 1, *enter*
 intrōeo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *go into, enter*
 intueor, -itus -sum, 2, *v. dep. look upon, into*
 Inūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3, *brana*
 inutilis, -e, *useless*
 inutiliter, *adv. uselessly, in vain*
 invādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3, *attack*
 invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, -ae, 4, *light on, find, find out* [*dat.*]
 iuvideō, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *enry, g.*
 invīdia, -ae, *f. enry, ill-will*
 invīdus, -a, -um, *envious*
 invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling; (used as adj. but with adv. force) in-*
ritus fēci, I did it unwillingly
 ipsē, *see Par. 105, 308*
 ira, -ae, *f. anger*
 irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*
 iraseor, irātus, 3, *v. dep. I am angry*
 irrumpo, -rūpi, -raptum, 3, *burst into, rush into*
 irrūo, -rūi, 3, *rush in*
 is, ēa, id, *see p. 46; nōn is sum qui mentiar, I am not the man to lie, 303a*
 istē, -a, -ud, *pron. adj. that of yours; iste, that fellow*
 istūc, *adv. thither, where you are*
 itā, *in that way, thus, so*
 Itālia, -ae, *f. Italy*
 itāque, *and so, thereupon; itāquē, (differing from igitur), stands first in a clause*
 iter, itinēris, *n. journey, road, way; ex itinēre, on a journey*
 itērum, *adv. a second time, again*
 Jācēo, -i, 2, *lie (on the ground)*
 jācio, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw*

jactatio, -ionis, *f. boasting*
 jacto, -avi, -atum, 1, *boast*
 jactūs, -ūs, *m. cast, shot, fire;*
intrā tēli jactum, within shot;
sūb jactu, under fire
 jam, *adv. (1) already; (2) by this time; cum jam often means "just when," or "at last when"; non jam, no longer*
 jandūdum or jampūdum, *adv. this long while; j. cūpio, I have been this long while desiring (324)*
 Jānuārius, -ia, -ium, *of January*
 jūcor, -atus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *jest*
 Jūvis, *see Jupiter*
 jūbēo, jussī, jussum, 2, *I order, (g. acc. and inf.) bid*
 jūeundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
 Jūdaea, -ae, *f. Judaea*
 jūdex, -icis, *m. judge; mē jūdice, in my judgment, lit. I being a judge (Par. 197)*
 jūdicium, -i, *n. judgment*
 jūdeo, -avi, -atum, 1, *judge*
 jūgūlo, -avi, -atum, 1, *cut the throat of, butcher*
 jūgam, -i, *n. yoke; to be "sent under the yoke" was the sign of defeat*
 jungo, -nxi, -netum, 3, *join; ponto jungere, to bridge over*
 jūnior, -oris, *younger*
 Jūno, -ōnis, *f. Juno, a goddess*
 Jūpiter, Jūvis, *m. Jupiter*
 jūro, -avi, -atum or jurātus sum, 1, *I swear; j. in lēgem, I swear (obedience) to a law; j. in verbe eius, in accordance with his words*
 jus, jūris, *n. right, law; jūrē, (adv. abl.) by right, rightly (182)*
 jusjurandum, jūrisjurandi, *n. an oath*
 jussum, -i, *n. command*
 justē, *adv. justly; justus, more justly*
 justitia, -ae, *justice*
 justus, -a, -um, *just*
 jūvēnis, -is, *m. young man*

jūventus, -ūtis, *f.* youth
juxtā, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) near, hard
by, next to

Lābiēnus, -ī, *m.* Labienus
lābor, -ōris, *m.* labour
lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep.* I glide,
pass away, full

lāc, lactis, *n.* milk [or Sparta
Lācēdaemon, -ōnis, *f.* Lacedaemon
Lācēdaemōnii, -ōrum, *m.* the Lacedaemonians

lācrimā, -ae, *f.* a tear
lācus, -ūs, *m.* a lake
laedo, lae-i, -sum, 3, *hurt* (*g. acc.*)
laetitia, -ae, *f.* joy

lactus, -a, -um, *joyful*
lāpis, -idis, *m.* stone
lāpidēus, -a, -um, *adj.* of stone

lātē, *adv.* widely, wide
lātēo, -ui, 2, *lie hid, lurk*
lātex, -icis, *m.* water

Lātinus, -a, -um, *Latin*
lātītudo, -inis, *f.* breadth
Lātōna, -ae, *f.* Latona, mother of
Apollo and Diana

latro, -ōnis, *m.* a robber
latrōcīnium, -i, *n.* robbery
lātūus, *ful. part.* of sēro

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*
laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*
laus, laudis, *f.* praise

lāvo, -lāvi, luvātum, 1, *wash*¹
lectus, -i, *m.* bed

lēgātus, -i, *m.* ambassador, lieutenant
lēgiō, -ionis, *f.* legion, from 4,000
to 6,000 men

lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, *gather, read*
lēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bequeath*
Lemnos, -i, *f.* the isle of Lemnos

lēo, leōnis, *m.* lion
Lēonidas, -ae, *m.* Leonidas

lēpus, -ōris, *m.* a hare

Lesbos, -i, *f.* Lesbos

lēvis, -e, *light, fickle, empty*

lēx, lēgis, *f.* law

libenter, *adv.* willingly

liber, -bri, *m.* book

liber, -era, -erum, *free*; liberrima
oratio, *very frank speech* (61)

Liber, -eri, *m.* Liber, the god of
wine

librē, *adv.* freely

liberi, -orum, *m. pl.* children

libero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I free, de-*
liver (*g. abl.* of thing)

libertas, -atis, *f.* freedom, liberty

libet (libuit und) libitum est, 2, *v.*
impers. (*g. dat.*) it pleases

Libya, -ae, *f.* Africa

licet, licuit and licitum est, licere,
2, *v. impers.* (*g. dat.*) it is law-
ful, allowed; (used with Inf; or
with Subjunct. with ut omitted)

licet omnes frēmant, let them all
murmur; N.B. after licet mihi
esse, the Adj. may either be dat.
(Par. 24), or attracted into the
Acc., to agree with me "under-
stood," licet mihi (mē) esse
lēātum

Licinīus, -i, *m.*, Lirinius

lector, -ōris, *m.* a lector

lignēus, -a, -um, *wooden*

lilium, -i, *n.*, lily

lingua, -ae, *f.* tongue, language

liquet, liquere, 2, *v. impers.* (Par.
222) it is clear, evident

littera, -ae, *f.* a letter of the
alphabet

litterae, -arum, *f. pl.* letters, learn-
ing, also an epistle, letter

litus, -ōris, *n.* a shore

Livius, -i, *m.* Titus Livius the his-
torian, commonly called Livy

locus, -i, *m.* a place

longē, *adv.* far, far off [tance

longinquitās, -atis, *f.* length, dis-

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* long,
distant

¹ Also lautum and lōtum; this verb is never intransitive.

longitudo, -dinis, *f.* length [*far*]
 longius, *adv. comp.* farther, too
 longus, -a, -um, long; *naves*
 longae, *ships of war*
 lūquor, lūctus, 3, *dep. speak*
 lūcescit (illuxit), lūcescere, 3, *v.*
imper. it becomes light
 lūdo, -si, -sum, 3, *I play*
 ludus, -i, *m.* play, game
 lūna, -ae, *f.* the moon
 lūpus, -i, *m.* wolf
 lusciniā, -ae, *f.* nightingale
 lux, lucis, *f.* light, dawn
 lyra, -ae, *f.* lyre

Mācēdo, -ōnis, *m.* a Macedonian
 mācer, -era, -erum, lean
 mācula, -ae, *f.* spot
 māgis, *adv.* (sup. maxime), rather,
in a higher degree, more
 māgister, -tri, *m.* master, teacher
 māgistrātus, -ūs, *m.* magistrate,
magistracy
 magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* magni-
 ficent; (*for superl. see Par. 68a*)
 magnopere, *adv.* greatly, earnestly
 magnus, -a, -um, great, large
 māiestas, -ātis, *f. lit.* "sovereignty";
condemnari māiestātis, to be
found guilty (on the charge) of
(impairing) sovereignty, i.e. of
treason (290)
 māior, -ōris, *Par. 68*
 māiores, -um, *m. pl.* ancestors
 māle, *adv. comp.* pūjus, *sup. pessī-*
mē, badly, ill
 mālelicium, -i, *n.* slander, curse
 mālevōlus, -a, -um, *ill-wishing,*
*malevolent (superl., Par. 68u)**
 mālo, mālui, māllē, *irr. v.* I am
more willing, I prefer, I had
rather (p. 130)
 mālum, -i, *n.* an apple
 mālum, -i, *n.* evil
 mālus, -i, *f.* an apple tree
 mālus, -a, -um, bad, evil [*mission*]
 mandātum, -i, *n.* a charge, com-

mānēo, -nisi, -nsu, 2, remain
 mānifestus, -a, -um, evident, mani-
 fest
 mānipūlus, -i, *m.* a manipule
 mānsi, *see mānēo*
 mānus, -ūs, *f.* a hand
 Mārathon, -ōnis, *f.* Marathon
 Marcus, -i, *m.* Marcus; *see Crassus*
 māre, -is, *n.* sea (*see terra*)
 mārgarita, -ae, *f.* a pearl
 mārinus, -a, -um, *adj.* of the sea
 marmor, -ōris, *n.* marble
 Mārius, -a, -um, of March, p. 229
 māter, -tris, *f.* mother
 māteriā, -ae, *f.* materials, timber
 mātrīmōnium, -ii, *n.* matrimony,
duxit eam in mātrīmōnium, he
married her (always of man
marrying women, see natio)
 mātns, -a, -um, ripe
 maxime, *adv.* very greatly, especially
 maximus, -a, -um, *see Par. 68*
 Māximus, -i, *m.* Maximus, "the
 greatest"; *see Fābrius*
 mēdicina, -ae, *f.* medicine
 mēdicus, -i, *m.* physician
 mēditor, -ītus, 1, *v. dep.* meditate
on, study
 mēdius, -a, -um, middle (of);
 mēdios in hostes, into the midst
 of the enemy
 mēlior, *neut. -ius, see Par. 68*
 mēminī, *v. def.*; *see p. 215*
 mēmor, -ōris, mindful (*g. gen.*)
 mēmōrābilis, -e, *adj.* memorable
 mēmōria, -ae, *f.* memory, recollection
 mendācium, -i, *n.* lie, falsehood
 mendāx, -ācis, *adj.* lying, deceitful
 Mēnēnius, -ii, *m.* Menenius Agrippa,
author of the fable of the Belly
and the Other Members
 mens, mentis, *f.* mind
 mensis, -is, *m.* month
 mentior, -ītus, 4, (*v. dep.*) tell a lie
 mercātor, -ōris, *m.* merchant
 mercēs, -cēdis, *f.* pay, wage, re-
 ward

Mercurius, -i, *m. Mercury*
mērio (*also inērior, mēritus*, 2, *v. dep.*) -ūi, -itum, 2, *I deserve*; dū patria bēnē mēritus est, *he has deserved well of his country*
mergo, mersi, mersum, 3, *plunge*
inēridies, *m. mid-day*
messis, -is, *f. harvest*
inētallum, -i, *n. a metal*; mētalla, -ūrum, *n. pl. mines*; damnāri in n. *to be condemned to the mines.*
mētior, mensus, 4, (*v. dep.*) *measure*
inēto, messui, messum, 3, *reap*
Mettus, -i, *m. Mettus, an Alban, torn in pieces by Tullus Hostilius*
mētūo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *I fear*
mētūo, -ūs, *m. fear*
inēus, -a, -um, *pronom. adj. my, mine*
mi, *masc. voc. of mēus* [*part*
migro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *migrate, de-*
mitēs, militis, *m. soldier*
milia, (80) *n. pl. (sometimes for*
milia passuum, see passus)
militāris, -e, *military*; rēs *m.*
military affairs, i.e. warfare
militāo, *adv. in war*
milliens, *a thousand times*
inille, milia, *see Par. 80*
inina, -ae, *f. threat*
mininē, *adv. by no means, in the*
least degree; minimus, -a, -um (68)
minister, -tri, *m. a servant*
minor, *see Par. 68*
inino, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *diminish*
mirandus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
miror, -ātus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *wonder at,*
admire
mirus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
iniscō, miscui, mixtum, 2, *mix,*
throw into confusion
misēr, -ēra, -ērūm, *wretched*
iniscōr, -sertus or -sēritus, 2, *dep.*
pity (g. gen.) (203)
iniscēt, misēritum est, 2, *v. im-*
pers., *see Par. 219*
iniscēria, -ae, *f. misery*

misēricordia, *f. pity* [(*g. acc.*)
misēror, -atus, 1, *show pity to*
inisco, 3, *become mild*
mitis, -c, *adj. mild*
initto, misi, missum, 3, *send*
mōdestia, -ac, *modesty*
mōdo, *adv. only*; sī, or dūm,
inūdo, if, or provided, only;
mōdo nunc, only just now
mōdus, -i, *m. measure, manner*;
praeter mōdum, beyond measure;
inullo inodo, in no way; *eiusmodi*,
of that kind
moenia, -ium, *n. pl. fortifications*
inōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
mollis, -i or -ii, -itum, 4, *soften*
mollis, -c, *adj. soft, mellow*
mōnō, -ui, -itum, 2, *advise, warn-*
mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*
inonstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *show,*
point out
mōnūmentum, -i, *n. monument*
mōra, -ae, *f. delay*
inorbus, -i, *m. disease*
inōrōr, inōrtūus, 3, *v. dep. die (fut.*
part. inōrtūrus, about to die)
mōror, mōrātus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*
mors, -tis, *f. death*
morsūs, -ūs, *m. bite*
inortalis, -e, *adj. mortal*
mortūus, -a, -um, *dead*
inōs, inōris, *m. manner, custom*;
mōres, -um, *pl. conduct, morals*;
nōn nostri mōris est, it is not
(characteristic of) our custom
mōtūs, -ūs, *m. motion, movement*
mōvō, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *move,*
affect; bellum, or arma, mōvco,
I stir up or commence war
mox, *adv. soon*
mūlier, -ēris, *f. woman, wife*
mūplex, -plicis, *manifold*; *m.*
tētus, many young ones at a time
mūltitudo, -inis, *f. multitude*
mūlto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *punish (with*
death, fine, &c.)
mūltus, -a, -um, *much, many*;

multa nox, *a late (hour of) night*; multum *adv.*, inultum *intērest*, *it makes a great difference*; multo (*adv. with compar.*) (*by*) much; multo felicior, (*by*) much more happy

Mummīus, -ii, *m.* Mummīus, the destroyer of Corinth

mundus, -i, *m.* the universe

munificus, -a, -um, (68a) liberal

munimentum, -i, *n.* a fortification

munio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, fortify
mūnus, -eris, *n.* a gift, duty, function

murmūr, -ūris, *n.* murmur

mūrus, -i, *m.* wall

mutō, -avi, -atum, 1, change

Mycēnae, -arum, *f. pl.* Mycenae, the chief city of Greece in the Trojan times

myrtus, -i and -us, *f.* myrtle

Nactus, *see* nanciscor

nam, *conj.* for; differs from enim in standing first in a clause

nanciscor, nactus and nactus, *inf.* nancisci, 3, obtain (*v. dep.*)

narro, -avi, -atum, 1, relate

nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep.* I am born
N.B. nascor means "I am being born"; decem annos nātus est, he is ten years old

Nāso, -ōnis, *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso, commonly called Ovid

nātn, *adv. abl.* by birth

nātūra, -ae, *f.* nature

nātūrālis, *see* histōria

nātus, -a, -um, *part. and adj.* born, aged; viginti annos n., twenty years old

nauta, -ae, *m.* a sailor

nāvālis, -e, *adj.* naval

nāvigo, -avi, -atum, 1, sail

nāvis, -is, *f.* ship

-nē, *enclitic*, asks a question (100)

ne, *conj.* that not, lest (131); nē

quīs, that no one (294); (*with perf. subj.*) (do) not (129)

Nēāpolis, -is, *f.* (acc. -im), Naples

nēc, *see* nēquē

nēcessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* necessary

nēcesse, *adv.* necessarily; (*used as adj.*) nēcesse est, it is necessary, (*fol. by acc. and inf. or ut*)

nēco, nēcāvi, nēcatum, 1, kill

nēfandus, -a, -um, unspeakable, monstrous

nēfās, *n. indecl.* wickedness; *n.*

dictu, monstrous to relate!

neglēgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, neglect

nēgo, -āvi, -atum, 1, I deny

nēgōtium, -i, *n.* business

nēmō, nullius, *m.* nobody, no one

Par. 92; *n. nōn gaudēbat*, there was no one that did not rejoice

Nēoptolēmūs, -i, *m.* Neoptolamus

Nēptūnus, -i, *m.* Neptune

nēquam, *indecl. adj. comp.* nēquior, *sup.* nēquissimus, worthless

nēquē, or nēc, *conj. and not*; when repeated, neither...nor

nēquēo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, -ire, 4, I am unable, cannot; *imperf.* nēquibam; *fut indic.* nēquibō; *pres.*

part. nēquions, *gen.* nēquēuntis

nēquiquam, *adv.* in vain

nēquissimus, *see* nēquam

Nēro, -ōnis, *m.* Nero

nescio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, I am ignorant of, do not know; nescio

an venturus sit, i.e. nescio (utrum

afuturus sit) an (pōtius) ven-

turus sit, I do not know whether he will be absent or whether he

will rather come, i.e. I think he will come, Par. 302

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* (*gen. sing.*

-iūs, *dat.* -i), neither of two, *see* Par. 85

nēve, *adv. or not, nor*; or (*after neg.*) ne affirmāveris nēvē nēgā

veris, say neither 'yes' nor 'no'

nidus, -i, *m.* a nest

niger, -gra, -grum, *black*
 nihil, or nil, *n. indecl. nothing;*
(from nihilum) nihili te facio, I

esteem you of no account; nihilo
minus, none the less (277)

Nilus, -i, *m. the Nile, a river in*
Egypt

nī, *conj. a form of nisi*

nimis, *adv. too, too much*

Niōha, -ae, *f. Niobe*

nisi, *conj. if...not, unless (has the*
same constr. as si, 125, 293-5);
after nihil and quid, nisi means
"but" or "except," and has the
same constr. as quam (62)

nitor, nisus and nixus, *3, strive*
(143)

nix, nivis, *f. snow*

no, navi, natum, *1, swim*

nobilis, -e, *adj. distinguished,*
noble

nōcēo, -ūi, -itum, *2, (g. dat.) hurt*
nōlo, nōlūi, nolle, v. irreg. I am
unwilling, I do not wish; nōli
vēnīre, do not come; idem nolle,
to dislike the same thing, p. 128

nōmen, -inis, *n. name*

nōmīno, -āvi, -ātum, *1, name*

nōn, *adv. not*

nondum, *adv. not yet*

nōnne? *interr. adv. expects the*
answer "yes"; sometimes a conj.
whether, Par. 135

nonnullus, -a, -um, *adj. some*

nosco, nōvi, nōtum, *3, I gain*
knowledge of; hence perf. nōvi, I
have gained knowledge of; i.e. I
know

noster, -stra, -strum, *pronom. adj.*
our, ours; nostri often means
"our men;" nostri is also gen.
of nōs (93), and nostrum part.
gen.

nosti for nōvisti, *see nosco*

nōta, -ae, *mark, stigma*

nōtus, -a, -um, *known*

nōvus, -a, -um, *adj. new*

nox, noctis, *f. night* [jurious

noxius, -a, -um, *adj. hurtful, in-*
nubēs, -is, f. cloud

nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, *3, she marries*
(g. dat.); not used of men marry-
ing; see mātīmōnium

nullus, -a, -um, *adj. no, none; gen.*
sing. -ūs, dat. -ī, (85)

num? *interr. adv. expects the*
answer "no"; (sometimes conj.)
whether, Par. 135

nūmēro, -āvi, -ātum, *1, I count*

nūmērus, -i, *m. number*

Nūmīda, -ae, *m. a Numidian*

nunc, *adv. now, at the present time*

nunquam, *adv. never*

nuntio, -āvi, -ātum, *1, bring word*

nuntius, -i, *m. messenger*

nūper, *adv. lately*

nūtrio, -ivi and -īi, -itum, *4, nourish*

nux, nūcis, *f. nut*

Ōh, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of, in*
front of

obdormio, -ivi, -itum, *4, fall asleep*

obēdīo, -īvi and -īi, -itum, *4, (g.*
dat.) obey

obēo, -ivi or -īi, -itum, *4, I meet,*
esp. meet death, I die

oblātus, *see offēro*

oblectatio, -iōnis, *f. delight*

oblīno, -lēvi, -lītum, *besmear, defile*

obliviscor, -lītus, *3, dep. forget*
(g. gen.) 203

obsēro, -āvi, -ātum, *1, darken,*

obsērus, -a, -um, *obscure, dark*

obsēro, -āvi, -ātum, *1, beseech*
(foll. by ut) [respect

observo, -āvi, -ātum, *1, I observe,*

obses, -idis, *m. hostage*

obsīdēo, -sēdi, -sessum, *2, block-*
ade, besiege

obsīdio, -iōnis, *f. a siege, blockade*

obsto, -stiti, -stitum, *1, oppose,*
prevent (g. dat.); nothing prevents
your coming, nihil obstat (tibi)

quōmīnus vēnias

obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3, *bind (by oath)*
 obsum, obfui or offui, ūesse, v. irreg. (g. dat.) *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure*
 obtempero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *comply with, obey (g. dat.)*
 oblineo, -tīnui, 2, *keep, hold*
 occasio, -ōnis, f. *opportunity*
 occidens, -tis, m. *the west, the setting (sun)*
 occido, -cidi, -cāsum, 3, *fall; occidit spēs nostra, our hope has perished; occidimus, we are undone*
 occido, -cidi, -cāsum, 3, *slay, kill*
 occūpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *seize upon*
 occulto, -cūlui, -cultum, 3, *hide*
 occumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, *fall down*
 oceanus, -i, m. *the ocean*
 oculus, -i, m. *eye*
 odi, ōdisse, v. dep. *haste; see p. 215; odium, -ii, n. hatred; hic mihi odio (268) est, this man is hateful to me (lit. for hatred)*
 odor, -oris, m. *a smell, scent*
 offero, obtuli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irreg. *I present*
 olim, adv. *formerly*
 omen, -inis, n. *an omen* [drop
 omitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *omit*,
 omnino, adv. *altogether; (the position alters the meaning) o. nūn bonus, not at all good; 2, nūn o. bonus, not altogether good*
 omnis, -e, all, *the whole; (not "every," except in the pl.)*
 onus, -eris, n. *a load, burden*
 opēra, -ae, f. *pains, labour; his operam do, I pay attention to these things* [tion
 opinio, -ōnis, f. *opinion, expectation*
 oportet, -uit, 2, v. impers. *it behoves, is necessary; oportuit te tacere, you ought to have been silent (Par. 223)*

oppidum, -i, n. *town*
 oppōno, -ōsui, -itum, 3, *I set against; oppōno me tibi, I oppose you (192)* [power
 opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3, *over-*
 oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *assault*
 optimus, (68) *best, excellent; optimē, adv. excellently* [sire
 opto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I wish, desire*
 opulentus, -a, -um, adj. *wealthy*
 opus, -eris, n. *work; opus est (g. abl.) there is need of*
 ora, -ae, f. *the coast*
 oraculum, -i, n. *an oracle*
 orāre causam, *to plead a cause*
 oratio, -ōnis, f. *an oration, speech*
 orator, -oris, m. *an orator*
 ordior, -orsus, 4, v. dep. *I begin*
 ordo, -inis, m. *rank, order; ordinem equestrem, the order of the knights*
 orior, ortus, oriri, 3, v. dep. *rise &*
 orno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *adorn*
 oro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *entreat, pray; orāre causam, to plead a cause*
 ortus, *see orior*
 os, ōris, n. *mouth; in ore omnium est, it is the talk of everybody*
 ossis, n. *bone*
 ovum, -i, n. *egg* ..

Paciscor, pactus, 3, (v. dep.), *make an agreement*
 paenē, adv. *almost*
 palam, (adv. and prep. g. abl.) *publicly, in the presence of*
 Pallās, -adis, f. *Pallas Athene, not to be confounded with Minerva*
 pallium, -ii, n. *a cloak*
 pando, pandi, passum, 3, *lay open; passo crine, with dishevelled hair*
 panis, -is, m. *bread*
 papāver, -eris, n. *poppy*
 papilio, -ōnis, m. *butterfly*
 par, paris, equal; *non est solvendo par, he is not equal to paying, i.e. he is insolvent*

pārātus, -a, -um, *adj.* prepared
p. ad pugnandum, p. to fight
 parco, p'parci, parcitum or par-
 sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) spare; paucis
 parsum est, few were spared
 pārens, -ntis, *c.* parent
 pārēr, -ūi, -itum, 2, (*g. dat.*) obey
 pārīo, pēp'ri, partum, 3, (*g. acc.*)
bring forth, give birth to
 pārīter, *adv.* equally
 pārō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, prepare, get
 pars, -tis, *f.* part
 parsum, *see* parco
 partīor, -itus, 4, *dep.* share, divide
 partus, -ūs, *m.* birth
 parum, *adv.* too little; used for
 "not"; (*used as a noun g. part.*
gen.) *p. virum, too little strength*
 parvus, -a, -um, small, little
 pascō, pāvi, pastum, 3, feed; oves
 pascebantur, sheep were grazing
 passus, -ūs, *m.* a pace (about 5 feet);
 mille passus, a mile
 pastor, -ōris, *m.* shepherd
 pāten, -ūi, 2, extend; it extends for
 ten miles, pātet in foll. by acc.
 pāter, -tris, *m.* father
 patiēns, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) patient (of)
 patiēter, *adv.* patiently
 pātior, passus, 3, endure, suffer
 Patres, -um, *m. pl.* Fathers, a name
 given to the Roman Senators
 patria, -ae, *f.* a native land, country
 patrimonium, -ii, *n.* patrimony
 paulisper, *adv.* for a short time
 paucus, -a, -um (mostly pl.) few
 pauper, -ēris, *m.* poor
 paupertas, -atis, *f.* poverty
 pāvīdus, -a, -um, fearful
 pāvo, -ōnis, *m.* peacock
 pāvor, -ōris, *m.* terror, trembling
 pax, pācis, *f.* peace
 peccātum, -i, *n.* fault
 pecco, -avi, -atum, 1, err, sin
 pēcūnīa, -ae, *f.* money, sum of money
 pēdēs, -itis, *m.* foot-soldier
 pēditātus, -ūs, *m.* infantry

pejor, *see* Par. 68
 pēlūgus, -i, *n.* sea
 pellis, -is, *f.* skin (of animals)
 pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3, drive
 pendo (page 209) hang, weigh,
 value (283)
 pēnēs, *prep. (g. acc.) in the hands of*
 penna, -ae, *f.* feather, wing; (of
 fishes) fin
 pēr, *prep. (g. acc.) through, by means*
 of; per dōlūm, treacherously
 percipio, -cipi, -ceptum, 3, perceive
 perensio, -iōnis, *f.* striking; *p.*
 digītūrum, the snapping of one's
 fingers
 perdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, destroy
 perlūmo, -ūi, itum, 1, thoroughly
 tame, subdue
 pērō, -ūi or -ivi, itum, 4, perish
 perfectus, -a, -um, *adj.* finished,
 perfect
 perfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*
 irr. endure
 perficio, -feci, -fectum, 3, perform
 perfūlia, -ae, *f.* perfidy
 perfidus, -a, -um, perfidious,
 treacherous
 Periclē, -is, *m.* Pericles
 pēricūlum, -i, *n.* danger [*gen.*]
 pēritus, -a, -um, *adj.* skilful in (*g.*
 perlēgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, I read
 through
 pernagnus, -a, -um, very great
 pernōvco, -mōvi, -mūtum, 2, rouse,
 stir
 permulti, -ae, -a, very many
 pernīcīosus, -a, -um, destructive
 perpētūus, -a, -um, *adj.* continual
 perumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, burst
 through
 Persā, -ae, *m.* a Persian
 persaepe, *adv.* very often
 perspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, see
 through, discern
 persuādco, -āsī, -āsum, 2, (*g. dat.*)
 persuade (143); persuāsum est
 mihi, I am persuaded

pertaesum, *see* tacet
 perterreo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, 2, *alarm*
 pertimesco, -timūi, 3, *become fear-ful*
 pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *arrive*
 perversus, -a, -um, *wilful, perverse*
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*
 pessimus, *see* Par. 68
 pestis, -is, *f. plague*
 pēto, -īvi & -īi, -itum, 3, *seek*
 Phaëthon, -ontis, *m. Phaëthon, a son of Apollo the Sun-god*
 Phidiās, -ae, *m. Phidias, an Athenian sculptor (1st decl.)*
 Philīppus, -i, *m. Philip (of Macedonia)*
 Philoctētēs, -ae, *m. Philoctetes*
 philōsōphiā, -ae, *f. philosophy*
 philōsōphus, -i, *m. philosopher*
 Phoebus, -i, *m. Phoebus Apollo, the Sun-god; Phoebus -a, -um, adj. belonging to Phoebus Apollo*
 piger, -gra, -grum, *slolhful*
 pigēt, piguit and pigitum est, pigēre, 2, *v. impers. it vexes*
 pingo, -nxi, -pictum, 3, *I paint, embroider*
 pinguis, -e, *fat*
 pinna, *see* penna
 pinus, -ūs and -i, *f. pine-tree*
 pīrum, -i, *n. a pear*
 pīrus, -i, *f. a pear-tree*
 piscātor, -ōris, *m. fisherman*
 piscis, -is, *m. a fish*
 plācēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, *g. dat. please; - plācuit, or plācītum est, nobis vēnīre, to come pleased us, i.e., we resolved to come*
 placet, -iit or -itum est, -ēre, 2, *v. impers. it pleases*
 placidus, -a, -um, *adj. quiet*
 plānē, *adv. altogether*
 plāntīles, -īei, *f. level space*
 planta, -ae, *f. a sprout, plant*
 Plāto, -ōnis, *m. Plato*
 plebs, plebis, *f. the common people*
 plēnus, -a, -um, *full, g. gen. or*

abl.; vīno plēnus, filled with wine, i.e. intoxicated
 plērique, plēraque, plērīque, *most*
 plērumque, *adv. for the most part*
 Plīnius, -ii, *m. Pliny*
 plūit, plūit or plūvit, pluēre, 3, *v. impers. it rains*
 plurīmus, *see* Par. 68
 plus, -ūris, *more; (neut. pl. often used as noun) he spoke no more, nec plura dixit, see* Par. 72
 poenitentia, -ae, *f. penitence*
 poena, -ae, *f. penalty; dāre poenas (pl.) culpae, to pay the penalty of a fault*
 poenitēt, -itūit, -itēre, 2, *v. impers. it repents (me), see* Par. 219
 pōto, -ae, *m. poet*
 pollex, -icis, *m. thumb (with which the lyre was tuned)*
 pollicēor, -itus, 2, *promise (280)*
 Pompeius, -eī, *m. Pompey, the rival of Caesar*
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
 pondus, -ēris, *n. weight*
 pōnē, *prep. (g. acc.) behind*
 pōno, pōsūi, pōsitum, 3, *place, lay aside*
 pons, -ntis, *m. a bridge*
 pontifex, -icis, *m. a high priest*
 Pontius (Pilātus), -i, *m. Pontius Pilate*
 porcus, -i, *m. pig*
 porta, -ae, *f. a gate*
 porto, -avi, -itum, 1, *carry*
 portus, -ūs, *m. harbour*
 Pūrus, -i, *an Indian king conquered by Alexander the Great*
 posco, poposci, 3, *demand*
 possum, pōtūi, posse, *v. irreg. I am able, can (see pp. 126, 127)*
 post, *prep. (g. acc.) after; adr. (313) multis post annis, many years afterwards (N.B. never used like the conj. postquam)*
 postea, *adv. afterwards*

postis, -is, *m.* door-post
postpono, -posui, -positum, 3,
place after (*g. acc. and dat.*)

postquam, *conj.* when, after

postremus, *see* Par. 69

potūlo, -avi, -itum, 1, *I demand*

pōtens, -enti, *adj.* powerful

pōtentia, -ae, *f.* power

pōtentia, -ātī, *f.* power, authority

pōtior, -itū, -i, *v. dep. (g. abl.)*

I make myself master of, obtain

pōtiur...quam, *rather...than; vel*

pōtiur, *or rather (used when a*

writer slightly corrects his own

statement)

prae, *prep. (g. abl.) before, in com-*

parison with, by reason of, see

Par. 178

praebēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *I exhibit,*

afford: p. exemplum, set an

example; p. fructum, put forth

fruit

praeceptor, -oris, *m.* teacher

praeceptum, -i, *n.* precept, instruc-

tion, lesson [famous

praeclārus, -a, -um, renowned,

praeda, -ae, *f.* booty

praedūm, -i, *n.* form

praeco, -avi or -ii, -itum, 4, *I go*

before; p. verba, dictate words

praefero, -tūli, -lātum, *prefer*

praeſicio; -fēcī, -ſectum, 3, *set in*

command over (acc. and dat.)

praemitto, -misi, -misum, 3, *I*

send on before

praemium, -i, *n.* reward

praesens, -entis, *present; prae-*

sentem cum laudavi, I praised

him in his presence

praesidium, -i, *n.* guard, garrison

praestans, -antis, *excellent*

praesum, -fui, -esse, *v. irreg. (g.*

dat.) I am before, at the head

of [yond

praetēr, *prep. (g. acc.) beside, be-*

praetereō, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, v.

irreg. pass by

praetēritus, -a, -um, *past*

praetor, -oris, *m.* the praetor

praevēnio, -veni, -ventum, 4,

anticipate

prāvus, -a, -um, *perverse, depraved*

prēmo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I press*

prētium, -i, *n.* price, reward

primārius, -a, -um, *adj.* first rate,

eminent

prīmo, *adv.* at first

prīmus, -a, -um, *first (71)*

prīnceps, -ipis, *adj. and noun, first*

in rank, chief, emperor

prīncipātūs, -ūs, *m.* sovereignty

prior, -oris, *superior, before (71)*

g. abl.

pristīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* former,

olden

prīus, *adv.* sooner, before

prīusquam, *conj.* until, before,

sooner than

[behalf of

pro, *prep. (g. abl.) before, for, on*

prōbe, adv. rightly, properly

prōbitās, -ātis, *f.* honesty, integrity

prōbus, -a, -um, *honest, upright*

prūcella, -ae, *f.* storm

prūcērs, -um, *m. pl.* nobles

prūcērus, -a, -um, *tall*

prūditor, -oris, *m.* traitor

prūdo, -didi, -dītum, 3, *I hand*

down

prūduco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *bring for-*

ward

proelium, -i, *n.* battle

prōſecto, *adv.* assuredly, indeed

prōſero, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*

irreg. extend

prōſciētor, -fectus, 3, *dep.* set out

prōfundus, -a, -um, *adj.* deep

prūgigno, -gēnui, -gēnitum, 3,

bring forth, give birth to

prūgrēdior, -gressus, 3, *v. dep.*

advance

prōhibeo, -ui, -itum, 2, *hinder, pro-*

hibit, keep off

prōles, -is, *f.* offspring

prōmissum, -i, *n.* a promise

prōmissus, -a, -um, *hanging down, long (of hair)*
 prōmitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *promise*; p. mē venturum, *I promise to come (never p. venire) (280)*
 promptus, -a, -um, *ready*
 prōpē, *prep. (g. acc.) near*
 prōpē, *adv. near at hand, nearly*; p. ābest a nobis, *he is close to us*
 prōpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *hasten*
 prōpinquus, -a, -um, *adj. near*
 proptēr, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of*; more rarely, *near (183)*
 prōpulso, -avi, -atum, 1, *repel*
 Prōserpina, -ae, *f. Proserpine*
 prosper, -pēra, -pērum, *prosperous*
 prōsum, -fui, *prodesse, (g. dat.) I am of use*; non prōdest hūc dicēre, *it is of no use to say this (191)*
 prōtendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum, 3, *extend*
 prout, *conj. according as*
 prōvidēo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*
 prōvidus, -a, -um, *provident, foreseeing*
 prōvincia, -ae, *f. a section of the Roman Empire called a "province"*
 prōvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *challenge, provoke*
 proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last (Par. 69)*
 prūdēns, -ntis, *prudent*
 prūdētia, -ae, *f. knowledge, prudence*
 publicus, -a, -um, *public*
 pudet, -uit, or pudītum, -ēre, 2, *v. impers. it shames (Par. 219)*
 pūella, -ae, *f. girl*
 pūer, -ēri, *m. boy*
 pūeritia, -ae, *f. boyhood*
 pugna, -ae, *f. battle*
 pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight*
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*
 pulli, -ūrum, *m. pl. chickens*

pūmex, -īcis, *m. pumice-rock*
 Pānicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*
 pūnio, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, 4, *punish*
 pūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think*
 putresco, 3, *putrefy*
 Pygmālion, -ōnis, *m. Pygmalion*
 Pythāgoras, -ae, *m. Pythagoras*

Quadrīngenti, *see Par. 81*

quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3, *seek, ask*; quaerēbam mēcum, *I was enquiring with myself*; I asked him why, &c., quaesīvi, āb, ē, or dē, eo cūr, &c.
 quaestūs, -ūs, *m. gain, profit*
 quālis, -e, *pron. adj. of what sort? what sort of? of which sort? as*
 quam, *conj. or adv. than (62) (aft. comp.)*; hōc, quam turpe est! *how base it is! as, nōn tam valīdus est quam frāter eius, he is not so strong as his brother*; quam ehlōrimē, *as quickly as possible (327)*; quam qui, or ut (319)
 quamdiu, *conj. as long as*
 quamquam, *conj. although (mostly with indic.) (323)*
 quātvīs, *conj. however much, although (with subjunctive) (323)*
 quando? *interr. adv. when? also used in dependent questions (156)*
 quantus, -a, -um, *adj. how great a; tantus...quantus, so great a...as; (used as a Noun) quantum pecūniae, as much (of) money; adv. how much; quantum intērest, how great a difference is there! quanti? at how great a price? see Par. 283, 284*
 quārē? *interr. adv. and conj. why? on what account?*
 quartus, *see Par. 81*
 quāsi, *adv. as if, just as*
 quāterni, -ae, -a, *four a-piece (314)*
 quātio, *no perf., quassum, 3, shake, toss*
 quattuor, *see Par. 81*

-que, conj. and; used to combine two words of similar meaning into one phrase, *quidam populusque* (37)
 querens, -us, f. on oals [plain
 quæror, quæ-tur, 3 (v. dep.) com-
 qui, rel. pron. (107); often precedes
 (never follows) cum, and must
 then be referred demonstratively;
 quod cum intellexissem, when I
 perceived this; qui after quam
 (319); qui foll. by subjunct. (298);
 idem mi (319); see also quo

quæ, conj. because

quidam, quædam, quoddam, pron.
 adj. (neut. pron. quiddam), a cer-
 tain (310a); cardo quidam, a
 kind of hinge; see Eng. Vocab.
 "A"

quidem, conj. or adv. (67, 139)
 on the one hand, it is true, in-
 deed; quidem. autem (or vtro
 or sed), on the one hand ..but on
 the other hand; nē...quidem,
 not even (141); q. sometimes
 merely emphasizes a word, e.g.
 nunc quidem rides, "Now you
 laugh (but soon you will weep)"

quid (or quic) quatin, see quisquam
 quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet
 (pron. adj.) any you please;
 quolibet tempore, at any time he
 pleases (pron. neut. quidlibet)

quā (i.e. quī nōn, or quō nōn)
 conj. that not, (with subj.) (145,
 300) nēmo est quā ridet, there
 is no one that does not laugh;
 see also obstat and dūbium, with
 which it means "but that"

quingū, see Par. 81; quinquēns,
 adv. five times; quintus, see Par.
 81

quīs, quæ, quīd, who? see Par. 110,
 111; (after sī, nū, num) any
 one

quānam, quāenam, quidnam? em-
 phatic inter. pron. who? which?
 what?

quisquam, quæquam, quodquam
 (pron. neut. quicquam) anyone
 (used in neg. and compar. sen-
 tences, and in questions that
 expect the answer "no") (309)

quisquē, quæquē, quodquē, (pron.
 neut. quidquē or quicquē) each,
 every; fortissimus quisquē, each
 bravest man, i.e. all the bravest
 men; suam quisquē dōmum
 redierunt, they returned, each to
 his own home (where quisquē is
 not nom. to r., but in Apposition
 to the nom. to r.) (140, 310)

quisquis, quæquæ, quodquod
 (adj.), whoever; (pron. neut.)
 quidquid or quicquid, whatever;
 quidquid amicōrum, whatever
 (of) friends (part. gen.)

quīvis, quævis, quodvis (pronom.
 neut. quidvis) any you like; nōn
 cuiusvis est, it is not every one's
 luck (310)

quō, adv. (rel. and interr.) whither
 quo, conj. and adv. (1) quo citius,
 eo melius, by how much the
 quicker, by so much the better;
 (2) (with compar.) in order that
 (303); quōenim (179)

quōd, conj. because, that (sometimes
 foll. by subjunct., 293a)

quōminus, conj. that not, Par. 144;
 quīd obstat q. vñis? what
 prevents you from coming?

quōmodo? in what manner? how?
 (also used in dependent quest.)

quondam, adv. formerly

quōniā, conj. since

quōquē, see quisquē

quōquē, conj. also, too; (always
 after the word it modifies)

quōt, indecl. adj. how many

quōtidie (more correctly spelt cottī-
 die), adv. every day

quōtiens, adv. how many times;
 quōtiens...tōtiens, as many times
 as...so many times

quōtus, -a, -um ? *what (in number)?*

hōra est ? *what o'clock is it?*

quōtusquisque, *pron. q. est qui vēlit!* *how few there are who wish!* (sometimes in two words, e.g. quōtus enim quisque)

quum, *an incorrect form of cum*

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, 3, *shave*

Rādix, -icis, *f. root*

Rāpax, -ācis, *adj. rapacious*

Rāpidus, -a, -um, *rapid*

Rāpio, -ūi, raptum, -ēre, 3, *seize*

Rārō, *adv. seldom, rarely*

Rārus, -a, -um, *adj. rare*

Rātio, -iōnis, *f. reason*

Rātus, -a, -um, *thinking; see reor*

Rēcīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *take back; se recipiunt in castra, they retreat to the camp*

Rēcito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I read aloud*

Rēcāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry shame, protest*

Rēcōrdor, -ātus, 1, *call to mind (gen., but more often acc.)*

Rēcresco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *refresh*

Rectē, *adv. rightly*

Rectus, -a, -um, *adj. straight, right*

Rēcūpero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recover, get back* [*fuse*]

Rēcūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *object, re-reddo, reddidi, reddītum, 3, restore, render*

Rēdō, -ūi, -ātum, 4, *return*

Rēduco, -duxi, -ductum, 3, *bring back*

Rēfēro, rētūli or rettūli, rēlātum, 3, *v. irreg. I bring back, report, relate, reply; sometimes means "refer;" dē hāc rē ad Patres rēlātum est, a reference was made to the Senate on this point*

Rēfert (or rē-fert) *it matters, is of importance (conjugated like fēro, but impersonal); illud magni rēferre reor, I think that is of great importance (329)*

Rēgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *cast up, or back*

Rēgina, -ae, *f. a queen*

Rēgio, -ōnis, *f. region, district*

Regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *reign*

regnūm, -i, *n. a kingdom*

Rēgo, -xi, -otum, 3, *I rule*

Rēgūlus, -i, *m. Regulus*

Rēligio, -ōnis, *f. religious scruple,*

id rēligiōni hābēo, I consider this sacrilege, lit. for a religious scruple (268) [poets, religio]

Rēnūntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bring back word*

Rēlinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3, *leave, quit*

Rēmīniscor, 3, *I remember (203)*

Rēnūvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *make new again, restore*

Rēor, rātus, rēri, (v. dep.) *suppose, think*

Rēpērio, reppēri, rēpertum, 4, *find (after search); see invēnio*

Rēplēo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2, *fill up*

Rēs, rēi, *f. thing; rem bēnē gēro, I succeed; rēs Rōmānā, the affairs (or fortunes) of Rome; r.*

militāris, military matters; r.

fāmiliāris, one's household affairs, property; r. frāmētārīa, forage;

rū ipsa, or rē, in fact (adv. abl.)

rescindo, -scīdi, -scissum, 3, *tear open, or down; break down (a bridge)*

Rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3, (*g. dat.*)

resist; mihī rēsistitur, I am

being resisted [*guard*]

respicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *re-*

respondēo, -di, -sum, 2, *answer*

responsum, -i, *n. answer*

Rēs-publica, rēi-publīca, *f., the*

republic, the country, politics

restitūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *restore*

resto, -stīti, 1, *remain; spēs unā*

restat, one hope remains

Rūte, -is, *n. a net*

Rētexo, -texui, -textum, 3, *unweave*

rēŭneo, -tīnui, -tentum, 2, *keep back*

rēus, -i, *m. the accused, defendant*;

rēus factus sum, *I was accused*

rēvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recall*

rēverto, -ti, -sum, 3, *turn back, return (in the Pres. and Pres. derived tenses the Act form is rare: use rēvertor)*

rēvertor, -versus, 3, *v. dep. I turn back, return*

rex, rēgis, *m. king*

Rhēnus, -i, *m. the Rhine*

rhētōrica, -ae, *f. rhetoric*

Rhōdānus, -i, *m. the Rhone*

Rhōdus, -i, *f. Rhodes*

rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2, *laugh; laugh at (g. acc.)*

rīpa, -ae, *f. bank, shore*

rīsūs, ūs, *laughter, a laugh*

rōbur, -oris, *n. strength*

rōgātio, -iōnis, *f. (see rōgo) a bill proposed to the people; ferre rōgātīōnem, to bring forward a bill*

rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask; (used of asking the people whether they will pass a bill) hence rōgāre lēgem, to bring forward a bill*

Rōma, -ae, *f. Rome*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*

Rōmulus, -i, *m. Romulus*

rōsa, -ae, *f. a rose*

rūbeo, -ui, 2, *blush*

rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*

rūbēta, -ōrum, *n. pl. bramble-beds; rūbus, -i, m. bramble*

rūdis, -e, *raw, ignorant (g. gen.)*

rūpēs, -is, *f. a rock*

rūs, rūris, *n. country; rūri (Par. 265) in the country*

rusticus, -a, -um, *rustic*

Sācer, -era, -crum, *sacred*

sācerdōs, -ōtis, *m. priest*

saepē, *adv. often*

saepēnūmēro, *adv. oftentimes*

saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4, *hedge in, fence round*

saepissimē, *adv. very often*

saevus, -a, -um, *cruel, fierce*

sāgācītās, -ātis, *f. keen scent, sagacity; sāgax, -ācis, sagacious*

sāgitta, -ae, *f. an arrow*

salto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dance*

salūber, -bris, -bre, *healthful*

sālūs, -ūtis, *f. safety*

salūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *salute*

salvēo, -ēre, 2, *I am well; salvē, be well, i.e. good morning!*

salvus, -a, -um, *adj. safe*

Samnītes, -ium, *m. pl. the Samnites*

sancio, sanxi, sanctum, 4, *enact; sancio nē quis absit, I enact that no one shall be absent*

sānē, *adv. (lit. soberly, in sober earnest) certainly*

sanguis, -inis, *m. blood*

sāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *heal*

sānus, -a, -um, *healthy*

sāpiens, -ntis, *wise; sāpiēter, adv. wisely*

sāpiēntia, -ae, *f. wisdom*

sāpio, -ivi and -ii, 3, *savour of (g. acc.); am wise*

sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4, *patch, mend*

sātis, *adv. enough, sufficiently; (used as a noun) sātis patriae dātum est, enough has been given to the claims of your country*

saxum, -i, *n. rock*

scēlus, -ēris, *n. crime*

scēna, -ae, *f. the stage of a theatre*

sciēntia, -ae, *f. knowledge*

scindo, scidi, scissum, 3, *rend, tear*

sciō, -ii or -ivi, -itum, 4, *I know*

Scipio, -ōnis, *m. Scipio*

scriba, -ae, *m. scribe, clerk*

scribo, -psi, -ptum, 3, *write; s.*

lēges, *I draw up laws*

scriptor, -ōris, *m. a writer, author*

scūtum, -i, *n. shield*

Scythia, -ae, *m. a Scythian*

sē, *sec* Par. 94, 218, 305, 306; sēcum, *see* Par. 179.

sēcundus, -a, -um, *second, prosperous*; sēcundum, *prep. (g. acc.) following, in accordance with*

sēcūris, -is, *f. (acc. -im), axe*; the axes and rods (fasces) were the signs of the consul's office

sēd, *conj. but (on the other hand)*; non solum...sed etiam, *not only... but also*

sēdō, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I sit*

sēdēs, -is, *f. seat, abode*

sēditiō, -ionis, *f. rebellion, sedition*

sēgēs, sēgētis, *f. cornfield, harvest*

segnitēs, -ei, *f. slothfulness*

sēmēl, *adv. once (for all)*

semper, *adv. always, ever*

senātorius, -a, -um, *senatorial*

sēnātus, -ūs, *m. the senate*

sēnectus, -ūtis, *f. old age*

sēnex, sēnis, *m. old man*

sēnior, *see* Par. 69

sensus, -ūs, *m. a sense*

sententia, -ae, *f. opinion*

sentio, -si, -sum, 4, *feel, perceive*

sēpēlio, sēpēliui and -iī, sēpultum, 4, *bury*

September, -bris, -bre, *of September*; *see* Par. 84; septuāgēsimus (81)

sēquor, sēcūtus, 3, *v. dep. follow*

sērēnus, -a, -um, *adj. clear*

sermo, -ōnis, *m. a discourse*

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3, *plant, sow*

sēro, *late*; sērius, *too late*

serpens, -ntis, *f. serpent*

sertum, -i, *n. garland*

sērus, -a, -um, *late*

servio, -iī, -itum, 4, *I am a slave to, I serve (g. dat.)*

servitūs, -ūtis, *f. slavery*

servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *watch, preserve*; s. fidem, *I keep my word*

servus, -i, *m. slave*

sēsē, *an emphatic form of sē*

seu, *conj. whether*; seu...seu,

whether...or; (not used like utrum an...in dep. sentences)

sēvūrus, -a, -um, *adj. severe*

sī, *conj. if* (125); sī quis, sī qui, *if any man, any men* (294); *with pres. and imperf. subj. (295)*

sic, *adv. thus, so*

Sicilia, -ae, *f. Sicily*

sīdus, -ēris, *n. star*

signum, -i, *n. a sign, signal*

silentium, -iī, *n. silence*

silva, -ae, *f. a wood* [66, 60]

similis, -e, *(g. gen. or dat.) like*

simul, *adv. at the same time*; simul

...simul, *at once...and*

simulac, *adv. as soon as*

simulacrum, -i, *n. an image, statue*

simulatio, -ōnis, *f. a pretence*

simulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *pretend*

sine, *prep. (g. abl.) without*

singuli, -ae, -a, *one a-piece, one by one* (77, 314)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*

sino, sivi, situm, 3, *suffer*

sinūs, -ūs, *m. a fold (of the garment, especially about the breast)*; pocket

sitis, -is, *f. (acc. -im) thirst*; siti mōri, *to die of (lit. with) thirst*

sive, *conj. whether*; sive...sive, *whether...or, (not used like utrum...an in Dependent Questions)*; sive loquor, sive taceo, patri nōn plūcēo, *whether I speak or hold my tongue, I cannot please my father.*

sōcer, -ēri, *m. father-in-law*

sōcius, -i, *m. a partner, ally, companion*

Sōcratēs, -is, *m. Socrates*

sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*

sōlēo, -ītus sum, -ēre, 2, *v. n. I am accustomed*

sōlitus, -a, -um, *customary*

Sōlōn, -ōnis, *m. Solon*

sollertia, -ae, *f. skill, subtlety*

sōlum, -i, *n. ground, soil*

solum, *adv. only, alone*
 solus, -a, -um, *adj. gen. sing. -ūs, dat. -ī, alone*
 solvo, solvi, solutum, 3, *I loosen, pay; s. famem, I break my fast; inipar solvendo sum, I am not equal to paying, i.e. insolvent*
 sonitus, -is, *m. sleep*
 sonitus, -is, *m. a sound, noise*
 sonus, -antis, *guilty*
 sonus, -is, *m., sound*
 Sophocles, -is, *m. Sophocles*
 sopor, -oris, *m. slumber*
 soror, -oris, *f. sister*
 soror, -tis, *f. lot, fate*
 sortior, -ortitus, 4, *dep. draw lots*
 Sparta, -ae, *f. Sparta*
 spectat, -at, *f. appearance (182)*
 speculo, -avi, -atum, 1, *look at*
 speculator, -atus, 1, *v. dep. I spy out*
 specus, -us, *m. cave*
 sperno, speravi, speratum, 3, *despise*
 spero, -avi, -atum, 1, *I hope*
 spes, -is, *f. hope*
 spiro, -avi, -atum, 1, *breathe*
 spiritus, -us, *m. breath*
 splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid, bright*
 splendor, -oris, *m. brightness*
 spolia, -orum, *n. pl. spoils*
 spondeo, spondendi, sponsum, 2, *pledge, promise to pay, betroth*
 sponte (*adv. phrase*) meū, tuū, &c., *of my, your, &c., own accord*
 statim, *adv. immediately*
 statio, -onis, *f. a post, station*
 statua, -ae, *f. statue*
 statuo, -ui, -atum, 3, *determine*
 stella, -ae, *f. a star*
 sterto, -tui, 3, *snore*
 stipendium, -ii, *n. (military) pay*
 sto, steti, statum, 1, *I stand, abide by (with abl. or in and abl.) stare promissis, to abide by one's promises; a Tullio stare, to side with Tullius; magno pretio stat, it costs a great price*
 strenue, *adv. vigorously*

strenuus, -a, -um, *vigorous (68b)*
 strepitus, -us, *m. noise, din*
 struo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *pile up, construct*
 studio, -ui, 2, *I am eager, zealous*
 studiosus, -a, -um, *adj. zealous, eager after (g. gen.)*
 studium, -ii, *n. zeal, a pursuit, study*
 stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
 suadeo, -asi, -asum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *advise, persuade*
 suavis, -e, *adj. sweet, delightful*
 sub, *prep. (g. abl. or acc.) up to, under; (of time) about (180)*
 subeo, -ii, -itum (243), *go up to*
 subito, *adv. suddenly*
 subitus, -a, -um, *sudden*
 subsequor, -ctus, 3, *follow up*
 subsum, *no perf., v. irreg. I am under, amongst. [dat.] help*
 subvenio, -veni, -ventum, 4, (*g.*) *succedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, follow, turn out; res mihi bene successit, the matter turned out well for me*
 Suevi, -orum, *the Suevi*
 sufficio, -feci, -fectum, 3, *suffice (g. dat.)*
 sum, *I am, p. 79, Par. 268, 142d*
 sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *take, assume*
 summus, -a, -um, (69) *highest, utmost; summā celeritatē, with all speed; summus mons, the highest part of the mountain*
 super, *prep. (g. acc. or abl.) over, upon, concerning (180)*
 superbia, -ae, *f. pride*
 superbus, -a, -um, *proud*
 supero, -avi, -atum, 1, *overcome*
 supersum, -fui, -cso, *v. irreg. I remain over, survive (g. dat.)*
 superus, -a, -um, *adj. upper (69)*
 suppedito, -avi, -atum, 1, *supply*
 supplex, -icis, *adj. suppliant (47, 48)*
 supplicium, -ii, *n. punishment*
 supra, *prep. (g. acc.) above*

suprēmus, -a, -um, *superl. of sū-*
pērus, highest; (of time) last
 surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3, *rise*
 suscipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *under-*
take
 suspicio, -iōnis, *f. suspicion*
 sustento, 1, *sustain*
 sūus, -a, -um, (98 and p. 328); suis
impērat, he orders his (men) (34)
 Sŷria, -ae, *f. Syria*

Tābernāculum, -i, *n. tent*
 tābesco, -ui, 3, *I decay*
 tāctō, -tū, -itum, 2, *I am silent*
 taedēt, -dūit or pertaesum est, *v.*
impers. it disgusts, wearies (219)
 taeter, -tra, -um, *foul*
 tālentum, -i, *a talent, i.e. a sum*
of money, £240
 tālis, -e, *of, such*
 tam, *adv. s. a degree, such;*
tam prāve, how depraved
conduct; very, how longum
iter, this very long journey (228)
 tāmen, *conj. yet, however*
 tamquam, *conj. just as; tū t. thē-*
saurum hābēo, I consider you as
a treasure; t. sī consul esset,
just as if he were consul
 tandē, *at last; cur (or quid) tan-*
dē? why indeed? pray why?
 tantum, *adv. (so much and no more,*
heuce) only; nōmīnū tantum
mīhī nōtus est, he is known to
me by name and no more; unus
tantum, only one
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great (a); (as*
a noun) tantum pecūniāe, so
much (of) money; (often used,
after a Pron., for "great") haec
tanta cūlāmītās, this great calam-
ity; tanti, see Par. 283, 284; tan-
tum...quantum, as much...as
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow*
 Tarquīnius, -i, *m. Tarquin*
 Tartāreus, -a, -um, *Tartarcan, be-*
longing to Tartarus, the region

of the punishment of the wicked
dead
 Taurus, -i, *m. Mount Taurus*
 taurus, -i, *m. a bull*
 tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I cover*
 tellus, -ūris, *f. earth, the goddess*
Earth
 tēlum, -i, *n. dart, missile [ness*
tēmērītās, -ātis, f. recklessness, rash-
tempestās, -ātis, f. tempest
 templum, -i, *n. temple*
 tempus, -ōris, *n. time; tempōri*
cēdēro, to yield to circumstances
 tēnēo, -tūi, tentum, 2, *I hold, re-*
tain
 tēner, -ōra, -erum, *tender, soft*
 tēnuis, -e, *thin*
 tēnūs, *prep. (g. abl.) as far as;*
follows its case); verbo tēnus,
so far as words go
 tergum, -i, *n. back; terga dant*
mīhī, they flee before me
 terni, -ae, -a, *three a-piece (314)*
 tēro, trivi, tritum, 3 *rub, waste;*
tempus tērimus, we are wasting
time
 terra, -ae, *f. the earth, land; torrū*
marique, by sea and land (ad-
verbial local abl.)
 terrēo, -tūi, -itum, 2, *terrify,*
frighten
 terror, -ōris, *m. terror, alarm*
 tertius, -a, -um, *see Par. 81*
 tostāmentum, -i, *n. will, testament*
 testis, -is, *m. witness*
 tostor, -tūus, 1, *testify*
 Thēmistoclēs, -is, *m. Themistocles*
 Thrāx, Thrācis, *m. a Thracian;*
Thracium est, it is the mark of,
i.e. like, Thracians
 Tībērius, -ii, *m. Tiberius, the name*
of the second Roman emperor,
Tiberius Caesar
 tignārius, -a, -um, *having to do with*
beams; fāber t. builder, carpenter
 tigris, -is, or -īdis, *c. a tiger,*
tigress

timō, -ūi, 2, *fear*
 timīdus, -a, -um, *adj. timid*
 timor, -ōris, *m. fear*
 tolēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *endure*
 tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3, *raise, take away; tollunt risum, clāmōrem, &c. they raise a laugh, shout, &c.*
 Tōnans, -ntis, *m. the Thunderer, a name of Jupiter*
 tōnat, -ūt, -āre, 1, *v. impers. it thunders*
 tonsor, -ōris, *m. barber*
 torrēo, torruī, tostum, 2, *parch, roast*
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many; hao tot cūlāmītātes, these numerous calamities*
 tōtiens, *adv. so many times*
 tōtus, -a, -um, *adj. whole, all (85)*
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*
 tracto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I handle, deal with*
 trādo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *deliver; traditum est, it has been handed down*
 tradūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead across*
 trāho, -āxi, -actum, 3, *I draw, drag*
 trajīcio, (*also spell trālcio*) *same as transjicio; (1) throw across, carry across, trājicio exercitum, I lead an army across; (2) carry myself across, i.e. cross, trājicio flūmen, I cross a stream*
 tranquillū, -a, -um, *adj. calm*
 trans, *prep. g. acc. across*
 Transalpīnus, -a, -um, *beyond the Alps* [*over*
 transēo, -ii, -itum, 4, (241) *cross*
 transfigo, -fixi, -fixum, 3, *transfix*
 transjicio, *see trajicio*
 transversus, -a, -um, *turned across; t. digītus or unguis, a finger's, or nail's breadth* [*piece*
 trēcēni, -ae, -a, *three hundred a-*
 trēcēnti, -ae, -o, *three hundred*

trēmo, trēmui, tremītum, 3, *tremble*
 trēs, tria, *see Par. 68*
 tribūnus, -i, *m. tribune*
 tribūo, -ūi, -ātum, 3, *give, assign*
 tribus, -ūs, *f. tribe*
 tribūtum, -i, *n. tribute*
 triennium, -i, *n. three years*
 trīni, -ae, -a, *three (used with nouns like littērae) (318)*
 tristis, -e, *sad*
 trīumpho, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enjoy a triumph, i.e. a triumphal procession granted by the Romans to distinguished generals*
 Trōja, -ae, *f. Troy*
 Trōjānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*
 tū, *see p. 45*
 tūba, -ae, *f. trumpet*
 tūcor, tūtus, 2, *guard, protect*
 Tullia, -iae, *f.*
 Tullius, -i, *m.*
 tum, *adv. conj. then during that time; cum...tum, not only ...but also (317)*
 tūmidus, -a, -um, *swelling, swollen*
 tunc, *adv. then, at that time*
 turba, -ae, *f. crowd*
 turbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *disturb, throw into confusion; turbātum est, a riot was made*
 turbulētus, -a, -um, *turbulent*
 tardus, -i, *m. thrush*
 turpis, -o, *base, disgraceful*
 turpītudo, -inis, *f. disgrace*
 turris, -is, *f. tower*
 tussis, -is, *f. (acc. -im, abl. -i,) cough*
 tuto, *adv. safely; -us, -a, -um, safe*
 tūus, -a, -um, *pron. adj. thy, thine*
 tyrannus, -i, *m. despot, tyrant*
 Ūbi, *adv. where*
 ulciscor, ultūs, 3 (*v. dep.*) *avenge*
 ullus, -a, -um, *adj. (gen. sing. -ūs, dat. sing. -ī), any (85, 87, 309)*
 ulmus, -i, *f. elm*

ultimus, -a, -um, *see* Par. 69
ultrā, *prep. g. acc. on the farther
side of, beyond*

Ūlyssēs, -is, *m. Ulysses*

uncīa, -ae, *f. inch*

unda, -ae, *water*

unguis, -is, *m. nail*

unquam, *adv. at any time, ever*

unā, *at the same time or place;
together*

unicē, *adv. singularly*

ūnus, -a, -um, *adj. (74), one; in tē
ūno, in you alone (96); spēs
quam ūnam habūi, the only hope
I had; omnes ad ūnum, all to
urbs, urbis, f. city [a man*

uro, ussi, ustum, 3, *burn*

ūt, *conj. that, in order that; often
rendered by Eng. "to" (Par.
143); ut non (when to be used for
nē) Par. 296; (with indic., "when,"
"as")*

ūter, -rā, -rum (*gen. -rūs, dat.
-rī*), *which of two? n. hōrum,
which of these two (85)? ūter-
quē, utrāque, utrūque, either,
both; dux ūterquē (sing.) both
leaders*

ūtilis, -e, *useful*

ūtilitās, -ātis, *f. utility, service*

ūtinam! *conj. O that, would that!
(g. subj., see Par. 330)*

utor, usus, 3, *v. dep. I use (207)*

utrimque, *adv. on both sides*

utrum, *conj. whether (171, 174)*

uxor, -ōris, *f. a wife*

Vāoŭus, -a, -um, *empty of (g. abl.)
valdē (i.e. validē) adv. strongly,
exceedingly*

vālēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *I am in good
health; vālēte, farewell!*

vālētūdo, -inis, *f. health*

vālīdus, -a, -um, *strong*

vallis, -is, *f. a valley*

vallum, -i, *n. the camp palisade
composed of valli (see vallus)*

vallus, -i, *the stake borne by each
Roman soldier for the formation
of the vallum [hood*

vānītās, -itās, *f. emptiness, false-*

vārius, -a, -um, *different, various*

vastus, -a, -um, *vast*

vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lay waste*

vē, *conj. or (an enclitic form of vēr)*

vactigāl, -ālis, *n. a tax*

vēhēmēns, -ntis, *vehement, warm*

vēhēmēnter, *adv. vehemently,
warmly; -issimū, very warmly*

vēhēmēntia, -ae, *f. vehemence,
passion [ride)*

vēho, -xi, -ctum, 3, *carry (pass.*

vēr, *or (if you like), Par. 157a; hic*

discessus vēr pōtius fūga, *this*

departure or rather (if you will

have strict correctness) flight;

even, hūc vēr pūcro faciē est,

this is easy even for a boy (141a);

(with superl.) very, Stoicōrum

vēr maximus est, *he is the very*

greatest of the Stoics

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj. swift*

vēnātor, -ōris, *m. hunter*

vendo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *sell*

vēnēnātus, -a, -um, *poisoned*

vēnēnum, -i, *n. poison*

vēnērōr, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. reverence,*

worship

vēnīa, -ae, *f. pardon, dūre veniam*

ei, *to pardon him*

vēnīo, vēni, ventum, 4, *I come*

vēnor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. I hunt*

venter, -tris, *m. the stomach*

ventīto, -āvi, 1, *v. freq. I come*

frequently

ventus, -i, *m. the wind*

Vēnūs, -ēris, *f. Venus*

vēr, vērīs, *n. the spring*

verber, -ēris, *n. lash, stripe*

verbum, -i, *n. word; verbo tēnus,*

so far as words go

vērē, *adv. truthfully, accurately*

vērēor, -ītus, 2, *fear, reverence*

(301)

Vergīlius, -i, *m.* Virgil
 vērisimilis, -e, *adj.* likely, probable
 vēritās, -ātis, *f.* truth
 vēro, *conj.* however, truly (139a)
 versus, -ūs, *m.* line, verse
 versūs, *prep.* with *acc.* towards
 (only of place or direction)
 vertēx, -icis, *m.* top
 verto, verti, versum, 3, turn; in
 fugam vertere, to put to flight
 vērus, -a, -um, true [abl.]
 vescor, 3, *v. dep.* feed on (*g.*)
 vesper, -p̄ri, *m.* evening
 vesperascit, -āvit. -ascēro, *v.*
imperz. evening approaches
 Vesta, -ae, *f.* Vesta, the goddess of
 fire and the hearth
 vēstālis, -e, Vēstal, belonging to
 Vesta
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours
 vēstimentum, -i, *n.* clothing
 vēstīo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, clothe
 vēstis, -is, *f.* clothing, garment
 vēstītus, -ūs, *m.* clothing
 vētus, vētēria, old (61)
 vexo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I vex, harass
 vī, see vīs
 vīa, -ae, *f.* way, road
 victor, -ōrie, *m.* conqueror
 victōria, -ae, *f.* victory
 victus, -a, -um, *pass. part.* of vinco
 vicus, -i, *m.* village
 vidēo, vīdi, vīsum, 2, see (in passive)
 seem, appear; quid tibi videtur?
 What seems (good) to you, i.e.
 what do you think?
 vīgīl, *gen.* -īlis, watchful (47)
 vīgīlia, -ae, *f.* night watch; the
 night from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M. was
 divided into four "watches"
 vīgīlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I watch, I
 am awake
 vīlis, -e, *adj.* cheap, common
 vincio, -nxi, -nctum, 4, bind
 vinco, vici, victum, 3, conquer
 vincūlum, -i, *n.* a chain, bond

vīnētum, -i, *n.* vineyard, vines
 vīnum, -i, *n.* wine
 violā, -ae, *f.* violet
 vīolentia, -ae, *f.* violence
 vīres, -ūm, *f. pl.* strength; see vīs
 Virgiliūs, -ii, see Vergīlius
 vīrga, -ae, *f.* rod, stick
 vīrgo, -īnis, *f.* maiden
 vīr, vīri, *m.* hero, man
 vīrga, -ae, *f.* twig, rod, stick
 vīridis, -e, green
 virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* valour, virtue
 vīs, *irreg.* see Par. 311; force,
 violence, power, efficacy; *pl.* vīres,
 strength; see also vōlo, p. 238
 vīso, -vīsi, 3, (*v. freq.*) come to
 see, visit
 vīsus, -ūs, *m.* sight
 vīta, -ae, *f.* life
 vītiosus, -a, -um, full of vice,
 vicious
 vītis, -is, *f.* vine
 vītium, -i, *n.* vice, fault; dāro
 vītio, to impute as a fault (Par.
 268)
 vīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, avoid
 vītupēro, -āvi, -ātum, revile
 vīvo, vixi, victum, 3, live
 vix, *adv.* scarcely
 vōlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I fly
 vōlo, vōlūi, vōllē, *v. irreg.* I wish,
 am willing; idem velle, to wish
 for the same thing (pp. 128-130)
 vōluntas, -ātis, *f.* a wish, will
 vōluptas, -tātis, *f.* pleasure
 vōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, devout
 vos, see p. 45.
 vox, vōcis, *f.* a voice
 Vulcānus, -i, *m.* Vulcan
 vulnēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, wound
 vulnus, -ēris, *n.* a wound
 vulpēs, -is, *f.* fox
 vultur, -ūris, *m.* a vulture
 vultus, -ūs, *m.* countenance, looks
 Xēnūphōn, -ontis, *m.* Xenophon
 Xerxēs, -is, *m.* Xerxes

APPENDIX XI.

VOCABULARY—II.

ENGLISH INTO LATIN.¹

A (i.e. a certain), quidam, quendam, quoddam (*pron. neut. quidam*); a man said to me, quidam mihi dixit; he had a wonderful power of speaking, erat homini inira quendam dicendi facultas ability (mental), ingenium, -i, n. able, to be, possum, potui, posso; see Par. 229
abode, sedes, -is, f.
abound, abundo, 1
about (around), circum (*g. acc.; also adv.*); (concerning) de (*g. abl.*); (nearly) fere
above, super (*g. acc. and abl.*); from above, desuper, adv.
abroad (rest) foris; (motion) foras
absent, to be, absum, fui, fuisse; absent, adj. absens, -ntis
abstain from, abstinere, -ui, -tentum, 2 (*g. abl.*)
abundantly, abundanter
accept, accipio, -cepi, -ceptum, 3
acceptable, gratus, -a, -um
accident, casus, -us, m.; by accident, casu; forte (*adv.*)
accompany, comitor, 1, dep.

accomplish, perficio, -feci, -fectum, 3; without accomplishing anything, re infecta
accord, of his, my own accord, sponte sua, mei, &c.
accordingly, itaque, igitur (*adv.*). N.B. igitur should not stand first in a clause
account, on account of, propter, or ob, prep. *g. acc.*; on that account, ob id, ideo
accurate (of things, not persons), accuratus, -a, -um
accusation, crimen, -inis, n.
accuse, accuso, 1
accused (man), the, reus, -i, m.
accuser, accusator, -oris, m. [dep.
accustomed, to be, soleo, solitus, 2
Achilles, Achilles, -is, m.
acknowledge, agnosco, -novi, -nitum, 3
acquainted with, to be, scire to know
acquire, to, adipiscor, adeptus, 3, dep.
acquit, absolvo, -vi, -utum, 3; (with *g. of charge*, Par. 290)
acre, iuger, -eris, n.
across, trans (*g. acc.*)

¹ In this Vocabulary it has not been thought necessary to write the terminations of the regular Conjugations 1, 2, and 4, i.e. -vi, -itum; -ui, -itum; -vi, itum.

act, an, factum, -i, n.; act, to, ago, ēgi, actum, 3
 Actium, Actium, -i, n.
 active, strenuus, -a, -um
 actor, an, mīmus, -i, m.
 adapted, aptus, -a, um
 add, addo, -didi, -ditum, 3
 address, allūquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
 admire, admīror, 1, dep.
 admiration, admīratio, -onis, f.
 admit, adīmitto, -mīi, -missum, 3;
 (confess) confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.
 admonish, admōneo, -ni, -itum, 2
 adorn, orno, 1
 advance, to, prōgrēdior, -gressus, 3, dep.; prōcedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
 advantage, commōdum, -i, n.
 adverse, adversus, -a, -um; iniquus, -a, -um
 adversity, res adversa
 advice, consilium, -i, n.; by my, his, advice, inī, co, auctōre (197)
 advise, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)
 Aetna, Aetna, -ae, f.
 affair, res, rei, f.
 affection, caritās, -ātis, f.; filial affection, pietās, -itās, f.
 affectionate, carus, -a, -um; pius, -a, -um
 affirm, asserō, 1; affirmo, 1
 afflict, angō, 3; vexo, 1
 afford, praebeo, -ui, -itum, 2
 afraid, to be, timeo, 2; vereor, veritus, 2, dep. (constr. Par. 301)
 Africa, Africa, -ae, f.
 after, post (g. acc.); after (conj.), postquam, (1) foll. by perf., except where (2) the interval is defined; (1) after he had come, postquam venit; (2) ten days after he had come, decimo die postquam venerat
 afterwards, postea; a few days afterwards, paucis post diebus (318)
 again, rursus, (iterum, a second

time); again and again, iterum atque iterum
 against, contra, adversus, in (all g. acc.); he was sent against the enemy, missus est adversus hostes; against the laws, contra jus; against one's will, invitus, -a, -um; she came a. &c. invita venit
 Agamemnon, Agamemnon, -onis, m.
 age, aetas, -atis, f.; old age, senectus, -utis, f.; age, an, saeculum, -i, n.
 Agesilaus, Agesilaus, -i, m.
 ago, abhinc (with acc. or abl.); two years ago, abhinc biennio, or biennium
 agree, consentio, -sensi, -sensus, 4 (foll. by dat., or cum)
 agreeable, iucundus, -a, -um
 agreement, consensus, -us, m.
 Ah! interject. O! foll. by acc.; Ah, the lucky fellow! O felicem hominem!
 aid, auxilium, -ii, n.; aid, to, subvenio, -veni, -vontum, 4
 air, aer, aeris, m.
 Ajax, Ajax, -jācis, m.
 alas! heu! or eheu!
 Alban, Albanus, -a, -um
 Alexander, Alexander, -dri, m.
 alliance, societas, -atis, f.
 alien, alienus, -a, -um
 alike, pariter
 alive, vivus, -a, -um
 all, omnis, -o; (all) men, omnes; from all sides, undique; all the best citizens, optimus quisque civium; all the food we had, was consumed, quidquid cibi nobis fuerat, consumptum est
 allow, sino, sivi, situm, 3
 allure, allicio, -lexi, -lectum, 3
 ally, socius, -i, m.
 almost, paene, fere
 alone, solus, -a, -um; unus, -a, -um (85); Cato alone thought otherwise, Catoni uni aliter visum est

along (*prep.*), per (*g. acc.*)

Alps, Alpes, -ium, f. pl.

already, jam

also, (1) *etiam*, mostly before, (2) *quōquē*, *always after*, the word modified; not only...but also, *nōn solum...sed etiam*, or, *cum...tum*

altar, *ara*, -ae, f.

altogether, *omnino*

always, *semper*

ambassador, *lēgātus*, -i, m.

ambush, *insidiae*, -arum, f.

amiss, *something amiss has happened to him*, *aliquid ei hemānitus accidit*

among, *inter* (*g. acc.*); among the Romans, *apud Romanos*; they are fighting amongst one another, *inter se pugnant*

ancestors, *māiores*, -um, m. pl.

ancient, *antiquus*, -a, -um; *priscus*, -a, -um; *vētus*, -eris; among the ancients, *apud antiquos*

and, *et*; *atquē*; -*quē* (Par. 37); and no one, *neque*, nothing, &c., *nec quisquam*, *unquam*, *quidquam*, &c.

anger, *ira*, -ae, f.; in or with a., *irācundē*, *summā irā*, or *eum irā* (Par. 276)

angry, to be, *iraseor*, *irātus*, 3, dep.; angry, *irātus*, -a, -um

animal, *animal*, -alis, n.; wild animal, *fēra*, -ae, f.

announce, *nuntio*, 1

annually, *quōtannis*

another, *alius*, -a, -ud; the other, *alter*, -ēra, -ērūm, (Par. 86)

answer, to, *respondeo*, -di, -nsum, 2 (*g. dat. of pers.*); answer, an, *responsum*, -i, n.; to make answer, *respondere*; I was answered, *responsum est mihi*

Antonius, *Antōnius*, -i, m.

any, *any one* (in neg. compar. and interrog. sentences), *quisquam* or

ullus (309); (with num, si, nē) *quīs* (294); *any* (you please), *quilibet*, *quellibet*, *quodlibet*, (*pron. neut.*, *quidlibet*); the enemy can attack us at any time (they please), *quodlibet tempore*

anywhere, *usquam*

apiece, (trans. by distributive numeral, see Par. 77), he gave us three denarii apiece, *nōbis ternos dēnārios dedit*

Apollo, *Apollō*, -inis, m. [-ni, 2

appear, *videor*, *visus*, 2; appāreo,

appearance, *spēcies*, -ei, f.

appease, *plāco*, 1

apple, *pōnum*, -i, n.; mālum, -i, n.

appoint, *constituo*, -ui, -itum, 3

approach, to, *ūdeo*, -ii, -itum, (*fol. by acc.*); accēdo, -ecessi, -cessum, 3, (*fol. by ad*); an, *adītus*, -ūs, m.

approve, *prōbo*, 1; a man of approved excellence, *vir spectatē (or, more often, -ā) virtutis (or -ē)*

apt, *aptus*, -a, -um

Archimedes, *Archimēdēs*, -is, m.

ardour, ardor, -ūris, m.

Argos, *Argi*, -ūrum, m.

Arion, *Arion*, -ōnis, m.

Arioristus, *Arioristus*, -i, m.

arise, *orior*, *ortus*, 4, dep.; (from bed, seat, &c.) *surgo*, *surrexi*, *surrectum*, 3

Aristippus, *Aristippus*, -i, m.

arm, an, *brāchium*, -i, n.; arm, to, *armo*, 1

armed, *armātus*, -a, -um

arms (military), *arma*, -ūrum, n.

army, *exercitus*, -ūs, m., (*adv.*)

around, *circum* (*prep. g. acc.*, and

Arpinum, *Arpinum*, -i, n.

arrange, *digero*, -gessi, -gestum, 3

arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, m.

arrive, *pervēnio*, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*fol. by ad*); we arrived at Rome, *Rōmam pervēnimus* (249)

arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.

art, ars, -tis, f.

as, ut; *as if*, tanquam, quasi; *as long as*, donec; *as far as*, tennus (g. abl.); *as*, (often trans. by Apposition), you do many things, *as a boy, which you will not do, as an old man*, multa, puer, facis, quae, senex, non facies; *as quickly as possible*, quam celerim: (sometimes rel. pron.) *he is the same as he always was*, idem est qui (or ac) semper fuit; *for the same price as*, i.e., *for which*, eodem pretio quo; ("*as*" is sometimes rend. by the dat. of purpose) *he sent a legion as reinforcement*, misit legionem sub-idiō (266); *as much money as*, tantum pecuniae quantum

ascend, ascende, -ndi, -nsum, 3

ascertain, cognosco, cognovi, cognitum, 3; comperto, comperti, compertum, 1

ashamed, to be, pudet, -uit, 2 (impers.); *I am ashamed of doing, having done*, pudet me facere, fecisse (219)

Asia, Asia, -ae, f.

ask, to, (1) meaning question, rogo, 1; interrōgo, 1; quaero, -sivi, -situm, 3 (with ex, de, or a); (2) meaning beg, rogo, 1; oro, 1 (143); (peace) pacem petoro; *he was asked his opinion*, sententiam rogatus est

ass, asinus, -i, m.

assassin, sicarius, -i, m.

assault, to, oppugno, 1; assault, an, impetus, -us, m.

assemble, convenio, -vni, -ventum, 4 (intrans.); convoco, 1 (trans.)

assembly, concilium, -ii, n; conventus, -us, m.

assist, subvenio, -vni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)

assistance, auxilium, -i, n.

assume (take), sumo, sumpsit, sumptum, 3

astonishment, admiratio, -onis, f.

at, apud (g. acc.); ad (g. acc.);

at all, omnino; at least, saltem;

at last, at length, tandem, aliquando;

at once, simul, statim

Athens, Athenae, -arum, f. pl.

Athenian, Atheniensis, -o

attack, to, aggredior, gressus, 3,

dep.; oppugno, 1 (to attack a town); attack, an, impetus, -us, m.

attempt, to, conor, 1, dep. (this v. is an acc. to the rule (143) about v. of "striving"; it is foll. by inf.); attempt, an, conatus, -us, m. [dat.]

attention, to pay, operam dare, g.

Attica, Attica, -ae, f.

attract, traho, -xi, -ctum, 3

audacity, audacia, -ae, f.

augur, augur, -uris, m.

augury, augurium, -i, n; omen, -inis, n.

Augustus, Augustus, -i, m.

auspice, auspiciū, -i, n.

author, auctor, -oris, m.

authority, auctoritas, -atis, f.

autumn, autumnus, -i, m.

auxiliaries, auxilia, -orum, n.

avail, valeo, -ui, 2; threats? what

avail, quid valent minae?

avarice, avaritia, -ae, f.

avaricious, avarus, -a, -um

avenge, ulciscor, -ultus, 3, dep.

avoid, vitō, 1; fugio, fugi, 3

await, I, expecto, 1; death awaits us, mors nos manet

awake, expergiscor, -perrectus, 3, dep.

aware of, gnarus, -a, -um (g. gen.)

awful, dirus, -a, -um

axe, securis, -is, f.; acc. -em or -im, abl. -i

Bacchus, Bacchus, -i, m.

back, tergum, -i, n.; the enemy

turn their backs, i.e. flee, terga
 dant; drive back, see drive
 bad, m̃lus, -a, -um; badly, m̃l̃;
 bad men, impr̃bi
 baggage, imp̃dimenta, -ōrum, n.
 Balbus, Balbus, -i, m.
 banish, pello, pep̃li, pulsum, 3;
 expello, -p̃li, -pulsum, 3
 bankrupt, impar solvendo, i.e. un-
 equal to paying
 banquet, ēp̃lum, -i, n.; pl. epulae,
 ūrum, f. (tho sing. mostly means
 a public banquet)
 barbarian, barb̃rus, -a, -um
 barbarous, f̃rus, -a, -um
 barber, tonsor, -ōris, m.
 bargain, to make a, p̃ciscor, p̃c-
 tus, 3, dep.
 barn, horreum, -i, n.
 barren, st̃r̃lis, -e
 base, turpis, -e
 baseness, turp̃tudo, -inis, f.
 battle, proelium, -i, n.; pugna,
 -ae, f.; see Cannae
 beak, rostrum, -i, n.
 bear, to, f̃ro, -t̃li, -l̃tum, ferre
 beard, barba, -ae, f.
 beast, bestia, -ae, f.; of burden,
 jumentum, -i, n.
 beat, caedo, oēdi, oesum, 3
 beaten, to be, ṽp̃lo, 1
 beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
 beauty, forma, -ae, f.; pulchritudo,
 -inis, f.
 because, quia, quod
 become, fio, factus, fieri (258); it
 becomes me, d̃cot m̃ (220)
 bed, lectus, -i, m.
 beech-tree, f̃gus, -i, f.
 befall (amiss), acc̃do, -īdi, 3;
 (good) contingo, -t̃gi, -tactum,
 3 (both g. dat.)
 besit, d̃cet, -uit, 2, impers.
 before, (prep.) ant̃ (g. acc.); in the
 presence of, cōram, (g. abl.); (conj.)
 priusquam, ant̃quam; before-
 hand, (adv.) ant̃eā, ant̃; a few

years before, paucis ant̃e annis;
 the day before, see "day"; before
 the last, extr̃mis prior
 beg, ōro, 1; beggar, moñicus, -i, m.
 begin, incipio, -c̃pi, -ceptum, 3;
 (a battle), iñeo, iñii, iñitum,
 iñre; before a pass. inf. use
 coepi, coeptus sum, coepisse, v.
 def.; the city began to be be-
 sieged, urbs coepit (or coepta
 est) obsid̃ri
 beginning, iñitum, -i, n.
 behind, post (g. acc.)
 behold, asp̃cio, -exi, -eotum, 3;
 video, ṽdi, visum, 2
 behoves, it, ōportet, -uit, 2
 believe, cr̃do, -d̃di, -d̃tum, 3 (g.
 dat. of person); I believe that he
 will come, cr̃do eum vent̃rum
 esso; I believe him, cr̃do ei
 Belgae, Belgae, -arum, m.
 belly, venter, -tris, m.
 below, inf̃ra (g. acc.)
 benefactor, b̃ñefactor, -ōris, m.
 benefit, to, b̃ñefacio, -f̃eci, -factum,
 3; pr̃sum, -fui, esso (dat.);
 benefit, a, b̃ñefactum, -i, n.
 benevolence, b̃ñeṽolentia, -ae, f.
 benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um (68a)
 beseech, ōro, 1 (143)
 beside, iux̃t̃a (g. acc.); praeter (g.
 acc.); besides (prep.) praeter
 (g. acc.) (183); (adv.) praet̃er̃eā
 besiege, obsideo, -s̃di, -scsum, 2
 best, opt̃mus, -a, -um; I do my
 best to write, id̃ ago ut scribam
 betake, conf̃ero, -t̃li, -ferre, col̃la-
 tum; r̃c̃ipio, -c̃pi, -ceptum, 3;
 he betook himself to Corinth, Cō-
 rinthum se cont̃lit
 betray, pr̃do, -d̃di, -d̃tum, 3
 betroth, spondeo, sp̃pondi, spon-
 sum, 3
 better, m̃lior, -us
 between, int̃er (g. acc.)
 bewail, pl̃ro, 1
 beware, c̃veo, c̃vi, cautum, 2

beyond, *ultrā* (g. acc.); *praeter* (g. acc.)

big, see *large*

bind, *vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, 4;
(*by oath*) *jūre-jūrando obstringo*,
-strinxi, -strictum, 3

bird, *āvis*, -is, f.

birth, *partus*, -ūs, m.; *noble birth*,
nōbilitās, -ātis, f.

bite, *a*, *morsus*, -ūs, m.; *to bite*,
mordeo, *mōmordi*, *morsum*,
2 [-a, -um]

bitter, *ācerbus*, -a, -um: *āmārus*,

black, *niger*, -gra, -grum; *gloomy*,
āter, -tra, -trum [po, 1]

blame, *culpa*, -ae, f.; *to blame*, *cul-*

blind, *caccus*, -a, -um

blindness, *caecitās*, -ātis, f.

blood, *sanguis*, -inis, m.

blot out, *dēleo*, -ēvi, -ētum, 2

blow, *ictus*, -ūs, m.; *to blow*, *v.*

intr. *flō*, *flāvi*, *flātum*, 1

blush, *ērūbesco*, -ui, 3

boar, *āper*, -pri, m.

boast, *glōrior*, 1, dep.; *jacto*, 1

boasting, *jactatio*

body, *corpus*, -ōris, n.; *dead body*,
cādāver, -ēris, n.

Boeotia, *Boeōtia*, -ae, f.

bold, *audax*, -ācis; *fortis*, -e

bone, *ōs*, *ossis*, n.

book, *liber*, -bri, m.

booty, *praeda*, -ae, f.

border, *finis*, -is, m.

bordering-on, *finitimus*, -a, -um (112)

born, *to be*, *nascor*, *nātus*, 3, dep.;

born of low parentage, *hūmīlibus*
pārentibus nātus. N.B. *nascor*
means, *I am being born*, *nātus*
sum, *I am born*

bosom, *sinus*, -ūs, m.

both, (*adj.*) *ambo*, -ae, -o, *ūterque*,

-traque, -trumque; *both of us*, *nōs*
ambo or *ūterque nostrum*; (*conj.*)

both...and, *ēt...ēt*, (12) or *cum...
tum*, (317)

bottom, *īmus*, -a, -um, *adj.*

bound, *boundary*, *finis*, -is, m.;
terminus, -i, m.

bow, *arcus*, -ūs, m. (53)

boy, *puer*, -ēri, m.; *boyhood*, *puēr-*
itia, -ae, f.; *from his b.*, *from a*

boy, *indē ā puērītā*, or *puēro*

branch, *rāmus*, -i, m.

brave, *fortis*, -e; *bravely*, *fortiter*

bravery, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.

bread, *pānis*, -is, m.

break, *frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, 3;

rumpo, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, 3; *break*
out, *ērumpo*, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3;

break down (*a bridge*), *inter-*
rumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3

breast, *pectus*, -ōris, n. [m.]

breath, *ānīma*, -ae, f.; *hālītus*, -ūs,

breed, *to*, *ālo*, -ui, *altum*, 3

bribery, *ambītus*, -ūs, m.

bridge, *pons*, -ntis, m.; *to bridge*,
(*a river*), *flūvium ponte jungere*

bright, *clārus*, -a, -um; *splendī-*
duus, -a, -um

bring, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allātum*, *af-*

ferre; *I will bring you help*,

fēram tibi auxilium; *bring*

back, *rēdūco*, -dūxi, -ductum,

3; *bring in*, *infēro*, -tūli, -illā-

tum, *inferre*; *intrōdūco*, -xi,

-etum, 3; *bring up* (*educate*),

ēdūco, 1; *bring back word*, *rē-*

nuntio, 1

briskly, *ālacriter*

Britain, *Britannia*, -ae, f.

Briton, *a*, *Britannus*, -i, m.

brother, *frāter*, -tris, m.

brow, *frons*, -ntis, f.

Brutus, *Brūtus*, -i, m.

build, *aedifico*, 1; *building*, *aedī-*

ficiūm, -i, n.; *to see to the build-*

ing of a temple, *cūrāre templum*

aedificandum

bulk, *magnitūdo*, -inis, f.

bull, *taurus*, -i, m.

burden, *ōnus*, -ēris, n.

burn, *ūro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, 3 (*trans.*);

(*a house, city, &c.*) *incendo*,

incendi, incensum, 3 (*trans.*);
ardeo, ursi, arsum, 2 (*intrans.*);
a burning, incendium, -i, n.

burst into, irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,
3, full. by in and acc.

bury, sēpeliō, -ivi, sēpultum, 4

bush, dūmus, -i, m.

bucket, mūdus, -ii, m.

business, rēs, rei, f.; nēgōtinm, -i,

but, (i) *coord. conj.* sēd (comes first
in a clause, inuenus on the other
hand; but still; but yet); autem
(never comes first in a clause,
inuenus in the second place), vērō
(139a); (ii) *subord. conj.* quīn;
I doubt not but he will come, nōn
dūbitō quīn ventūrus sit

but (*prep.*), praetēr, no one but
Tullius was present, praetēr Tul-
lium nēmo adfuit; but some-
times, in negatives and questions
that expect a neg. answer, nisi
(coupling nouns in the same case,
like quān, 62); what is filial
affection but gratitude towards
parents? quīd est piētās nisi
grātia ergā pārentes vōluntās?

but (a neg. rel. pron., that not),
(i) nom., there was no one but
hated you, nēmo erat quīn tē
ōdi-set; (2) abl., not a day
passed but I wept, dies fērē
nullus fuit quīn (i.e. quo nōn)
flērem

butterfly, pāpilio, -ōnis, m.

buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3

buyer, emptor, -ōris, m.

by, ā, āb (Par. 178); by this time, jam

Caesar, Caesar, -āris, m.

calamity, cālāmītās, -ātis, f.

call, vōco, 1; call together, con-
vōco, 1; (address) appello, 1;

do you call me an enemy? num
mē inimicū appellas?

calm, plācidus, -a, -um

Camillus, Cāmillus, -i, m.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.

Campania, Campānia, -ae, f. N.B.
a district, not a city.

can (see able) you can come, vērē
pōtēs; it cannot be that you
could venture on this, fieri nōn
pōtest ut hōc audeās

Cannae, Cannae, -ārum, f.; of
Cannae, Cannensis, -e, adj.; the
battle of C., proelium Cannense,
or p. Cannis pugnatum

capital, cāpit, -itis, n.

Capitol, Cāpitōlinum, -i, n.

captive, adj. captivus, -a, -um

capture, a, captivus, -i, m.

capture, to, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Cypna, Cāpna, -ae, f.

carcase, cādāver, -ēris, n.

care, cura, -ae, f.; take care of cura,

1, g acc.; take care to, curā ut
carefully, diligenter

careless, negligens, -ntis

carelessness, inrāria, -ae, f.; negligē-
gentia, -no, f.

carry, porto, 1 (on one's shoulders);

vōho, vext, vectum, 3 (of harness);

ferre, tūli, lātum (a letter)

carry off, aufero, abstūli, abstūm,

auferre; (a victory) rēporto, 1

carry on, to, a war, bellum gērere,

gessi, gestum, 3

Carthage, Carthāgo, -īnis, f.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um

cast, jacio, jeci, jectum, 3

cast away, abjicio, abjēci, abjec-

tum, 3; cast down, dēmitto,

-misi, -misum, 3

cat, felis, -is, f.

catch, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Catiline, Catīlina, -ae, m.

Cato, Cāto, -ōnis, m.

cattle, armenta, -ōrum, n. pl.

cause, causa, -ae, f.

cause, to, effici, feci, factum, 3:

you caused me sorrow, tristitiam

mīhi attulisti

cautiously, cautē

cavalry, *ēquites*, -um, m. pl.;
ēquitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, *dēsino*, -sivi or -sii, 3
celebrated, *praeclārus*, -a, -um
centurion, *centūrio*, -ōnis, m.
century, *centūria*, -ae, f.
Ceres, *Cērēs*, *Cērēris*, f.
certain, *certus*, -a, -um (*g. gen.*); *a*
certain person, *quīdam*; *a c. fixed*
day, *certus quīdam dies*; (*mean-*
ing "kind of") *quīdam*; *there is*
a c. pleasure, *est quaedam vō-*
luptas (310a)
certainly, *certē*, *prōfecto* [-i, n.
chain, *cātēna*, -ae, f.; *vinculum*,
challenge, *to*, *prōvōco*, 1
chance, *cāsus*, -ūs, m.; *by c.*, *fortē*
change, *to*, *mūto*, 1
charge, (*accusation*), *crīmen*, -īnis,
 n.; (*onset*) *impētus*, -ūs, m.; *let*
us charge the enemy, *impētum*
fāciāmus in hostem [-i, n.
chariot, *currus*, -ūs, m.; *essēdum*,
charioteer, *aurīga*, -ae, m.
charm, *to*, *dēlecto*, 1
chastise, *to*, *castīgo*, 1
cheap, *vīlis*, -e
cheer, *be of good cheer*, *ērīgite*
(ērigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3) ānimos;
āleste ānīmīs
cheese, *cāseus*, -i, m.
cherish, *fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*, 2;
cōlo, *cōlui*, *cultum*, 3
cherry, *cērāsum*, -i, n.
chew, *mando*, -di, -sum, 3
chicken, *pullus*, -i, m.
chide, *culpo*, 1 [-īpis, m.
chief, *dux*, *dūcis*, m.; *princeps*,
chief men, *primōres*, -um, m. pl.
chiefly, *maximē*; *imprīmīs*
child, *puer*, -eri, m., or *puella*, -ae, f.
children, *libēri*, -ōrum, m.
choice (of style), *ēlēgans*, -ntis
choiceness of style, *ēlēgantia*, -ae, f.
choose, *ēlēgo*, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
Christian, *a*, *Christiānus*, -i, m.
Cicero, *Cicēro*, -ōnis, m.

Cincinnatus, *Cincinnātus*, -i, m.
circuit, *ambītus*, -ūs, m.
circumstance, *rēs*, rei, f.
citadel, *arx*, -cis, f.; *gen. pl.*
arciūm (40)
citizen, *cīvis*, -is, m.
city, *urbs*, -bis, f.; *the city of Car-*
thage, *Carthāgo urbs* [1
claim, *posco*, *pōposci*, 3; *vindico*,
clamour for, *postūlo*, 1
claw, *unguis*, -is, m.
Claudius, *Claudius*, -i, m.
clear, *clārus*, -a, -um; *to explain*
clearly, *lūcūlenter explicāre*
clear, *it is*, *liquet*, 2, *impers.* (222)
clemency, *clēmēntia*, -ae, f.
clerk, *scriba*, -ae, m.
climb, *scando*, -di, -sum, 3
close, *claudio*, -si, -sum, 3
close to, *prōpe* (*g. acc.*); *he is close*
at hand, *prōpe ā nobīs ābest*
close quarters, *at*, *commīnus*
clothe, *vestio*, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
clothing, *vestītus*, -ūs, m.
cloud, *nūbēs*, -is, f.
Clytemnestra, *Clȳtemnestra*, -ae, f.
coast, *litus*, -ōris, n.; *ōra*, -ae, f.
cobbler, *sūtor*, -ōris, m.
Codrus, *Codrus*, -i, m.
cock, *gallus*, -i, m.
cohort, *cōhors*, -rtis, f.
coin, *nummus*, -i, m.
cold, *frīgus*, -ōris, n.
cold, *frīgīdus*, -a, -um
colleague, *collēga*, -ae, m.
collect, *collīgo*, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
colony, *cōlōnia*, ae, f.
colour, *cōlor*, -ōris, m.
column, (*of men*) *agmen*, -īnis, n.
come, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4
command, (*military*) *impēriūm*, -i,;
 n.; *commands*, *jussa*, -ōrum, n.
 pl.; *at the command of Tullius*.
Tullio jūbente (197)
command, *to*, *impēro*, 1; *praesum*,
fui, -esse (*both g. dat. of per-*
son); *jūbeo*, *jussi jussum*, 2

command of, to be in, praesum, -fui, -esse (g. dat.)
commander, imp̄r̄ator, -ōris, m.; dux, dūcis, m. [3]
commit, committo, -misi, -missum, common, cominūnis, -e.
common-people, plebs, plēbis, f.; vulgus, -i, n.
commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, f.
companion, cōmēs, -itis, m.
compare, comparo, 1; confēro, cōtūli, collātum, conferre
compassion, misēricordia, -ae, f.
compel, cōgo, cōgi, coactum, 3 (inf., or ut, or ad with gerund.)
complain, quēror, questus, 3, dep. complaint, quērēla, -ae, f. [3]
complete, to, conficio, -fēci, -fectum, conceal, cēlo, 1 (g. two acc., 312)
concede, concēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 conceive a hope, vēlire in spem concerning, dē (g. abl.)
concerns, it, see "important"
conciliate, concilio, 1
concord, concordia, ae, f.
concourse, concursus, -ūs, m.
condemn, damno, 1; condemnno, 1; to condemn to death, cāpitis damnāre
condition, condicio, -ōnis, f.
conduct, to, a war, bellum gērere
conduct, mōres, -um, m. pl.
confer, confēro, cōtūli, collātum, conferre; to c. a benefit on you, bēnēficiū in tē c.
conference, collōquium, -i, n.
confess, fiteor, fassus, 2, dep.; confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.
confession, confessio, -ōnis, f.
confidence, fidēs, -ci, f.
confirm, confirmo, 1
conflagration, incendium, -i, n.
congratulate, grātūlor, 1, dep. (g. dat.); I c. you that, g. tibi quod
conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3; sūp̄ero, 1

conquered, victus, -a, -um; the conquered, victi m. pl.
conqueror, victor, -ōris, m.
conquest, victōria, -ae, f. [gen.]
conscious, conscius, -a, -uni (g. consciousness, conscientia, -ae, f.
consecrate, consecro, 1
consent, to, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (dat., or cum)
consent, consensus, -ūs, m.
consider, pūto, 1
consist, eonsto, -stīti, -stātum, 1; foll. by ex or ē, the legions consisted of ten cohorts each, lēgiōnes ē dēnis cōhortibus constitērunt
consolation, sōlātium, -i, n.
console, sōlor, 1, dep.
conspiracy, conjūrātio, -ōnis, f.
conspire, conjūro, 1
conspirator, conjūrātus, -a, -um, used as a noun
constancy, constantia, -ae f.
consul, consūl, -ilis, m.
consulate, consūlātus, -ūs, m.
consult, consūlo, -sului, -sultum, 3; to c. Tullius, consūlere Tullium, to c. T.'s interests, consūlere Tullio
consume, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3
contemplate, contemplor, -ātus sum, 1
contend, contendo, -di, -tum, 3
content, contentus, -a, -um (g. abl.)
contest, certāmen, -inis, n.
contradict, contrādico, -dixi, -dictum, 3 (g. dat.)
contrary, contrārius, -a, -um (189)
contrary, on the, contrā (adv.)
contrary-to, contrā (g. aec.)
conversation, sermo, -ōnis, m.: collōquium, -i, n. [3, dep.]
converse, to, collōquor, collōquutus, convey, vēho, vxi, vectum, 3
cool, cōquus, -i, m.
cool, to, cōquo, coxi, coctum, 3
copper, aes, acris, n.

Corinth, Cōrinthus, -i, f.
Corinthian, Cōrinthus, -a, -um
Coriolanus, Cōriōlānus, -i, m.
Corioli, Cōriōli, -ōrum, m. pl. *the small town of Corioli was burned*, C., oppidum parvum, incensum est
corn, (harvested) frūmentum, -i, n.; *to sow corn*, frumenta sēcre
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
corpse, cādāver, -ōris, n.
correct, corrigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3
corrupt, corrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3
cost, prētium, -i, n.; *expense*, sumptus, -ūs, m.
cost, to, sto, stēti, stātum, 1, consto, -stīti, -stātum, 1, (both g. abl. of definite, gen. of indef. price) *this cost me more*, hōc mīhi plūris constitit; *this will cost you much blood*, hōc vōbis multo sanguine stābit
costly, sumptuosus, -a, -um
cottage, cāsa, -ae, f.
cover, tēgo, texi, tectum, 3
covet, cūpio, -īvi, -itum, 3
covetous, cūpidus, -a, -um (g. gen.)
couch, lectus, -i, m., cūbile, -is, n.
could (see *able*), *you could have come*, vēnīre pōtūisti
council, concīlium, -i, n.
counsel, consīlium, cī, n.
count, nūmero, 1
countenance, vultus, -ūs, m.
country, terra, -ae, f.; *the country* (as distinct from the city), rūs, rūris, n. see Par. 265 and 249; *one's own, his, my, your, country*, patria, -ae, f.; *let us die for our country*, prō patriā mōriāmur; *this is for the good of the country*, hōc est ē rē-pūblica; *a rough country*, i.e. district, rēgio aspēra
countrymen, cīves, -ium, m. pl.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
course, cursus, -ūs, m.

courtesy, hūmānitas, -ātis, f.
cover, tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3
coward, cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
crafty, callidus, -a, -um
crane, grus, gruis, c.; *mostly* f.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, m.
create, creō, 1
creature, ānimal, -ālis, n.
credible, crēdibilis, -e.
credit, fidēs, -ei, f.
Crete, Crēta, -ae, f.
crime, scēlus, -ōris, n.; *monstrous*, c. flāgītium, -i, n.
crocodile, crōcōdilus, -i, m.
Croesus, Croesus, -i, m.
cross, crux, crūcis, f.
cross, to, trājicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3; transeo, -īvi or -īi, itum, 4
crowd, turba, -ae, f.
crown, cōrōna, -ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.; *saevus*, -a, -um
cruelty, crūdēlitas, -ātis, f. [3
crush, opprimo, -pressi, -pressum,
cry, (shout) clāmo, 1
cry, a, clāmor, -ōris, m.
cultivate, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3
cunning, callidus, -a, -um
cup, cālix, -īcis, m.
cure, rēmediūm, -i, n.
cure, to, sāno, 1 (acc.); *inēdeor*, 2 v. dep. (dat.)
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut, caedo, cēcidi, caesum, 3; *cut off*, to, the enemy from supplies, intercludere, (-clūsi, -clūsum, 3) hostes commēatū (or -ībus)
cut to pieces, concido, -di, -sum, 3
Cyclops, the, Cyclōpes, -um, m. pl.
Cyprus, Cyprus, -i, f.
Cyrus, Cýrus, -i, m.

Dagger, pūgio, -ōnis, m.
daily, adv. quōtidie (better spelt cōtidie)
dance, salto, 1
danger, pēriculum, -i, n.

dangerous, pēriculōsus, -a, -um
Danube, Ister, -tri, m.
Daphne, Daphnē, -ēs, f.
dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2, dep.
Darius, Dārius, -i, m.
dark, obscurus, -a, -um; pullus, -a, -um

darken, obscurō, 1
darkness, caligo, -inis, f.; tenebrae, -arum, f.

dart, telum, -i, n.; iaculum, -i, n.
daughter, filia, -ae, f.

down, prīma lux; mīne, indecl.;
before dawn, antē lucem

dawn, to, illūcesco, illuxi, 3

day, dies, -iei m.; *by day*, diē;
daybreak, prīma lux; *the-day*,
before (adv. used as a prep.)
pridie Kalendaras; (used as a
 conj. with quam) the day before
I came, pridie quam vēni; *two*
days, biduum, -i, n.; *three days*,
 triduum, -i, n.

dead, mortuus, -a, -um

dead body, cūctāver, -ūris, n.

deaf, surdus, -a, -um

dear, cārus, -a, -um

death, mors, mortis, f.; *he was*
put to death, morte affectus est;
he was condemned to death,
 cāpitis damnātus est

debt, aes aliēnum

decent, dōlus, -i, m.; fallacia, -ae, f.

deceitful, fallax, -ācis

deceive, dēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum,
 3; fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3

decide, to, (judge) iudico, 1; *they*
decided to return, constituērunt
 rēdire

declare, dico, dixi, dictum, 3; *to*
declare war against, bellum
 indicere, g. dat.

decree, to, dēcorio, -crēvi, -crētum, 3

decree, a, dēcrētum, -i, n.; ēdict-
 um, -i, n.

deed, factum, -i, n.; facinūs, ōris, n.

deem worthy, dignor, 1, dep.

deep, altus, -a, -um

deer, dāma, -ae, f.

defeat, a, clādēs, -is, f.

defeat, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3

defence, praesidium, -i, n.

defend, defendo, -di, -sum, 3

defendant, reus, -i, m.

defile, polluo, -ui, ūtum, 3

deity, nāmei, -iui, n.

delay, mōra, -ae, f.

delay, to, mōror, 1, dep.; cunctor,
 1, dep.

deliberate, dēlibēro, 1

delight, gaudiū, -i, n.; *to delight*,

delecto, 1, v. tr. (g. acc.)

desire (hand over), trādo, -didi,
 -ditum, 3; (free) libēro, 1 (g.
 acc. of pers. and abl. of thing)

desol, Dēlos, -i, f.

demand, posco, pōposci, 3

Demosthenes, Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, m.

denarius, dēnārius, -ii, m.

dewy, nēgo, 1

depart, discedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3

departure, discessus, -ūs, m.

deplore, plōro, 1

depraved, prāvus, -a, -um

deprive, spōlio, 1; privo, 1 (279)

descend, descendō, -di, -sum, 3; *he*
was descended from kings, ā
 rēgibus ortus erat

desert, dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3; rēlin-
 quo, -liqui, -lictum, 3

deserter, transfūga, -ae, m.

deserve, mēreor, mērītus, 2, dep.

design, consilium, -i, n.

desire, cūpido, -inis, f.; *to desire*,
 cūpio, -ivi, -itum, 3; opto, 1;

volo (all generally foll. by In-
 finitive)

desirous, cūpidus, -a, -um; stūdi-
 ōsus, -a, -um (both g. gen.) some-
 times with gaudire

desist from, dēsisto, -stiti, -stitum, 3

despair, to, despēro, 1; *despair*,
 despēratio, -ōnis, f. [tuin, 3

despise, contemno, -tempsi, temp-

despoil, spōlio, 1; *I despoil you of liberty*, s. tē libertāte
destroy, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum; *perdo*,
 -dīdī, -dītum, 3
destructive, pernīciōsus, -a, -um
detain, dētīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2
determine, stātuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
devastate, vasto, 1
devoid of, expers, -rtis, *adj.* (*g. gen.*)
devote, dēvōveo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2
devour, dēvoro, 1
Diana, Diāna; -ae, f.
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.
dictatorship, dictatūra, -ae, f.
die, mōrior, mortuus, 3, *dep.*; *he died*, obiit (mortem)
difference, discrīmen, -inis, n.; *it makes a great difference*, multum intērest; *how great a difference there is!* quantum intērest!
difficult, difficīlis, -e (60)
difficulty, difficūltas, -atis, f.; *with difficulty*, vix; *with very great difficulty*, difficillimē
dig, fōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3; *dig up*, effōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3
dignity, dignitās, -ātis, f.
diligent, strēnuus, -a, -um; dīlīgens, -ntis
diminish, mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
dine, cēno, 1, *dep. particip.* cēnatus (*less correctly* coeno)
Dionysius, Diōnysius, -i, m.
direction; *in - the - direction - of the Rhine*, Rhēnum versūs
disagreeable, injūcundus, -a, -um
disappear, ēvānesco, -ui, 3 [-is, f.
disaster, damnum, -i, n.; *ciādes*, discern, cerno, 3
discharge (*duty*), fungor, functus, 3 *dep. (abl.)*; (*darts*), conjicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3
disciple, discīpulus, -i, m.
discipline, disciplīna, -ae, f.
disclose, dētēgo, -texi, -tectum, 3
discord, discordia, -ae, f.

discourse, sermo, -ōnis, m.
discover, invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *rēperio*, reperī, repertum, 4
disease, morbus, -i, m.
disembark, (*trans. v.*) expōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3
disgrace, dēdēcus, -ōris, n.; *to disgrace*, foedo, 1
disgraceful, turpis, -e
dishevelled, passus, -a, -um
dismiss, dīmīto, -mīsī, -missum, 3
displeasc, displiceo, -ui, itum, 2 (*q. dat.*)
displeasing, ingrātus, -a, -um
disposition, indōlēs, -is, f.; ingēnium, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.
dispute, a, rixa, -ae, f.; *contentio*, dissemble, dissimūlo, 1
dissembler, dissimulātor, -ōris, m.
dissension, dissensio, -ōnis, f.
distant, to be, absum, āfui, ābesse
distasteful, to become, displiceo, 2
distinguished, insignis, -e; clārus, -a, -um
distribute, distribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
district, rēgio, -ōnis, f.
distrust, diffīdo, -fīsus, 3, or parum credere, confīdere (*dat.*)
disturb, turbo, 1
disturbance, mōtus, -ūs, m.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
divide, dīvido, -vīsī, -vīsum, 3
divine, dīvīnus, -a, -um
do, faciō, fēcī, factum, 3; *I (can) easily do without wine*, vīno facīle cāreo
dog, cānis, -is, c.
dolphin, delphīn, -inis, m.
domestic, dōmesticus, -a, -um
door, jānuā, ae, f.; fōres, -um, f. pl.; *out of doors* (i) (*rest*) fōris, (*motion towards*) fōras
doubt, to, dūbīto, 1; *there is no doubt that*, nōn dūbīum est quīn, Par. 145; *I have no doubt that*, nōn dūbīto quīn; *without doubt*, sīnē dūbīo

doubtful, incertus, -a, -um ; dūbius, -a, -um.

dove, cōlumba, -ae, f.

downcast, dēmissus, -a, -um

down from, dē (y. abl.)

drachma, draclima, -ae, f.

drag, trāho, traxi, tractum, 3

draw (a sword), stringo, -nxī, ietum, 3 ; *draw along*, dūco, -xī, -etum, 3 ; *draw back*, reduco, -xī, -etum, 3 ; *draw up* (an army), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3 ; *draw lots*, sortior, -tītus, 4, dep. ; *draw water*, I, aquam haurio, hausi, haustum, 4 ; *draw together*, contrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3

dread, to, formīdo, 1

dreadful, dīrus, -a, -um

dream, a, somnium, -i, n. ; *dream*, to, somnio, 1

dress, vestītus, -ūs, m. ; vestis, -is, f.

drink, bibo, bībi, bibītum, 3 ; pōto, 1

drive, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3 ; pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3 ; *to drive into exile*, pellere in exilium ; *drive back*, repello, reppūli, repulsum, 3 ; *drive out*, expello, expūli, expulsū, 3 ; *drive down*, depello, dēpūli, depulsum, 3

drop, a, gutta, -ae, f.

drown, mergo, mersi, mersum, 3

Druids, Druīdes, -um, m. pl.

drunk, ebrius, -a, -um

dry, siccus, -a, -um ; aridus, -a, -um

duck, ānas, -ātis, e.

duly, ritē

dutiful conduct, piētās, -ātis, f.

duty, officiū, -i, n.

dwell, to, hābito, 1

dwelling, dōmus, -ūs, f.

dye, to, tingo, tinxi, tinctum, 3

Each, quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, or, when used as n., quicquē, ; foll. superl., suus, &c., (140,

165) ; (of two) ūterquē (both are used in sing.)

cager, cūpīdus, -a, -um

eagle, āquīla, -ae, f.

ear, auris, -is, f.

early, matūrē

earth, terra, -ae, f. ; tellūs, -aris, f.

ease, otium, -i, n.

easily, faciē ; *more e.*, faciilius

east, the, oriens, -entis, m.

easy, facilis, -e (60)

eat, vescor, 3, dep. (y. abl.) ; ēdi, ēdi, cūsum, 3

educate, edūco, 1

effect, mōdus, -i, m. ; *he spoke to this effect*, in hunc mōdum orationem hābuit ; *effect*, to, efficio

-fēci, -fectum, 3

egg, ovum, -i, n.

Egypt, Aegyptus, -i, f.

Egyptian, Aegyptius, -a, -um

eight, octō, indel.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um

eighty, octogintā, indel.

either, (conj.) aut, vcl (157a)

elder, sēnior, -ōris, adj. used as n. ; also māior nātū (71)

elect, clīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3

elephant, elēphantus, -i, m. ; elēphās, -antis, m.

eloquence, faciundia, -ae, f.

eloquent, faciundus, -a, -um

else, (when adj.) alius, -a, ūd ; or

else aut ; *elsewhere*, alibi

embrace, to, amplector, -plexus, 3, dep. ; *embrace*, amplexus, -ūs, m.

emperor, princeps, -ipis, m.

empire, impērium, -i, n.

empty, vāuus, -a, -um

enact, sancio, -xī, -etum, 4 ; ("shall and "should," after this v., must be read. by pres. and imperf. subj.) it has been enacted that

no one shall ride in a carriage,

sanctum est nē quis currū

vclātur

encourage, hortor, 1, dep.; stīmulō,

1

end, to, finio, 4

end, finis, -is, m.

endeavour, cōnor, 1, dep. (foll. by inf.)

endowed with, praeditus, -a, -um (g. abl.)

endurance, p̄tinentia, -ae, f.

endure, perfero, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre

enemy, hostis, -is, m.; (in war, mostly pl.) the enemy's camp,

hostium (not hostis) castra; a

private enemy, inimicus, -a, -um

energetic, strenuus, -a, -um

engagement, certāmen, -inis, n.;

pugna, -ae, f.

England, Anglia, -ae, f.

enjoy, fruor, fruius, 3, dep. (g. abl.)

enormous, ingens, -ntis

enough, sātis

enraged, irātus, -a, -um

enter, intro, 1; inco, -ivi or -ii, itum, 4

enterprise, cōnātus, -ūs, m.

entertainment, illēcebrae, -arum, f. pl.

entirely, omnino

entrails, viscēra, -um, n.

entreat, oro, 1 (143)

entrust, crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3

envious, invidius, -a, -um

envy, invidia, -io, f.; *envy*, to, in-

video, -vidi, visum, 3 (g. dat.)

Epaminondas, Epāminondās, -ae, m.

Ephesus, Ephēsus, -i, f.

E. icurus, Epīcūrus, -i, m.

equal, pār, pārīs

equally, pārīter

equipped, instructus, -a, -um, part. of instruo

erect (build), exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; erigo, -rexi, -rec-

tum, 3

err, erro, 1

error, error, -ōris, m.

escape, fūga, -ae, f.; *escape*, to,

evādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3; effūgio,

-fūgi, 3; *escape* the notice of,

fallo, fūfelli, falsum, 3 (g. acc.)

escort, dūdcō, -duxi, -ductum, 3

especially, maxīmō; praesertim

estimate, aestīmo, 1

eternal, aeternus, -a, -um

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.

even, etiam; vėl (141 a); not even,

nē—quidem (141); *even* a boy,

vėl puer; *even* now, etiam

nunc; *even* if, etiam si

evening, vesp̄er, -ōris and -ōri, m.;

in the evening, vesp̄erē, or adv.

vesp̄ri (not vesp̄ero)

event, ēventus, -ūs, m.

ever, unquam; (always) semper;

if you ever come, si quando

vēneris; did you e. come? num

quando (or ecquando) vēnistī?

every, every good man, omnes bōni,

or optimus quisquē (140); *every*

day, quōtidie (or cōtidie)

everywhere, passim [mālum, -i, n.

evil, mālus, -a, -um; an evil,

examine, investigo, 1

example, exēplum, -i, n.

exceedingly, valdē

excellence, virtūs, -utis, f.

excellent, ēgrēgius, -a, -um (68b);

praestans, -ntis; optimus, -a,

-um

except, prep. praet̄r (g. acc.); conj.

nisi; why do you fight except to

conquer? cur pugnas nisi ut

vincās?

excessive, nīmius, -a, -um

exchange, mūtō, 1 [-ōnis, f.

excuse, excūso, 1; an e., excūsatio,

exercise, to, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2

exhort, cōhortor, -ātus, 1, dep.

exile, exilium, -i, n.; *exile*, an,

exsul, -ūlis, m.

expectation, expectatio, -ōnis, f.;

spēs, spei, f.

expediency, utilitas, -atis, f.

expedient, *utilis*, -o
expense, *sumptus*, -us, m.
experience, *experientia*, -ae, f.;
usus, -us, m.; *experience*, *to*,
experior, -pertus, 4, dep.
explain, *explico*, 1
explore, *exploro*, 1
extend, *pāteo*, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*);
pando, *pandi*, *passum*, 3 (*trans.*)
extent, *spātium*, -i, n. [3]
extinguish, *extinguo*, -nxi, -netum,
extraordinary, *mirus*, -a, -um
extreme, *extrēmus*, -a, -um
extremely, *valde*
exult, *exulto*, 1
eye, *oculus*, -i, m.

Fabius, *Fābius*, -i, m.
fabr, *fābula*, -ae, f.
face, *facies*, -ei, f.; *us*, *oris*, n.;
vultus, -us, m.
faction, *partes*, -ium, f.
fact, *res*, *rei*, f.; *facts must be*
clearly arranged, *res luculenter*
sunt digerendae
fail (*fall short*), *dēsum*, -ui,
esse, (*g. dat.*); (*forfe*), *dēfi-*
cio, -feci, -fectum, 3; *time*
fails me, *tempus me dēficit*
faith, *fīdēs*, -ei, f. [-um
faithful, *fīdēlis*, -o; *fīdus*, -a,
fall, *to*, *cādo*, *cēcidi*, *cāsum*, 3;
(in battle) *occido*, -cidi, -cāsum,
 3
fall asleep, *to*, *obdormio*, -ii or
-ivi, -itum, 4
false (*things*), *falsus*, -a, -um;
(persons), *mendax*, -ācis
fulshout, *mendacium*, -ii, n.
fame, *fāma*, -ae, f.
famuly, *fāmilīa*, -ae, f.; *dōmus*,
-ūs, f.
famine, *fāmēs*, -is, f.
far, *praeul*; *longē*; *as far as*,
tēnis (*g. abl. or gen.*, 178)
farm, *praedium*, -i, n.
farthing, *as*, *assis*, m.; *I do not*

care a farthing for you, *nōn*
assis tē facio
"fusses," the, *inscēs*, -ium, m. pl.
the rods which were the signs
of the count's power
fat, *pinguis*, -o
fat, *fātum*, -i, n.
father, *pāter*, -tris, m.
fault, *culpa*, -ae, f.
furrow, *grātin*, -ae, f.; *farow*, *to*,
fāveo, *fāvi*, *fautum*, 2 (*g. dat.*)
fur, *timor*, -oris, m.; *rustic*, -ūs,
 m.
fearful, *pāvīdus*, -a, -um
fear, *to*, *timeo*, -ui, 2; *mētuo*, -ui,
 3; *vēreor*, *vērītus*, *dep.* 2
fearless, *impāvīdus*, -a, -um
feast, *epūlae*, -arum, f.
feather, *penum*, -ae, f.; *plūmā*, -ae,
features, *vultus*, -us, m.
feeble, *infirmitas*, -a, -um
feed, (*trans.*) *pa-co*, *pāvi*, *pastum*,
 3; (*intrans.*) *pa-cor*, *pa-sca*
feed on, *vescor*, 3 dep. (*g. abl.*)
feel, *sentiō*, *sensī*, *scisum*, 4
feign, *singo*, *suxi*, *sietum*, 3
fellow, *hūmo*, -inis, m.; *that*
fellow, *istē*
fertile, *fertilis*, -o
fetch, *see bring*
fetter, *campēs*, -ēdis, f. [-ē
fever, *febris*, -is f. (-iur or -ena, -i or
few, *paucus*, -a, -um, (*mostly pl.*);
very few, *perpauci*
field, *āger*, -gri, m.
fierce, *fērox*, -ācis
fifth, *quintus*, *see Par.* 81
fix, *fix-ire*, *fiens*, -i, and -ūs, f.
fight, *pugna*, -ae, f.
fight, *to*, *pugno*, 1
fill, *compleo*, -plēvi, -pletum, 2
finally, *denique* (*not to stand first*
in a clause)
find, *invēnio*, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *he*
was found guilty of, *damnatus*
est (*g. gen.*)
fine, *multa*, -ae, f.

fur, to, multo, 1
finger, dīgītus, -i, m.
finish, confīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;
pērāgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3
fire, ignis, -is, -m., abl. ignī;
under fire, sub jactu, or jactum,
tēli, (180)
firm, firmus, -a, -um
first, prīmū, -a, -um; at f.;
pīmo (adv.); T. was the first to
come (or who came), Tullius
prīmū vēnit
fish, piscis, -i, m.
fisherman, piscātor, -ōris, m.
fit, aptus, -a, -um; idoneus, -a,
-um; for running, aptus ad
currendum (186)
five, quinquē, incl.; five hundred,
quingenti, -ue, -a
fix, fīgo, -xi, -xum, 3
fired, certus, -a, -um; a certain
fired day, certus quīdam dīes
flame, flamma, -ae, f.
flatter, iūdor, 1, dep.
flee, fūgio, fūgi, 3
fleet, clavis, -is, f.
flesh, caro, carnis, f.
flight, fūga, -ae, f.; of a bird,
vōlātus, -us, m.
flight, put to, fūgo, 1
flourish, flōreo, -ui, 2
flow, fluo, -xi, 3, fut. part. fluxurus
flower, flōr, -ōris, m.
fly, a, musca, -ae, f.
fly, to, see flee; (of a bird) vōlo, 1
foe, hostis, -is, m.
follow, aequor, secutus, 3, dep.
follower, cōmēs, -itis, m.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cibus, -i, m.
fond of, studiōsus, -a, -um, (g. gen.)
fool, foolish, stultus, -a, -um
foolishly, stultō
foot, pēs, pēdis, m.
foot-soldier, pēdēs, -itis, m.
for (conj.) nam (at the beginning of
a clause); Enim (after the first

word in a clause); (prep.) pro,
prae, (g. abl.); ob, (g. acc.)
Par. 178; (born, fit, useful, &c.)
for acting, iud. agendum; for a
few days, paucos dīes (262)
forbid, vōto, -ui, -itum, 1; prō-
hibeo, -ui, -itum, 2
force, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.
forced marches, magna itinēra
forces, cōpiae, -arum, f.
forehead, frons, -ntis, f.
foreign, externus, -a, -um; pēre-
grinus, -a, -um
foresee, prōvideo, -vīdi, -visum, 2
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forget, obliviscor, oblītus, 3, dep.
(g. gen.)
forgetful, immēmōr, -ōris (g. gen.)
form, forma, -ae, f.
former, prior, prius; the former...
the latter, ille...hic
formerly, quondam, olim
fort, castrum, -i, -n.; castellum,
-i, n.
fortify, inānio, -ivi or -ii, -itum 4,
fortitude, fortitudo, -inis, f.; with
fortitude, fortiter
fortunate, felix, -icis
fortune, fortuna, -ae, f.
fortunes, they distrusted their f.,
rēbus suis diffīci sunt
forty, quadrāgintā, incl.
forum, fōrum, -i, n.
found, condo, -idi, -ditum, 3
founder, conditor, -ōris, m.
fountain, fons, -fontis, m.
four, fourteen, &c. see Par. 81
four times, quāter
fourth, quartus, -a, -um
free, liber, -ēra, -ērū: f. from
fault, culpā vācuus (279)
free, to, libēro, 1, (acc. & abl.)
freed from debt, aere aliēno lib-
erātus
freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.
frequent, creber, -bra, -brum
frequently, saepe

fresh, rēcens, -ntis; nōvus, -a, -um
friend, amīcus, -i, m.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amīcītia, -ae, f.
frighten, terreo, -ui, 2
frog, rāna, -ae, f.
from, ā, ē, or ex, dē (g. abl.); *from*
boyhood, indē a puēro
from a distance, emīnūs
front, in, adversus, -a, -um
frost, gēlū, indel. n.
frugality, parsimōnia, -ae, f.
fruit, fructus, -ūs, m.; *the fruits*
(of the earth), frūges, -um, f. pl.
fruitful, fertilis, -e; fērax, -ācis
fulfil, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;
 expleo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2
full, plēnus, -a, -um (g. gen. or abl.)
funeral, fūnus, -cris, n.; *funeral*
rites, infēriae, -arum, f.
furrow, sulcus, -i, m.
fury, fūror, -ōris, m.
future, fūturus, -a, -um

Gābii, Gābii, -ōrum, m. pl.
gain, quaestus, -ūs, m.; *lucrum*,
 -i, n.
gain, to, (a victory) rēportāre, 1;
 acquiro, quisīvi, quisītum, 3;
 pāro, 1
gain possession of, pōtior, -ītus, 4.
 dep. (g. abl.) See Par. 207.
Gallie, Gallicus, -a, -um
gallows, crux, crūcis, f.
game, lūdus, -i, m.
garden, hortus, -i, m.
garland, sertum, -i, n.
garment, vestis, -is, f.
garrison, praesīdium, -i, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3; col-
 ligo, lēgi, lectum, 3
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m.
gem, gemma, -ae, f.
general, dux, dūcis, m.; impērātor,
 -ōris, m.

generally, plēruinque
gentleness, cōmitas, -ātis, f.
gently, lēniter
German, Germānus, -a, -um
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
get, pāro, 1; ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3
giant, gīgās, -antis, m.
gift, dōnum, -i, n.
girl, cūgo, -nxi, -netum, 3
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, do, dēdi, dātum, 1
give back, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
give birth to, pārio, pepēri, partum,
 3 (g. acc.)
give orders to, impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
give up, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
glad, lactus, -a, -um
Glaucus, Glaucus, -i, m.
glitter, mīco, -ui, 1
gloomy, tristis, e
glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um
glory, glōria, -ae, f.
go, eo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4; *I am*
going-to-die, mōrītūrus sum
go away, ābeo, -ii, -ītum, 4
go by, praetēro, īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4
go forth, or out, exeo, -ii, -ītum, 4
go on, prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
go under, sūbeo, -ii, -ītum, 4
goat, cāper, -pri, m.
god, deus, dei, m.; nom. pl. *often*
 dii, or di
goddess, dea, -ae, f. Par. 311
gold, aurum, -i, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um
good, bōnus, -a, -um
goodwill, bēnēvōlentia, -ae, f.
goose, anser, -ēris, m.
govern, rēgo, rexi, rectum, 3
government, impērium, -i, n.
grace, grātia, -ae, f.
grandfather, āvus, -i, m.
grandson, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
grant (see give); *I grant him*
pardon, do ei vēniam
grape, ūva, -ae, f.
grass, herba, -ae, f.

grateful, grátas, -a, -um
gray, cānus, -a, -um
great, magnus, -a, -um; *very great*, permagnus; *with "this,"* tantus; *this great slaughter*, hæc tanta cæclēs
greatly, inagnūpere, valdū
greatness, magnitudo, -inis, f.
Grecian, *Greek*, Græcus, -a, -um
Greene, Græcia, -ae, f.
greedy, avidus, -a, -um, avārus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*)
green, viridis, -e
green, to grow, vīresco, 3 [m.
grief, dōlor, -ōris, m.; luctus, -ūs, m.
grieve, dōleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*); angō, 3 (*trans.*)
groan, gēniūtus, -ūs, m.
groan, to, gēno, -ui, 3
ground, hūmus, -i, f.; *on the ground*, hūmī
grove, lūcus, -i, m.
grow, cresco, crēvi, cretum, 3
guard, (a single person) custōs, -ōdis, m.; (a garrison) præsidium, -i, n.
guard, to, custōdio, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4; *guard strongly*, firmāre præsidium
guest, hospēs, -itis, m.
guide, dux, dūcis, m.
guide, to, dūco, duxi, ductum, 3
guile, dōlus, -i, m.
guilt, culpr, -ae, f.; scēlus, -ēris, n.
guilty, reus, fontis; *to be found guilty of*, damnāri (*g. gen.*)

Habit, mōs, mōris, m.

hail, grando, -inis, f.

hair, crīnis, -is, m.; *not even a hair's breadth*, nō transversum quīdem unguem, lit. a nail's breadth

half, dūndimū, -i, n.

halt, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3

hand, mānus, -ūs, f.; *right hand*, dextra; *left hand*, sinistru; *I*

am at hand, adsūm, -fui, -esse; *it is in your hands*, pēnes tē est (183)

hand down, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3

handsome, pulchior, -clra, -chrum

hang, pendo, pēpendi, 2 (*intrans.*); pendo, pēpendi, pensum, 3 (*trans.*)

Hannibal, Hannībal, -ālis, m.

happen, (of ill fortune) accīdo, -cīdi, 3 (*mostly foll. by* ut; (*of good*) contingo, -tīgi, 3

happy, (fortunate) felix, -icis; (*joyful*) lætus, -a, -um; (*blessed*) bēātus, -a, -um

harbour, portus, -ūs, m.

hard, dūrus, -a, -um

harm, lēpus, -ōris, m.

harm, detrimentum, -i, n.

harmful, nōxius, -a, -um

harp, cithāra, -ae, f.

harrest, messis, -is, f.

Hasdrubal, Hasdrūbal, -ālis, m.

haste, celeritās, -ātis, f.; *in haste*, cum celeritāte, or celeriter, or summā celeritāte (181); *make haste*, see hasten

hasten, festino, 1; prōpero, 1

hastily, i.e. rashly, tūmērō

hate, odiūm, -i, n.

hate, to, odi, dof. 3; see App. II., page 215

hatred, see hate

have, habeo, -ui, -itum, 2

hawk, accipiter, -tris, m.

he, ille, -a, -ud; is, ea, id; *he who*, qui (*is being often omitted, or placed after qui*, Par. 107)

head, caput, -itis, n.

headlong, praecipēs, -cīpītis

health, salūs, -ūtis, f.

healthy, sanus, -a, -um; *healthful*, salūber, -bris, -lro

heap, acc.vus, -i, m.

hear, aud'o, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4

hearer, auditor, -ōris, m.

heart, cōr, -dis, n.

heart, *hōcēs*, -i, m.
heat, *cālor*, -ōris, m.
heaven, *enclūm*, -i, m.
heavy, *grāvis*, -e
Hector, *Hectōr*, *Hectōris*, m.
hedge round, *to*, *saepio*, *saepsi*,
saepium, 4
heir, *hērēs*, -ēdis, m.
Helena, *Hēlēna*, -ae, f.
helmet, *gālea*, -ae, f.
help, *auxilium*, -i, n.
help, *to*, *subvénio*, -vēni, -ventum,
 4 (g. dat.)
Helvetii, *the*, *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, -i, m.
hemlock, *cīcūta*, -ae, f.
hence, *hinc*
herb, *herba*, -ae, f.
Hercules, *Hērclēs*, -is, m.
herd, *pēcūs*, -ōris, n.
here, *hīc*; often used for "hither"
 and then to be trans. *by hīc*
hero, *hēros*, -ōis, m. (acc. pl. -ōas)
hesitate, *dūbitō*, 1
hide, *to*, *condō*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3;
abdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
hiding place, *lūtebrā*, -ae, f.
high, *altus*, -a, -um; *to buy at a*
very high price, *permagnō emēro*
highest, *summus*, -a, -um
hill, *collis*, -is, m.
himself, *sē*, *sul*, &c. See Par. 94
hinder, *prōhibeo*, 2, *I hindered you*
from coming, *prōhibui quoniam*
vēnīrēs
hinge, *cardo*, -dīnis, m.
hire, *condūco*, -dūxi, -ductum, 3
his, Par. 98, 218, 306, and p. 328
historian, *auctor*, -ōris, m.
hither, *hīc*; *hitherto*, *adhūc*
hold, *tēneo*, -ui, 2; *habeo*, -ui,
 -itum, 2
holiday, *fērine*, -ārum, f.
hollow, *cāvus*, -a, -um; *to hollow*,
cāvāro
holy, *sācer*, -era, -erum
home, *dōmus*, -ūs, f. (Ex.
 LXXXIV.); *at home*, *dōmi* (265)

Homer, *Hōmērus*, -i, m.
honest, *prōbus*, -a, -um
honestly, *prōbitas*, -ātis, f.
honey, *mel*, *mellis*, n.
honour, *hōnor*, -ōris, m.; *to be in*
great honour with the Romans.
in magno hōnōre esse apūd
Rōmānos
honourable, *hōnestus*, -a, -um
hoof, *ungula*, -ae, f.
hook, *hūmus*, -i, m.
hope, *spēs*, *spei*, f.
hope, *to*, *spēro*, 1; *do you hope to*
take the city? *spērasne tū urbem*
captūrum esse?
Horace, *Hōrātius*, -ii, m.
Horatii, *the*, *Hōrātīi*, -ōrum, m.
horn, *cornū*, -ū, n.
horrible, *dīrus*, -a, -um; *nefandus*,
 -a, -um; *h. to relate!* *nēfās*
dictū! (246)
horse, *ēquus*, -i, m.
horseman, *ēquēs*, -itis, m.
hospitality, *hospitium*, -i, n.
host, *hospēs*, -itis, m.
hostage, *obses*, -idis, m.
hostile, *infestus*, -a, -um
Hostilius, *Hostilius*, -i, m.
hound, *cānis*, -is, c.
hour, *hōra*, -ae, f.
hour, *dōmus*, -ūs, f. (311); *neder*,
 -ium, f. pl.; *household*, *fāmilīa*,
 -ae, f.
how? *in what way?* *quōmodo?* *to*
how great an extent, *quātu*, *quan-*
tum; *how great or much*, *quātu-*
tus, -a, -um; *how many?* *quōt?*
how often? *quōtiens?* *how long?*
quādiū? *how good, bad, &c.*
quān hōnus, mālus, &c.; *how*
few there are who use riches
well! *quōtus quisque est qui*
dīvitiis bēnē utitur! *for how*
much did you buy it? *quāti tū*
ēmisti? *how important it is!*
quāntum intērest or rēfert (329)
however, *tāmen*

huge, ingens, -tis
 human, hūmānus, -a, -um
 hundred, centum, *indeel.* (81)
 hunger, fāmes, -is, f.
 hungry, to be, ēsūrio, 4
 hunt, vēnor, -atus, 1, dep.
 hunter, huntsman, vēnātor, -ōris, m.
 hunting, vēnatio, -ōnis, f.
 hurl, conjicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3
 hurt, to, nōceo, 2 (*g. dat.*); laedo,
 -si, -sum, (*g. acc.*)
 hurtful, noxius, -a, um
 husband, mārītus, -i, m.
 husbandman, agricōla, -ae, m.

I, ēgo; see page 45

Ida, īda, -ae, f.

idle, ignāvus, -a, -um

idleness, ignāvia, -ae, f.

if, sī; if...not, nīsi (125, 295)

ignorant, ignārus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*);

ignorant of, to be, ignōro, 1;

nescio, -ii, 4 (*both g. acc.*); are

you ignorant that the man is
 here? nescīsne hōmīnem ādesse?

are you ignorant how, &c., nescīs-
 ne quōmodo, *fol.* by subjunct.

ill (*sick*), aeger, -gra, -grum;

(*subst.*) mālum, -i, n.; ill (*adv.*),

i.e. badly, mālē

illness, morbus, -i, m. [nis, -e

illustrious, clārus, -a, -um; insig-

image, īmāgo, -inis, f.

imagine, pūto, 1

imitate, īmītor, 1, dep.

immediately, stātīm

immense, ingens, -ntis

immortal, -immortālis, e

immortality, immortālitās, -ātis, f.

impatient, impātiens, -tis

impede, impēdiō, -īvi or ii, ītum, 4

impel, inpello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3

impious, impius, -a, -um

implore, ōro, 1

important. It is important for
 Balbus, Balbiintērest; ("should,"
 after this v., is often rendered by

pres. inf.) it is imp. that Catiline
 should perish, intērest Cātīlinam
 pērīre; it is i. for me, meā intēr-
 est; see Par. 329

importune, fātigo, 1

impose, impōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum,
 3; I impose tribute on a nation,
 tribūtum genti impōno

improve, to, ēmendo, 1 [er

impudent, impūdēns, -tis; -ly. -ent-

impunity, with, impūnē

impute, he i. this to me as a fault,

hōc mīhi vītio dat, or vertit

in, in (*g. abl.*); in the direction of,

versūs (*fol.* acc.); in the pages

of, apūd (*g. acc.*); in the power

of, pēnes (*g. acc.*); in the

presence of, cōram (*g. abl.*), see

Par. 178-180; in order to, ut;

in three days, Par. 263; in Gabii,

Par. 265; in haste, Par. 181.

increase, augeo, auxi, auctum, 2

(*trāns.*); cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3

(*intrans.*)

incredible, incrēdībīlis, -e

ineursion, incursiō, -ōnis, f.

indeed, quidem; you i....but I, tū

quidem...ēgo autem, (or vērō)

India, India, -ae, f.

indignation, see anger

indolence, ignāvia, -ae, f. [(*dat.*)

indulge, indulgeo, -lsi, -ltum, 2

industrious, diligens, -ntis

infantry, pēdītes, m. pl.; pēdītātus,

-ūs, m.

infirm, infirmus, -a, -um, -um

influenec, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

inform, I informed him, certiore

eum fēcī (*gen. or dē.*)

in front, adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*

inglorious, inhōnestus, -a, -um

inhabit, incōlo, -colui, -cultum, 3;

hābīto, 1

inhabitant, incōla, -ae, m.

injure, nōceo, -ui, 2 (*g. dat.*)

injury, injūria, -ae, f.

injustice, see (34) unjust (things.)

innocence, *innocentia*, -ae, f.
innocent, *innocens*, -tis; *insons*,
 -ntis; *innocent of all fault*, *omni*
culpā vacuus (279)
innumerable, *innūmērābilis*, -e
inquire, *quaero*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum*, 3; *rūgo*, 1
inquiry, *quaestio*, *ōnis*, f.
insolence, *insolentia*, -ae, f. [3]
inspect, *inspicio*, -spexi, -spectum,
insolent, *insolens*, -tis
instance, *exemplum*, -i, n.
instead of, *prō* (*g. abl.*)
instruct, *erūdio*, 4
instrument, *instrumentum*, -i, n.
insufficient, *impar*, *gen. imparis*
insult, *contūmēlia*, -ae, f.
insurrection, *seditio*, -tōnis, f.
integrity, *prōbitas*, *ātis*, f.
intellect, *ingēnium*, -i, n.
intention, *consilium*, -i, n.
inter, *sūpēlio*, -ivi or -ii, -pultam, 4
intercept, *intercludo*, -si, -sum, 3
intercourse, *consuetudo*, -inis, f.
interest, *it is my i.*, *meā intērest*; *it*
is the i. of Tullius, *Tullii intērest*
(see Ex. XCII.); (*interests*) *to*
consult my, *Tullius's*, *i.*, *mihi*,
Tullio, *consulere*
into, *in* (*g. acc.*) *Par. 55.* [3]
introduce, *indūco*, -duxi, -ductum,
incade, *invādo*, -si, -sum, 3
in turn, *invicem*
in vain, *frustrā*
inventor, *inventor*, -ōris, m.
investigate, *explōro*, 1
invite, *invito*, 1
invoke, *invōco*, 1
Ireland, *Hibernia*, -ae, f.
iron, (*subst.*) *ferrum*, -i, n.; (*adj.*)
ferreus, -a, -um
island, *insūla*, -ae, f.
it, *see page 46, Par. 219-226*
Italy, *Itālia*, -ae, f.
ivory (*subst.*), *ēbur*, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*)
ēburnus, -a, -um
ivy, *hēdēra*, -ae, f.

Javelin, *iāctilum*, -i, n.
jaw, *māla*, -ae, f.
jest, *jocus*, -i, m.; pl. -i and -a
join, *jungo*, -nxi, -nctum, 3
journey, *itēr*, *itinēris*, n.; *to jour-*
ney, *itēr faciēre*; *we shall have to*
journey, *itēr nobis faciendū*
erit
joy, *gaudium*, -i, n.
joyful, *laetus*, -a, -um
joyfully, *laetē*
judge, *iudex*, -icis, m.; *judge, to*,
iudico, 1
judgment, *iudicium*, -i, n.; *in my*
judgment, *mē iudicē*
juice, *jūs*, *iuris*, n.
jump, *to*, *salto*, 1
 jumper, *saltator*, -ōris, m.
June, *Iūno*, -ōnis, f.
Jupiter, *Iuppiter*, *Iōvis*, m.; *dat.*,
acc., *abl.*, *Iōvi*, -em, -ē
just, *justus*, -a, -um
justice, *iustitia*, -ae, f.; *iūs*, *iuris*,
 n.

Keen, *acer*, -cris, -crē (44, 61)
keep, *tūneo*, -ui, 2; *servo*, 1; *I keep*
my word, *fidem praeſto*, -stīti,
-stātum & -stītum, 1; *keep off*,
arceo, -ui, 2
keeper, *custōs*, -ōdis, m.
key, *clavis*, -is, f.
kill, *interficio*, -fēcī, -fectum, 3
kind, *bēnignus*, -a, -um
kind, *gēnus*, -ēris, n.; *a barren*
kind of style, *jūjan*; *quedam*
oratio; *see Ex. LXXXIII. note*
310a
kindness, *bēnignitas*, -ātis, f.
kindle, *incendo*, -di, -sum, 3
kindly, *būignē*
kindness, *a*, *bēnēficiū*, -i, n.
king, *rex*, *rēgis*, m.
kingdom, *regnum*, -i, n.
kiss, *oscūlor*, 1, *dep.*
knee, *gēnū*, -ūs, n.
knife, *culter*, -tri, m.

knight, *equēs*, -ītis, m.
know, *scio*, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4;
novi, *see* *nosco*; *I do-not-know*,
nescio, -scīvi -scitum, 4
knowledge, *scientia*, -ae, f.; *with-*
out his knowledge, *clam eo*
known, *nōtus*, -a, -um; *it is well*
known, *constat*

Labienus, *Labiēnus*, -i, m.
labour, *lābor*, -ōris, m.
lady, *mūlier*, -ēris, f.
lake, *lācus*, -ūs, m.
lamb, *agnus*, -i, m.
lame, *claudus*, -a, -um
lament, *lūgeo*, -xi, -ctum, 2 (*trans.*);
dōleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*) [*grief*]
lamentation, *macror*, -ōris, m., *see*
lanec, *hasta*, -ae, f.
land, *terra*, -ae, f.; *lands* (*as*
possessions), *āger*, -gri, m.;
lines, -ium, m. pl.; *land* (*adj.*)
terrestri, -e
large, *magnus*, -a, -um (*for comp.*
and superl. see *Par. 68*), *a l.*
sum of money, *grandis pecūnia*
lashes, *verbera*, -um, n. pl.
last (*as opp. to first in a race*),
extrēmus, *see* *Par. 69*; *at last*,
tandem
lasting, *pērennis*, -e
late, *sērus*, -a, -um; *late*, *adv.*
sērō; *rather late, too late*, *sērius*
late, *nūper*
Latin, *Latīnus*, -a, -um
latter, *hic*; *the former...the latter*,
illo...hic
Latōna, *Lātōna*, -ae, f.
laugh, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*, 2; *laugh*
at, mock (*a person*), *irrideo*, -si,
-sum, 2 (*g. dat.*); (*a thing*)
rideo (*g. acc.*), *gentler than*
irrideo
laughing-stock, *ladibrium*, -i, n.
laurel, *laurus*, -i, f.
law, (*a statute*), *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.; (*the*
laws) *jūs*, *jūris*, n.; *the laws of*

men and God, *jūs et fas*; *against*
the laws, *contrā jūs* [*see*]
lawful, *it is*, *licet*, -uit, 2, *imp.*
lay aside, *pōno*, *pōui*, *pōsitum*,
 3; *lay down*, *dēpōno*, -pōui,
 -pōsitum, 3; *lay waste*, *vasto*, 1
laziness, *inertia*, -ae, f.
lazy, *segnis*, -e; *iners*, -tis
lead, *dūco*, -xi, -ctum, 3; *lead*
out, *ēdūco*, -xi, -ctum, 3
leader, *dux*, *dūcis*, m.
leaf, *frons*, -dis, f.
lean, *adj.*, *mācer*, -cra, -crum
leap, *to*, *sālio*, -ii or -ūi, -saltum.
 4; *leap across*, *transilio*, -ui,
 -sultum, 4; *leap down*, *dēsilio*,
 -siliui, -sultum, 4; *leap out*,
exsilio, -siliui, -sultum, 4, *fol.*
ly dē or ē
learn, *disco*, *dīdici*, 3.
learned, *doctus*, -i, -um; *learned*
in the law, *jūris perītus* (287)
learning, *doctrīna*, -ae, f. [*"at"*]
least, *mīnimus*, -at, -um; *at l.*, *see*
leave, *to*, *linquo*, *liqui*, *lictum*, 3;
relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3; *I*
leave (*by will*), *lēgo*, 1; *leave*,
pōtestās, -ātis, f.
left, *rēliquus*, -a, -um; *left* (*hand*),
sinister, -tri, -trum
leg, *crās*, *crūris*, n.
legion, *lēgio*, -ōnis, f.
leisure, *ōtium*, -i, n.; *leisure*, *to*,
have, *vāco*, 1
Lemnos, *Lemnos*, -i, f.
lend, *crēdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
length, *longitūdo*, -īnis, f.;
length, *tandem*
Lentulus, *Lentūlus*, -i, m.
Leonidas, *Leōnīdas*, -ae, m.
less, *mīnor*, -is; *it was sold for*
less (*Ex. LXX.*), *mīnoris ven-*
dītum est; *it is less honourable*,
mīnus hōnestum est
lest, *nē*
let; (*oft. rend. by subjunct.*) *let*
them love, hate, &c., *āment*,

odērint; *let this be an example to you, sit tibi hōo exemplo;* (or by *fāc ut, cūrā ut*) *let your conduct be improved, fāc ut mōres tui emendentur; let them murmur, licet frēmant* (227)
letter, littērae, -arum, f. pl.; letter of the alphabet, littēra, -ae, f.; epistōla (or epistūla) -ae, f.
level, aequus, -a, -um; level, to, aequo, 1
levy, a, delectus, -ūs, m.; levy, to, conscribo, -psi, -ptum, 3
liar, mendāx, -ācis
liberate, libēro, 1 (g. abl. of thing)
liberty, libertās, -ātis, f.
liCTOR, liCTOR, -ōris, m.
lie (to tell lies), mentior, -itus, 4, dep.; lie down, jāceo, -ui, 2; lie hid, lāteo, -ui, 2; lie in ambush, in wait for, insīdior, 1, (g. dat.)
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, lux, lūcis, f.; lūmen, -inis, n.; light, lēvis, -e [-inis, n.
lightning, fulgūr, -ūris, n.; fulmen, like, similis, -e; I like to walk, me jūvat, or mīhī plācet, ambulāre
likeness, similitūdo, -inis, f.
limb, membrum, -i, n.
limit, finis, -is, m.; limēs, -itis, m.
line (of battle), ācies, -ei, f.
lion, leo, -ōnis, m.
lip, labrum, -i, n.
listen to, audio, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
little, parvus, -a, -um; I have too l. strength, pārūm vīrūm hābeo; it matters l. paulum refert
live, to, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3; (dwell) habitāre or vītam āgēre; I live on bread, vescor, (3, dep.)-pāne (207)
load, ōnus, -ōris, n.
lofty, altus, -a, -um
log, lignum, -i, n.
long, longus, -a, -um; long, adv. diu; longer, adv. diūtius; how

long? quamdiu? I have long been desiring, jampridem (or jamdudum) cūpio; no longer, non jam
look, look at, aspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3; look for, quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum, 3; look, a (of the human countenance), vultus, -ūs, m.; look round, circumspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3
lord, dōminus, -i, m.
lose, amitto, -misi, -misum, 3; perdo, -didi, -ditum, 3
loss, damnum, -i, n.
lot, sors, -tis, f.; to draw lots about, sortiri dē
lovable, amābilis, -e
love, amor, -ōris, m.; love, to, amo, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
loving, amans, -tis
low, lowly, hūmīlis, -e
lower, inferior, -us; the lowest of the citizens, cīvium infimī
luck, fortuna, -ae, f.
lucky, felix, -icis; faustus, -a, -um
luxury, luxūria, -ae, f.
Lydia, Lȳdia, -ae, f.
lying, mendāx, -ācis
lyre, lȳra, -ae, f.

Macedonians, the, Mācēdōnēs, -ōnum, m.
machine, māchīna, -ae, f.
mad, insānus, -a, -um; amens, -tis; mad, to be, fūro, 3; insānio, -īvi or -ii, 4 [-ae, f.
madness, insānia, -ae, f.; āmentia, magic, māgīcus, -a, -um :
magistrate, māgistrātus, -ūs, m.
maiden, virgo, -inis, f.
make, fācio, fēci, factum, 3; make peace, pācem ferire; make haste, seo hasten
man, (hero, &c.), vir, -i, m.; (human being) hōmo, -inis, m.; all to a man, omnes ad unum
manage, administro, 3

manifest, mānifestus, -a, -um
manner, mōs, mōris, m.; mōdus, -i, m.

many, multus, -a, -um, *very* m. permulti, or plūrīmi; so m. tot
marble, marmor, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*) marmōreus, -a, -um
march, to, (*set out*) prōficiscor, -fectus, 3, dep.; contendo, -di, -tum, 3; *march*, a, iter, itinēris, n.

Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.

Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.

mark, signum, -i, n.; nōta, -ae, f.; *it is the m. of*, est (*fol. by gen.*); see Par. 289.

Māro, Māro, -ōnis, m., Publius Vergīlius Māro, *commonly called Virgil*

marriage, mātīmōnium, -ii, n.

marry (of men), dūco, duxi, ductum, 3; (*of women*), nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3 (*g. dat.*); *he married Tullia*, Tulliam duxit; *she married Tullius*, Tullio nupsit

Mars, Mars, Martis, m.

marsh, pālūs, -ūdis, f.

master, dōmīnus, -i, m.; *of a school*, māgister, -tri, m.

matter, rēs, rei, f.

matters, it, refert, impers. (Ex. XCI.); *what does it matter?* quid refert? *it matters little what you think*, paulum refert quid (240a) sentias

may, *he may come, to be rendered by* licet, possum, fieri potest ut, &c., *according to the sense; someone may (be inclined to) say*, dixerit aliquis

meadow, prātum, -i, n.

means, ōpes, -um, f. pl.; cūpia, -ae, f.

meanwhile, intērea, intērim

measure, mōdus, -i, m.; *beyond*

measure, praeter mōdum; *to measure*, mētor, mensus, 4, dep.

meat, cāro, carnis, f.

medicine, mēdicīna, -ae, f.

meditate, mēditor, -ātus, v. dep.

meet, to, occurro, -curri, -cursum, 3 (*dat.*); *to meet death*, obīro mortem; (*adv.*) obviam (*dat.*); *he met me*, obviam mīhi factus est

memorable, insignis, -e

memory, mēmōria, -ae, f.

Mencius, Mēnēnius, -i, m.

mention, mentio, -ōnis, f.

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m.

mercy, clēmētia, -ae, f.

merited, mērītus, -a, -um

message, nuntius, -i, m.

messenger, nuntius, -i, m.

metal, mētallum, -i, n.

Metellus, Mētellus, -i, m.

middle, midst, mēdius, -a, -um; *the middle of the night*, mēdia nox; *he rushed into the midst of the foe*, in mēdios hostes ruit
might (i.e. *had the right to*) licuit; *you m. have come*, l. tibi vērīre; (*had the ability to*) pōtūisti vērīre

mighty, pōtens, -tis; ingens, -tis

migrate, mīgro, l

mildness, lēnitas, -ātis, f.

mile, a, mille passus; *three miles*, tria milia passuum

Miletus, Mīlētus, -i, f.

military, mīlītāris, -o

milk, lāc, -tis, n.

Milo, Mīlo, -ōnis, m.

mind, mens, -tis, f., ānīmus, -i, m.

mindful, mēmōr, -ōris (*g. gen.*)

mine, meus, -a, -um

mine, a, mētallum, -i, n.; *he was condemned to the mines*, in mētalla damnātus est

minge, misceo, -ui, -xtum, 2

mirth, laetitia, -ae, f.

misbecome, it misbecomes, dēdēcet, -nit, 2, impers. (220)

miserable, miser, -ēra, -ērum

misfortune, mālum, -i, n. ; cālūmī-
tās, -ātis, f.

mistake, error, -ōris, m.

mix, see *mingle*

mob, turba, -ae, f.

mock, lūdo, -si, -sum, 3

mockery, lūdibrium, -i, n.

modest, mōdestus, -a, -um

modesty, mōdestia, -ae, f.

moist, hūmīdus, -a, -um

moisture, hūmor, -ōris, m.

money, sum of money, pecūnia, -ae, f.

monster, monstrum, -i, n.

monstrous, nefās (indcl.); (used in
opposition to statements) the
woman (monstrous to relate)
slew her son, mūlier (nefās dicta)
filium suum interfecit

month, mensis, -is, m.

monument, mōnūmentum, -i, n.

moon, lūna, -ae, f.

morals, mōres, -um, m. pl.

more, (adj.) plūs, plūris (72); he said
no more, nec plūra dixit; (adv.)
mūgis with adj. (to a greater
degree), plūs with verbs (to a
greater extent); more than, plūs-
quam (adv.); it was not divided
into more than three parts, non
plusquam in tres partes divisum
est; let no ship have more than
thirty oars, nulla nāvis plusquam
trīginta rēmis ūgātur; suprā
(prep.); more than twenty thou-
sand fell that day, caesa eo die
suprā milia viginti

moreover, practerea

morning, in the, mātne, (adv. indcl.)

mortal, mortālis, -e.

most, most men, plerique; most of
the sheep, pleracque ovium

mother, māter, -tris, f.

motion, mōtus, -ūs, m.

mound, agger, -ēris, m.

mound, ascendo, -di, -sum, 3; con-
scendo, -di, -sum, 3

mountain, mons, -tis, m.

mourn, lūgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2

mournful, muestus, -a, -m.

mourning, luctus, -ūs, m.

mouse, mus, mūs, c.

mouth, ōs, ōris, n.

more, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

much, multus, -a, -um; (adv.)
multum, sometimes used as a
noun, Par. 71; much, very much,
as (or so) much, money, multum,
plūrimum, tantum, pecūniae;
for how much did you buy it?
quanti id emisti? with comp.
e.g. (by) much better, multo
mēlior (274)

Mucius, Mūcius, -i, m.

multitude, multitudo, -inis, f.

Mummius, Mūmmius, -i, m.

munificence, mūnificentia, -ae, f.

murder, cecidēs, -is, f.; to murder,
interficio, -feci, -fectum, 3;
trucidō, 1

murmur, murmur, -ūris, n.; to

murmur, frēmo, -ui, -itum, 3;

let them murmur, licet frēmant

music, mūsica, -ae, f.

must (163), and see necesse, oportet

my, meus, -a, -um; voc. mi

myrrh, myrrha, -ae, f.

myrtle, myrtus, -i, f.

Naked, nūdus, -a, -um

name, nōmon, -inis, n.; to name,

nōmīno, 1; vōco, 1

narrate, narro, 1

narrow, angustus, -a, -um

nation, gens, -tis, f.; pōpulus, -i, m.

native, a, incōla, -ae, m.; native-

land, patria, -ae, f.

nature, nātūra, -ae, f.

naval, nāvālis, -e

near, prōpinquus, -a, -um; (prep.)

prōpē (g. acc.); ad (g. acc.);

nearer, nearest, see Par. 69

nearby, fērē, paenē

necessary, necēssārius, -a, -um; it

is n. see necesse and opus

necessity, nēcessitas, -ātis, f.
neck, collum, -i, n.
need, to, ēgeo, -ui, 2 (abl.); *there is no need of words*, non ōpus est verbis
needle, ācus, -ūs, f.
neglect, negligō, -lexi, -lectum, 3
negligence, incuria, -ae, f.
neighbour, neighbouring, vicinus, -a, -um; *inimitus*, -a, -um
neither, (pron.) neuter, -tra, -trum, Par. 85; (conj.) nēc, nēquo
nephew, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
Nero, Nēro, -ōnis, m.
nest, nidus, -i, m.
net, rēte, -is, n.
never, nunquam; *nevertheless*, tamen (at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word).
new, novus, -a, -um; *news*, nuntius, -i, m.
next, proximus, -a, -um; *on the next day*, postēro (more rarely proximo) diē; *we shall know all within the next five hours*, his quinquē hōris omnia comperta habēbimus
night, nox, noctis, f.; *by n. noctu*
nightingale, philōmēla, -ae, f.
Nile, Nilus, -i, m.
nine, novem, indel.
no (adj.), (with things) nullus, -a, -um; (with persons) nēmo; *no poet*, nēmo pōeta; *no one*, nēmo (Par. 92); *and no...* nēque ullus; *and no one*, nēc quisquam; *there is no need of words*, nōn ōpus est verbis; *by no means all came*, nēquāquam omnes vērērunt
no (adv.), *no longer*, nōn jam; *no better i.e. better by nothing*, nihilo, or nēquāquam melior; *he said no more*, nēc plūra dixit
nobility, nobilitas, -ātis, f.

noble, nobilis, -e
noise, sōnus, -i, m.; *clamor*, -ōris, m.
nor, nēquē, nēc
nose, nāsus, -i, m.
not, nōn; *not even*, (141); *see also* 129, 143; *if... not*, nīsi; *not yet*, nōndum
nothing, nihil or nīl, n. indel.
notice, animadvertō, -ti, -sum, 3
notwithstanding, tamen
nourish, nutrio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 4
novelty, novitās, -ātis, f.
now, nunc; *meaning already or by this time*, jam.
nowhere, nusquam
Numa, Nūma, -ae, m.
number, nūmērus, -i, m.
nurse, nūtrix, -icis, f.
nut, nux, nūcis, f.
nymph, nympha, -ae, f.

O! O! (foll. by Acc., 205); O that! ūtinam (330)
oak, quercus, -ūs, f.
oar, rēmus, -i, m.
oath, iurjurandum, iurisjurandi, n.; (military) sacramentum, -i, n.
obedient, obēdiens, -tis (g. dat.)
obey, pāreo, -ui, 2, (g. dat.)
obtain, pāro, 1; *compāro*, 1; *adipiscor*, adeptus, 3, (by entreaty), impetro, 1; (by lot), sortior, -itus, 4.
occasion, tempus, -ōris, n.
occur, occēsus, -i, m.
odour, odor, ōris, m.
of (282-90); *the town (of) Corioli*, Cōriōli oppidum; *both of us wept*, ambo flēvimus; *the top of the mountain*, summus mons
offer, offēro, obtūli, oblātum, offerre (238); *offering*, dōnum, -i, n.
office, mōnus, -ēris, n.
offspring, prōlēs, -is, f.
often, saepē; *how often*, quōtiēns
old, antiquus, -a, -um; *vetus*, -ēris; *an old soldier*, vētus milēs (61);

old age, sēnectūs, -ūtis, f.; old man, sēnex, sēnis, m.; old woman, ānus, -ūs, f.; older men, sēniōres, or māiōres nātū; older, oldest, māior, maximus nātū.

omen, ōmen, -īnis, n.

omit, ōmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3

on, in (g. abl.); (upon) sūper; on account of, ob, propter (g. acc.)

once, (meaning "once for all") sēmel; (formerly) ōlim, quondam; (once upon a time) fōitū; at once, stātīm

one (only one), ūnus, -a, -um; one by one, singūli, -ae, -a; a certain one, quidam (310a); one...another, ālius...ālius; the one...the other, alter...alter (86)

only, (adj.) sōlus, -a, -um; only Tullius dissented, ūnī Tullio āliter vīsum est; not only...but also, non sōlum...sed ētiam, or cum...tum; he lived only ten years, sōlos dēcem annos vixit; if only, sī mōdo

onset, impētus, -ūs, m.

opca, to, āpērio, -ui, -rtum, 4

opinion, sententia, -ae, f.

opponent, adversārius, -i, m.

opportunity, occāsio, -ōnis, f.

oppose, obsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g. dat.); if oppōno is used, note that it means "I place against"; he opposed the enemy, oppōsuit sēsū hosti [sum, 3]

oppress, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-or, (i) in statements and commands, vcl, aut (157a); (ii) in alternative questions (171), ān, preceded by utrum or -nē; (a) (Whether) do you prefer this or that? Utrum hoc (or hocnē) ān illud mavultis? (b) I asked whether...or, interrōgāvi utrum...ān; whether ... or not ... annōn, or necnē

crator, ōrātor, -ōris, m.

order (a command), mandatū, -i,

n.; jussū, -i, n.; to give orders (in war), impēro, 1, with dat., ut, and subjunctive; to order, jūbeo, jussi, jussū, 2 (acc. and inf.); impēro, 1 (g. dat. and ut.); order (a rank), ordo, -īnis, m.; the order of the knights, ēquestis ordo; in order to, ūt

ornament, ornātus, -ūs, m.

other, ālius, -a, -ud; the other, alter (86); the wealth of-others, āliēnae divitiāe

ought, dēbeo, -ui, -ītum, 2; you ought to fight, pugnāre dēbes; you ought to have fought, pugnāre dēbuisti (223)

our (87) noster; our men (34) nostri

out of, ē, ex (g. abl.); (meaning "outside") extrā; out of shot, extrā jactum; outer, adj. extērior, neut. -ius (69); outside, prep. extrā (g. acc.)

over, sūper; across, trans (g. acc.)

overcome, sūpero, 1

overthrow, see overcome

overturn, subverto, -verti, -versum, 3 [sum, 3]

overwhelm, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-ove, dēbeo, -ui, -ītum, 2

own (see Par. 98); your or my own name, tuum or meum, ipsius, nōmen (where ipsius agrees with the gen. tui or mei implied in tuum or meum)

owner, dōmīnus, -i, m.

ox, bōs, bōvis, c. See Par. 311

Pace, passus, -ūs, m.

pain, dōlor, -ōris, m.

paint, pingo, -nxi, -ctum, 3

painter, pictor, -ōris, m.

painting, pictūra, -ae, f.

palace, palātium, -i, n.

Pallas, Pallās, -ādīs, f.

palm, palma, -ae, f.; to carry off the palm, palmam ferre

panic, pavor, -ōris, m.
 parched, aridus, -a, -um; tostus, -a, -um
 pardon, vēnia, -ae, f.; *I grant him pardon*, do ei veniam; *to pardon*, ignosco, -nūvi, -nōtum, 3, g. dat.
 parent, pārens, -tis, e.
 Paris (of Troy), Pāris, -idis, m.
 parricide, parricida, -ae, m.
 part, pars, -tis, f.; *it is the p. of an orator*, oratoris est (289); *to take part in a battle*, interesse praelio; *for my part*, equidem (139)
 partner, socius, -i, m.
 pass, pass by, pass on, praetereo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4
 path, callis, -is, m.
 past, praeteritus, -a, -um
 patience, patientia, -ae, f.
 patient, patiens, -ntis (g. gen.)
 patiently, patienter
 patrician, patricius, -a, -um
 pay, stipendium, -i, n.; *to pay*, solvo, -vi, -utum, 3; *pendo*, pēpendi, pēsum, 3; *pay attention*, operam dare; *pay penalty*, poenas dare; *pay tribute*, tributum pendere; *able to pay*, par (gen. pāris) solvendo, i.e. equal to paying
 peace, pax, pācis, f.
 penalty, poena, -ae, f.; *to pay penalty*, poenas dare
 penetrate, pēnetro, 1
 penitence, poenitentia, -ae, f. [m.
 penny, dēnarius, -i, m.; as, assis,
 people, pōpulus, -i, m.
 perfidy, perfidia, -ae, f.
 perform, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
 perfume, odor, -ōris, m.
 perhaps, fortasse, forsitan (forsitan gen. takes the subjunctive)
 peril, pēriculum, -i, n.
 perish, pereo, -ivi or -ii, 4
 permission, pōtestas, -ātis, f.

permit, pātor, passus, 3, dep.
 perseverance, persēverantia, -ae, f.
 persevere, persēvero, 1
 Persian, Persa, -ae, m.
 person, hōmo, -inis, m.
 persuade, persuādeo, -si, -sum (g. dat. of person) (i) *I p. him to come*, p. ei ut veniat; (ii) *I p. him (or am persuaded) that this is true*, p. ei (or persuasum est mihi) hōo vērū esse
 Philip, Philippus, -i, m.
 Philoctetes, Philoctētes, -ae, m.
 philosopher, philōsōphus, -i, m.
 philosophy, philōsōphia, ae, f.
 physician, mēdicus, -i, m.
 picture, tābula, -ae, f.
 pierce, transfigo, -xi, -xum, 3
 pig, porcus, -i, m.
 pigeon, cōlumba, -ae, f.
 pile up, exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3
 pilot, gubernātor, -ōris, m.
 pine tree, pīnus, -ūs, f.
 pious, pius, -a, -um, no superl.
 pirate, praedo, -ōnis, m.
 pitch (a camp), pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3
 pitiful, mīserīcor, -cordis
 pity, mīserīcordia, -ae, f.; *feel pity for*, mīseor, -sēritus or -sertus, 2, dep. (g. gen.); *show pity to*, mīseror, 1 (g. acc.)
 place, lōcus, -i, m.; *plural*, loca, n. pl.; *place to*, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3; *place before*, antepōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3; *virtutem vōlūptātī antepōno*, *I p. virtue before pleasure*
 plain, campus, -i, m.
 plan, consilium, -i, n.
 plant, planta, -ae, f.; *plant to*, seo sōvo
 Plataea, Plātācae, arum, f. pl.
 Plato, Plāto, -ōnis, m.
 play, ludus, -i, m.; *play to*, ludo, -si, -sum, 3

plead, a cause, ūgĕro causam
pleasant or *pleasing*, grātus, -a, -um;
 jñennilus, -a, -um; dulcis, -o
please, plāceo, -ui, -itum 2 (*g. dat.*)
pleasure, vōluptas, -ātis, f.
pledge oneself, to, I *p. myself* to
 pay, spondeo (spōndi, spon-
 suum, 2) me solūtum esso
plot, dōlus, -i, m.
plough, āratrum, -i, n.; *plough*, to,
 āro, 1
ploughman, ārātor, -ōris, m.
ploughshare, vōmer, -ōris, m.
pluck, earpiō, -psī, -ptum, 3
plunder, pirāda, -ae, f.; *plunder*,
 to, diripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3
plunge, v. trāns. inergo, -si, -sum,
 3; *he plunged into the water*, in
 āquam (or aquā) sē inersit
Pluto, Plātō, -ōnis, m.
poem, carmen, -inis, n.
poet, pōēta, -ae, m.
point, on the point of, in eo ūt,
 see Par. 166
point out, inonstro, 1
poison, vĕnĕnum, -i, n.
pollute, polluo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
pomp, pompa, -ae, f.
Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, m.
Pontius, Pontius, -i, m.
poor, (i.e. not rich) pauper, -ōris (61)
poppy, pāpāver, -ōris, n.
popular, vulgus, -i, n. or m.
populous, frĕquens, -tis
porch, porticus, -ūs, f.
Porsena, Porsĕna, -ae, m.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
portent, prōdigium, -i, n.
portion, pars, -tis, f.
portrait, effigies, -ei, f.
Porus, Pōrus, -i, m.
position, lōcus, -i, m.
possess, hābeo, -ui, -itum, 2; (*land*)
 possideo, possēdi, possessum, 2
possession of, to take, oceūpo, 1; to
 gain possession of, pōtior, pōtitus,
 4, dep. (*g. abl.*) see Par. 207

possible, it is *p. that*, fieri pōtēst ut
 (299); *as great as possible*, quam
 maximus; *as well as possible*;
 quam optimē
posterity, postĕri, -ōrum, m. pl.
pour, fundo, fudi, fūsum, 3
poverty, paupertas, -ātis, f.
power, pōtēstas, -ātis, f.; in the
 power of, pōnēs (*g. acc.*)
powerful, pōtēns, -tis
practice, usus, -ūs, m.
practise, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2
practor, practor, -ōris, m.
praise, laus, -dis, f.; *praise*, to,
 laudo, 1
pray, ōro, 1; *præcor*, 1, dep. (*fol.*
 ly ut)
prayers, prāces, -um, f.
precept, praeceptum, -i, n.
precious, prĕtiosus, -a, -um
predict, praedicō, -lixī, -dictum, 3
prefer, mālō, -ui, -malle, *fol.* by
 quam, pāgo 230; autēpono,
 -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3 (*g. acc. and*
dat.)
preparation; I have made every *p.*,
 omnia pāravi
prepare, pārō, 1
presence of, in the, cōram (*g. abl.*)
present, to be, adsuin, -ui, -esse (*g.*
dat.)
present, a, dōnum, -i, n.; mīnus,
 -ōris, n.; *present*, to, dōno, 1
 (*g. acc. and dat. or abl. and*
acc.); I *p. you* with a horse,
 ēquo tē dōno
preserve, servo, 1
press, prĕmo, pressī, pressum, 3
pretence, spēsies, -ei, f.; sīnūlātiō,
 -ōnis, f.
pretend, sīnūlo, 1
prevent, prōhibeo, -ui, -itum, 2;
 impēdiō, -īvi or -īi, itum, 4;
 obsto, -stāre, -stāti, -stātum, *g.*
dat.; *what prevents you* from
 coming? quid obstat (or prōhibet)
 quōmīnus vĕnīas?

previously, antē, antea
prey, praeda, -ae, f.
Príam, Príamus, -i, m.
price, pretium, -i, n.; *at a great*,
small price, &c., see Par. 284
pride, superbia, -ae, f.
priest, *priestess*, sacerdos, -ōtis, o.
prison, carcer, -ris, m.
prisoner, captivus, -i, m.
private, privatus, -a, -um
prize, praemium, -i, n.
proceed, progredior, -gressus, 3,
 dep.
proclaim, pronuntio, 1; edico,
 -dixi, -dictum, 3
proconsul, proconsul, -ulis, m.
procure, paro, 1
prodigal, prodigus, -a, -um
produce, pario, pepēri, partum, 3
profit, quaestus, -ūs, m.
profuse, see *prodigal*
promise, promissum, -i, n.; *to make*
many, *large*, *false*, &c., *promises*,
 multa, magna, falsa, &c., prō-
 mittere; *promise*, *to*, pollicor,
 -citus, 2, dep.; prōmitto, -misi,
 -missum, 3; *I p. to come*, p.
 me venturum esse (280); *I pro-*
mise (in marriage), spondeo,
 spēpondi, sponsum, 2
prone, pronus, -a, -um
property, res, rei, f.; bona, -ūrum,
 n. pl.
prophet, vates, -is, m.
propitious, propitius, -a, -um
propose, (a laio) rōgo, 1 [3
proscribe, proseribo, -psi, -ptum,
prosperity, res secundae
prosperous, (of winds, &c.) secund-
 us, -a, -um; *a prosperous city*,
 urbs florentissima
prosperously, feliciter; *very pros-*
perously, felicissimē
protection, praesidium, -i, n.
protest, *to*, reclamare, 1
proud, superbus, -a, -um
prove, demonstro, 1

provided that, dum modo, or dum-
 modo (all g. subj.)
province, provincia, -ae, f.
provisions, comestus, -ūs, m.
provoke, lacesso, -ivi, -itum, 3
prudence, prudentia, -ae, f.
prudent, prudens, -tis
public, publicus, -a, -um
Publius, Publius, -i, m.
pull, traho, -xi, -ctum, 3
punish, castigo, 1; pūnio, -ivi or
 -ii, -itum, 4; *punishment*, sup-
 plicium, -i, n.; poena, -ae, f.
pure, purus, -a, -um
purple, purpureus, -a, -um
purpose, *to*, habere in animo
pursue, sequor, -citus, 3, dep.
push down, detrado, -si, -sum, 3
put, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3; *put*
over, praeficio, -feci, -fectum,
 3 (g. dat.); *put to death*, inter-
 ficere, morte afficere; *put to*
flight, fūgo, 1; *in fūgam* verto,
 see *verto*
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -i, m.

Quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, m.
quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.; vis, vim,
 vī, f. [n.
quarters, winter, hiberna, -ūrum,
queen, regina, -ae, f.
quench (thirst), restinguo, -stinxi,
 -stinctum, 3
question, *to*, interrōgo, 1; rōgo, 1
quick, celer, -ēris, -e; *quickly*, cē-
 lēriter; *very quickly*, cēlerrimē;
quickness, cēlērītās, -ātis, f.
quiet, tranquillus, -a, -um; quīetus,
 -a, -um
quite, omnino
Quirinus, Quirinus, -i, m.

Race, gēnus, ēris, n.
rage, ira, -ae, f.; furor, -ōris, m.;
 rage, *to*, saevio, -ii, -itum, 4
rain, imber, -bris, m.; pluvia,
 -ae, f.

raise, *tollo, sustūli, sublātum*, 3
 rampart, *vallum*, -i, n.
 rank, *ordo*, -inis, m.
 rapacious, *rāpāx*, -ācis [-ia, -o
 rapid, *rāpīdus*, -a, -um; celer,
 rapidity, *cēlērītās*, -ātis, f.
 rare, *rārus*, -a, -um
 rashly, *tēmērū*
 rashness, *tēmērītās*, -ātis, f.
 rate, *to value at a very high rate*; *per-
 magni aestimāre*
 rather, *pūtius*; rather slow, quick,
 &c., *tardior, cēlērior*; (Par. 65)
 ravage, *vasto*, 1
 raven, *corvus*, -i, m.
 raw, *crūdus*, -a, -um
 ray, *rādīus*, -i, m.
 reach, *atingo*, -tigi, -tactum, 3 (g.
 acc.); *pervēnio*, -vēni, -ventum,
 4 (foll. by ad)
 read, *lēgo, lēgi, lectum*, 3
 readily, *libenter*
 ready, *pārātus*, -a, -um; ready to
 fight, *ad pugnandum*; I am
 ready to die, *nūn recuso mōri*
 real, *vērus*, -a, -um
 reality, *vērītās*, -ātis, f.
 really, *vērū*
 reap, *inūto, messui, messum*, 3
 rear, *ālō, ālui, altum*, 3
 reason (cause), *cansa*, -ae, f.; by
 reason of, *ob, propter* (both g.
 acc.)
 rebuke, *inercēpo*, -ui, -itum, 1
 recall, *rēvōco*, 1
 receive, *accipio*, -cēpi, -ceptum,
 3 [not *recipio*]
 recent, *rēcens*, -tis; *nōvus*, -a,
 -um
 recently, *nūper*
 reckon, *nūmēro*, 1
 recline, (at meals) *discumbo*, -cū-
 bui, -cūbitum, 3 [3
 recognise, *agnosco*, -nōvi, -nītum,
 recollect, *rēcorder, rēcorderātus*, 1,
 dep.; *mēmīni*, see Appendix II.,
 p. 215

recollection, *mēmōria*, -ae, f.
 recover, *rēcūpēro*, 1; *recipio*, -cēpi,
 -ceptum, 3
 recount, *narro*, 1
 refrain (oneself) from, *abstīneo*,
 -ui, -tentum, 2; I abstained
 from food, *cībo mē abstīnēbam*
 refer, *rēfēro, rettuli, rēlātum* (238);
 I referred the subject of the host-
 ages to the senate, *de obsidibus*
ad Patres rettuli
 refuge, *perfūgium*, -i, n.
 refuse, *rēcuso*, 1; g. acc.; or inf.;
 or foll. by *quīn* with subjunctive
 regard, have regard to, *respicio*,
 -spexi, -spectum, 3 (g. acc.)
 region, *rēgio*, -ōnis
 regret, *dēsīdērium*, -i, n.; regret,
 to, *dēsīdēro*, 1
 Regulus, *Rēgūlus*, -i, m.
 reign, *regnum*, -i, n.; during his
 reign, *eo regnante* or *rēge* (197);
 reign, to, *regno*, 1 (intr.); *impēro*
 (g. dat.)
 rein, *lūbēna*, -ae, f.
 reinforcement, *subsīdium*, -i, n.
 reject, *rējicio*, *rējēci*, *rējectum*, 3
 rejoice, *gaudeo*, *gāvīsus*, 2, dep.
 relate, *narro*, 1; horrible to relate!
nōtās dictu!
 relation, *prōpinquus*, -i, m.
 relieve, the city was relieved from
 the siege, *obsīdīōne urbs lēvā-
 ta est* (279)
 religion, *religio*, -ōnis, f.
 relying, *frētus*, -a, -um (g. abl.)
 remain, *māneo*, -mansi, -nsam, 2;
 remain over, *sūpersum*, -fui, -esse
 remaining, *rēlīquus*, -a, -um
 remarkable, *īnīgnis*, -o; to a r.
 degree, *īnīcū*
 remedy, *rēmēdium*, -i, n.
 remember, (1) *rēcorder*, -ātus, 1,
 dep.; *reminiscor*, -i (g. acc.,
 but sometimes gen.); (2) *mēmīni*
 (def.), see p. 215
 remembrance, *mēmōria*, -ae, f.

remind, admoneo, -ui, -itum, 2
remore, amoveo, -inovi, -mōtum, 2
remorse, dolor, -ōri. m.; poenitentia, -ae, f.
render, reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3
renew, renovo, 1
renown, fama, -ae, f.
renowned, clārus, -a, -um
repair, rēficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
repeat, itero, 1
repel, repello, -pulsum, repulsi, 3
repent, poenitet, -uit, 2, impers.
(see Par. 219 and foll.)
repentance, poenitentia, -ae, f.
reply, respondu, -i, n.; *reply*, to, respondeo, -i, -sum, 2
report, fama, -ae, f.; rumor, -ōris, m.; *report*, nuntio, 1; *it is reported*, Tullius said, fertur Tullius dixisse
repose, quies, -ētis, f.
republic, rēpublica, reipublicae, f.
repulse, propulso, 1
reputation, fama, -ae, f. [dat.]
resist, rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g.)
resolve, constituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
resource, ōpes, -um, f. --
response, responsum, -i, n.
rest, quies, -ētis, f.; *rest*, the, [cūter] -ēra, -ērum, mostly pl.; (*residue*) reliquus, -a, -um; *rest*, to, quiesco, -evi, -ētum, 3
restore, reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3;
restitutio, -ui, -ūtum, 3
restrain, coerceo, 2
result, eventus, -ūs, m.
retain, rētīnoo, -ui, -tentum, 2
retake, rēcīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3
retire, rēcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3;
the soldiers retire, milites se rēcīpiunt
retreat, rēcēptus, -ūs, m.; *retreat*, to, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3
return, rēditus, -ūs, m.; *return*, to, rēdeo, -ii, -itum, 4; *rēvertor*, -versus, 3, dep.; *to return thanks*, grātias āgēro

reveal, pātēfācio, -fēci, -factum, 3
revenge, ultio, -ōnis, f.; *revenge*, to, ulciscor, ultus, 3, dep.
revenue, vēcīgāl, -ālis, n.
reverence, rēvērentia, -ae, f.
revere, reverence, vēnērōr, -atus, 1, dep.; vēroōr, -itus, 2, dep.
revolt, sēditio, -ōnis, f.; *revolt*, to, rēficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
reward, praemium, -i, n.; mercēs, -ēdis, f.
Rhodes (island), Rhōdus, -i, f. (265)
rich, divēs, -itis, reg. comp. (not ditior, ditissimus, except in poetry)
riches, divitiae, -arum, f.; ōpes, -um, f.
ride, ūquīto, 1; vēhōr, vocatus, 3
rider, ēquēs, -itis, m.
ridiculous, ridiculus, -a, -um
right, rectus, -a, -um; *right*, jās, jūris, n.; fās, indel.
right-hand, dexter, -tra, -trum, (noun), dextra or dextera, -ae, f.
rightly, jūro (Par. 182)
ring, anulū, -i, m.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um
rise (from bed), surgo, surrexi, -rectum, 3; ōriōr, ortus, 4 dep.
risk, pēriculū, -i, n.
rite, ritūs, -ūs, m.
rival, aemulus, -a, -um (used as a n.); *he had many rivals*, multos sibi aemulos habuit
rivalry, aemulatio, -ōnis, f.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.; amnis, -is, m.; flūvius, -i, m.
road, via, -ae, f.; iter, itinēris, n.
rob, spōlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl. of thing)
robber, latro, -ōnis, m.
rock, scōpulus, -i, m.; rūpēs, -is, f.
roll, volvo, -vi, volūtum, 3 (trans.); *the stone is rolling*, lāpis volvitur
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Romulus, Rōmulus, -i, m.

roof, tectum, -i, n.
root, radix, -icis, f.
rope, funis, -is, m.
rose, rōsa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -ēra, -ōrum
round, rōtundus, -a, -um; tērēs, -ētis
round (prep.), circum (g. acc.)
rouse, excitō, 1
rout, fūgo, 1; funde, fūdi, fusum, 3
royal, rēgālis, -o; rēgius, -a, -um
rudc, rūdis, -o; incultus, -a, um
rugged, asper, -ēra, -ōrum
ruin (destruction), exīitum, -i, n.
rule, to, rūgo, -xi, -ctum (g. acc.); impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
rule, impērium, -i, n.
rumour, fūma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.
run, curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3
run up, accurre, -curri, -cursum, 3
run away, aufūgio, -fūgi, 3
running, cursus, -ūs, m.
rush, impētus, -ūs, m.
rush, to, rūo, -ui, 3 [3
rush forth, erumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,
rustic, rusticus, -a, -um

Sabine, Sibīnus, -a, -um
sacred, sācer, -era, -erum
sacrifice, sacrificium, -i, n.
sacrifice, to, sacrifico, 1
sad, tristis, -o
safe, tātus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um; incōlūmis, -o
safely, tāto
safety, sālus, -ātis, f.
sagacious, sāgax, -ācis
sail, a, vēlum, -i, n.
sail, to, nāvigo, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake, for the, causā (adverbial abl. foll. by gen. of gerundive)
salt, sal, sālis, m.
salutation, sālutatio, -ōnis, f.
salute, sālūto, 1

same, idem, eūdem, idem (103)
Samos, Sīmos, -i, f.
Samnites, Samnites, -ium, m.
sand, ārena, -ae, f.
sate, satiate, sātio, 1; explico, -plēvi, -pletum, 2
satisfy, sātisfacio, -fēcī, -factum, 3 (g. dat.)
savage, saevus, -a, -um; fērus, -a, -um
savageness, fērītās, -ātis, f.
sare (i.e. preserve), servo, 1
say, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; say...not, nēgo, 1; do you say it is not so? nūgāsnū ita esso? I say I cannot come, nēgo mē venire posse; said he, I say (used parenthetically) inquit, inquam; see page 315; it is said that Balbus lies, dicītur Balbus mentiri (Par. 177).
saying, dictum, -i, -n
scanty, exīguus, -a, -um
scarcely, vix
scarcity, inōpia, -ae, f.
scatter, spargo, -rsi, -rsum, 3; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3.
secent, ōdor, -ōris, m.
science, scientia, -ae, f.
Scipio, Scīpio, -ōnis, m.
seorch, adūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3; torreo, -ui, tostum, 2
scorn, aspernor, 1, dep.; sperno, -sprēvi, -sprētum, 3
scourge, to, virgis caedēre, lit. to strike with rods; (virga, -ae, f.)
scout, explōrator, -ōris, m.
sculptor, sculptor, -ōris, m.
sculpture, sculptūra, -ae, f.
Scythian, Scythia, -ae, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.; pēlāgus, -i, -n. (adj.) mārinus, -a, -um; nāvālis, -o
search, explōre, 1; quaero, -sivi, -situm, 3
season, tempus, -ōris, n.; tēmpes-tās, -ātis, f.

seasonable, opportunus, -a, -um
 seat, sedēs, -is, f.
 second (in ordinary numeration),
 secundus, -a, -um; (a, or the
 second, where only two are contem-
 plated), alter, -ēra, -ērū; a
 second time, iterum; a friend is
 a second self, amicus est alter
 ego
 secret, secretus, -a, -um
 secretary, scriba, -ae, m.
 secretly, clam
 secure, securus, -a, -um; see safe
 security, see safety
 sedition, seditio, -ōnis, f.
 see, video, vidi, visum, 2; to see-to
 this being done, curare hūc faci-
 endum
 seed, semen, -inis, n.
 seek, quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum,
 3; (peace) peto, -ivi or -ii,
 -itum, 3
 seem, videor, visus, 2 dep.
 seize, occupo, 1; corripio, -ripui,
 -reptum, 3
 seldom, raro
 self, ipse, -a, -um, (106, 308); -se
 (94, 218, 305-8)
 sell, vendo, -didi, -ditum, 3
 seller, venditor, -ōris, m.
 senate, senatus, -ūs, m.; also
 Patres, -rum; it was referred to
 the s., ad Patres relatum est
 senate-house, curia, -ae, f.
 senator, senator, -ōris, m.
 send, mitto, misi, missum, 3 (to, ad)
 send away, dimitto, misi, missum,
 3
 send for, arcesso, -ivi, -itum, 3 [3
 send on, praemitto, -misi, -missum,
 sentinel, vigil, -ilis, m.
 separate, separo, 1
 serious, gravis, -e
 serpent, serpens, -tis, c.
 servant (slave), servus, -i, m.;
 (attendant) minister, -ri, m.
 serve, servio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4

(g. dat.): to a. (as a soldier),
 stipendium merere
 service, (benefit), beneficium, -i, n.;
 to perform military service, sti-
 pendium merere
 servile, servilis, -e
 servitude, servitium, -i, n.; (but in
 Cicero) servitus, -utis, f.
 set, (of the sun) occido, -ocidi,
 -casum, 3; set out, proficiscor,
 -fectus, 3, dep. ("for" after this
 v. must be rendered ad; but see
 Par. 219); set an example, ex-
 emplum praebere; set on fire,
 incendio, -cendi, -censum, 3
 setting, occasus, -ūs, m.
 seven, septem, indecl.; see Par. 81
 several, plures, -a, (72)
 severe, gravis, -e; severely, graviter
 severity, severitas, -atis, f.
 shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.
 shady, umbratus, -a, -um
 shake, quatio, quassum, 3; I shake
 off sleep, somnum excutio, -cussi,
 -cussum, 3
 shame, pudor, -oris, m.
 shameful, turpis, -e
 shameless, impudens, -tis
 shamelessness, impudentia, -ae, f.
 shape, forma, -ae, f.
 share, pars, -tis, f.
 share, to, divido, -si, -sum, 3
 sharp, acutus, -a, -um; acer, acris,
 -acre
 sharpen, acuō, -ui, -utum, 3
 shave, rado, -si, -sum, 3
 she, see he
 shear, tondeo, tondendi, tonsum, 2
 sheep, ovis, -is, f.
 shepherd, pastor, -ōris, m.
 shield, scutum, -i, n.; clipeus, -i, m.
 shine, luceo, -xi, 2; (of a meadow)
 niteo, -ui, 2 [ga
 ship, navis, -is, f.; (of war) n. lon-
 shipwreck, naufragium, -i, n.
 shirt, tunica, -ae, f.
 shock, impetus, -ūs, m.

shore, litus, -ūris, n.; ōra, -ae, f.
short, brevīs, -o; *for a short time*
 paulisper
shoulder, (h)ūmērus, -i, m.
shout, clamor, -ōris, m.
shout, to, clamō, 1
show, to, monstro, 1
shower, imber, -bris, m.
shrub, frūtex, -icis, m.
shun, fūgio, fūgi, 3; vitō, 1
shut, shut in, claudō, -si, -sum, 3
Sicily, Sicīlia, -ae, f.
sick, sickly, nōger, -gra, -grum;
 infirmus, -a, -um
side, lātus, -ōris, n.; *on this side*,
 citrā, eis (g. acc.); *on one side...*
on the other side, line...illine;
sides, on all, passim; *sides, from*
all, undīquo
sight, vīsus, -ūs, m.; conspectus,
 -ūs, m.; *in the sight of the*
people, pūlam pōpūlo
sign, signal, signum, -i, n.
silence, silentium, -i, n.
silent, silens, -tis; tacitus, -a, -um;
silently, tacitū
silent, to be, taceo, -uī, -itum, 2;
 sileo, -rē, 2
silver, argentum, -i, n.; (adj.)
 argentous, -a, -um
simple, simplex, -icis
sin, peccatum, -i, n.; scēlus, -ōris, n.
sin, to, peceo, 1
since, quōniā (with indic.); cum
 (with subj.); *since this is so*, quao
 cum itā sint (151)
sing, canto, 1; cāno, cecīni, can-
 tm, 3
single, ūnus, -a, -um
sink, mergo, -rē, -rsum, 3 (trans.);
 mergor (intrans.)
sister, sūror, -ōris, f.
sit, sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 3
sit down, considō, -sēdi, -sessum, 3
six, sixty, &c. See Par. 81
size, magnitūdo, -īnis, f.
skilful, skilled, pēritus, -a, -um

skill, pēritia, -ae, f.
skin, cūtis, -is, f.; pellis, -is, f.
sky, caelum, -i, n.
slander, mālēdico, -xi, -ctum, 3 (g.
 dat.)
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, -i, m.; *to be a slave*,
 servīro
slavery, servitūs, -utis, f.
slay, interficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3;
 occīdo, -cīdi, -ctum, 3
sleep, somnus, -i, m. [4
sleep, to, dormio, -ivi or -ii, -itum,
slender, grācilis, -e (60); tēnuis, -e
slight, lēvis, -o
slip, labor, lap-ns, 3 dep.
slip down, dēlabor, -lapsus, 3, dep.
slough, ignāvia, -ae, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
slowly, tardē
slumber, somnus, -i, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um
smear, obliño, -lēvi, -lītum, 3
smell, ōdor, -ōris, m.
smile, rīdeo, -si, -smn, 2
snake, cōlūber, -bri, m. (rare);
 anguis, -is, m.
snare, insidiac, -ārum, f.
snatch, rīpio, -uī, -ptum, 3; *snatch*
from, erīpio, -rīpi, -eptum, g.
 dat. of pers. (192) [3
snatch away, abrīpio, -uī, -reptum,
snow, nix, nivis, f.
so, (with adj.) tam; *so good*, tam
 bōnus; itā; *and so, i.e. there-*
upon, itāquē; (*in this way*) sic
 (*to such an extent*) tam
so great, large, tantus, -a, -um
so many, tōt, incl.
so much (money, &c.), tantum
 (pecūniae, &c.).
Socrates, Socrātes, -is, m.
soft, mollis, -o
soften, mollio, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
soil, solum, -i, n.; hūmus, -i, f.
soldier, milēs, -ītis, m.
sole, ūnus, -a, -um; ūnicus, -a, -um

some, nonnullus, -a, -um; *some...*
others, alii...alii; *there is some-*
thing after death, est aliquid
 post mortem; *I fear something*
has happened, vereor ne quid
 acciderit; *some poet says*, poeta
 quidam dicit; *there is some (i.e.*
something of) art in writing, est
 aliquid artis in scribendo; *there*
are (some) who say, sunt qui
 dicant

sometimes, interdum, aliquando
somewhat (with adj.) see Par. 65

son, filius, -i, m.; *listen, my son*,
 audi, mi fili (13)

son-in-law, gener, -eri, m.

song, carmen, -inis, n.; *cantus*, -us,
 m.

soon, mox

soothsayer, haruspex, -icis, m.

sorrow, dolor, -oris, m.

sort, genus, -eris, n.

soul, anima, -ae, f.

sound, a, sonus, -i, m; sonitus, -us,
 m.

sound, to, sono, -ni, -itum, 1; *the*
trumpet sounds, tuba canit

sour, acerbus, -a, -um

source, fons, -ntis, m.

sow, sero, sēvi, sātum, 3.

space, spātium, -i, n.

Spain, Hispania, -ae, f.

spare, parco, pēperci, parsum, 3
 (g. dat.)

Sparta, Sparta, -ac, f.

speak, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; loquor,
 -ctus, 3 dep.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

spectacle, spectaculum, -i, n.

spectre, spectrum, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.

speech, oratio, -ōnis, f.; contio,

speed, celeritas, -atis, f.; *with*

speed, speedily, celeriter

spend, consumo, -sumpsi, -sump-
 tum, 3 [m.]

spirit, spiritus, -us, m.; animus, -i,

splendid, splendidus, -a, -um

splendour, splendor, -oris, m.

spoil, spolio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl.
 of thing)

spoils, spolia, -orum, n.

sport, ludus, -i, m.

spot, locus, -i, m.; plur. loca

spring, ver, veris, n.

spring forward, prosilio, -silui,
 -sultum, 4

spur, calcar, -aris, n. (39)

spurn, sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3

spy, explorator, -oris, m.

squander, dissipō, 1.

stab, confodio, -fodi, -fossam, 3

stag, cervus, -i, m.

stand, sto, stēti, statum, 1

stand up, consurgo, -surrexi, 3

standard, signum, -i, n.

star, stella, -ae, f.; sidus, -eris, n.

state, civitas, -atis, f.; respublica,
 reipublicae, f.

station, to, loco, 1

statue, stātua, -ae, f.

stay, māneo, -nei, -nsum, 2; moror,
 -atus, 1 dep.

steadily, constanter... [-ōcis

stern, sēverus, -a, -um; atrox,

sternness, sēveritas, -atis, f.

sticli, baculus, -i, m.

still (i. e. yet), adhuc

stir, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

stomach, venter, -tris, m.

stone, lapis, -idis, m.; saxum, -i,
 n.

stop, consisto, -stēti, -stētum, 3

stop, (trans.) moror, 1, dep.

storm, prœcella, -ae, f.; tempestas,
 -atis, f.

storm, to, expugno, 1

story, fabula, -ae, f.

straight, rectus, -a, -nm

strange, mirus, -a, -um

stranger, hospes, -itis, m.; advēna,
 -ae, m.

stratagem, dōlus, -i, m.

stream, flumen, -inis, n.; rivus, -i,
 m.

street, vicus, -i, m.
 strength, vires, -ium, f. pl.
 strengthen, firmo, 1
 stretch out, extendo, -di, -sum, 3
 strew, sterno, strāvi, strātum, 3
 strike, strike down, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3; *having been struck by lightning*, fulmine ictus (-a, -um)
 strive, (i.e. endeavour) nitor, nisus or nixus, 3, dep. (with ut and subjunctive); (i.e. fight) certo, 1; *we strive for mastery with the Roman people*, de imperio cum populo Romanō armis certāmus (constr. with inf., and with dat. for cum, is mostly poetical)
 strong, vāidus, -a, -um
 struggle, certāmen, -inis, n.
 struggle, to, luctor, 1 dep.
 study, stūdiū, -i, n.
 study, to, stūdeo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)
 stuff, to, furcio, farsī, fartum, 4
 stupid, stultus, -a, -um
 subdue, subjugate, subigo, -egi, -actum, 3
 subtle, callidus, -a, -um
 subtract, dēmo, dēnpsi, dēptum, 3 (coll. by de; or dat. of pers., acc. of thing)
 succeed, I succeed, i.e. I prosper, rēs mihi bēnē succēdit, or rem bēnē gēro. N.B. *not*, in this sense, succēdo, -si, -sum, 3, which is only used for "take the place of," and g. dat.; *fresh men succeeded the wearied*, integri dēfātigātis succēsserunt
 success, victōria, -ae, f.; *they returned without s.*, rē infectā rēdiērunt
 successfully, feliciter; *more successfully*, felicius
 succumb, succumbo, succūbui, succūbitum, 3 (g. dat.)
 such, talis, -e
 sudden, subitus, -a, -um

suddenly, repente, subito, statim
 Suevi, Suevī, -drum, m.
 suffer, pātor, passus, 3 dep.
 sufficient, satis, indecl.; idoneus, -a, -um; sufficiently good, satis bonus
 suited for, suitable, aptus, -a, -um, idoneus, -a, -um (with dat. or ad; aptus, with persons, dat.)
 sum of money, pecunia, -ae, f.
 summer, aestas, -atis, f.
 summit, culmen, -inis, n.
 summon, vōco, 1; convōco
 sun, sol, solis, m.
 sunrise, lux, lucis, f.; solis ortus
 sunset, solis occasus
 sure, cēno, 1
 superstition, superstitio, -onis, f.
 supper, cēna, -ae, f.
 suppliant, supplex, -eis
 supplies, comineāns, -as, m.; *we are hindered from getting: s.*, prōhibemur comineāti
 support (nourish), nutrio, -ivi, -itum, 4; sustineo, -ui, -tentum, 2; sustento, 1
 suppose, pūto, 1
 supreme, supiēmus, -a, -um; eminentus, -a, -um
 sure, certus, -a, -um
 surname, cognōmen, -inis, n.
 surrender, trālo, -didi, -ditum, 3; also (but most frequ. of s. persons) dēdo, dēdidi, dēditum, 3
 surround, circumdo, -dēdi, -ditum, dāro (acc. and abl. or acc. and dat.; see Ex. LXII.) [dat.]
 surmise, supersum, -ui, -esse (g.
 suspicion, suspicio, -onis, f.
 sustain, sustineo, 2; (nourish), nutrio, -ivi, -itum, 4
 swallow, hirundo, -inis, f.
 swan, cygnus, -i, m.
 swear, jūro, 1; *I swear to come*, j. mo venturum esse; *I s. to obey a law*, j. in lēgem.
 sweat, sudor, -oris, m.

sweet, dulcis, -e; suavis, -e
swift, celer, -is, -o
swiftly, celeriter
swiftness, celeritas, -atis, f.
sail, to, no, navi, natum, 1
sword, gladius, -i, m.; *with fire*
and sword, ferro atque igni
Syracuse, Syracusae, -arum, f. pl.
Syria, Syria, -ae, f.

Table, mensa, -ae, f.

tail, cauda, -ae, f.

take, capio, cepi, captum, 3; *take*
away, arimo, -emi, -emptum, 3;
take, abstrahere, ablatum, auferre;
take by storm, expugno, 1; *take*
care of, curo, 1 (g. acc.); *take*
care to, cura ut; *take place*, eo
happen

talk, loquor, locutus, 3 dep.

talkative, loquax, -acis [-um]

tall, procerus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um

tame, mansuetus, -a, -um; *to tame*,

domo, -i, -itum, 1

Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i, m.

task, opus, -eris, n.

taste, gusto, 1

tasteful, elegans, -ntis; *tastefully*,
eleganter

Tatius, Tātius, -i, m.

Taurus, mount, Taurus, -i, m.

tax, tributum, -i, n.; *vectigal*,
-alis, n.

teach, doceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 (g. two
 acc.) See Par. 312

teacher, magister, -tri, m.

tear, lacrima, -ae, f.

tear, to, scindo, scidi, scissum, 3;

tear away, avollo, -velli, -vulsum,

3; *tear out*, evollo, -velli, -vulsum,

3; *to tear away from one's em-*

brace, avellere de amplexu

tell, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3, dat. & acc.

temerity, temeritas, -atis, f.

temper, animus, -i, m.

tempest, tempestas, -atis, f.; *pro-*

cella, -ae, f.

temple, templum, -i, n.; *aedes*, -is

f.

ten, decem, indecl.; (distr.) *denus*
 -a, -um; see Par. 314

tender, tener, -era, -erum (61)

tent, tentorium, -i, n.

tenth, decimus, -a, -um

terminate, finio, 4

terrible, dirus, -a, -um

terrify, terreo, -ui, -itum, 2

territories, fines, -ium, m.

terror, terror, -oris, m.

Thames, Tāmesis, -is, m.

than, (62, 63) quam

thanks, gratiae, -arum, f.; *I return*
 t., gratias ago

that (dem. pron.), illud, -a, -ud; *is*,
 -a, -id; *that of yours*, istud, -a,
 -ud (if used with adj. and nouns
 the position of illud, is, istud is like
 that of hic; see "this")

that (rel. pron.) qui; *that* (nom. or
 abl.) . . . not, quin (145, 300);
there was no one that did not hate
you, nemo erat quin te odisset

that (conj.) ut; *that not*, ne (131);
 (with comp.) quo (303); *that*
they might the more easily go, quo
 facilius irent. N.B. Unless "that"
 denotes purpose or consequence, it
 must not be rendered by ut

theatre, theatrum, -i, n.

Theban, Thebanus, -i, m.

Thebes, Thebae, -arum, f.

theft, furtum, -i, n.

their, eorum, earum, eorum; (*own*)

suus, -a, -um

Themistocles, Themistocles, -is, m.

then, tum; tunc; deinde; see tum,

tunc in L. Vocab.

thence, inde

there, ibi, illic; *often not trans. in*
Lat., e.g. there are some who say
sunt qui dicant [Vocab.]

therefore, igitur, itaque; see Lat.

Thermopylae, Thermopylae, -arum,

f.

Thetis, Thētis, -idis, f.
thick, (of garments) *crassus*, -a, -um; *densus*, -a, -um
thicket, dūnētūni, -i, n.
thief, fūr, -is, m.
thin, mācer, -era, -erum; *tennis*, -o
thing, rēs, rei, f.
think, pūto, 1; existō, 1; cōgito, 1; reor, rātus, rēri; *thinking that the enemy were at hand*, rātus hostes ādīssō; *I thought to myself*, mēcum cōgītābam
third, tertius, -a, -um
thirst, sitis, -is, f. acc. -im, abl. -i; *to die of thirst*, sitī mōri
thirteen, trēdecim, indecl.
thirty, trīgintā, indecl.
this, hic, haec, hūc (if used with Adj. and Noun, mostly comes between the two; *this sad calamity*, tristis haec cālāmītās; or else tam, "so" is inserted, haec tam tristis e.; *this great army*, hic tantus exercītus). N.B. the same rule applies to the pron. adj. generally, illū, istū, meus, tuus, &c.
thither, eo, illūc
thou, tū, see p. 45
though, quamvis (g. subj.); quamquam (g. ind.), see Par. 323
thousand, see Par. 80
threat, mīna, -ae, f.
threaten, mīnor, 1, dep. (g. acc. of thing and dat. of person); *I threaten you with death*, mīnor tibi mortem
three, trēs, trīn (78); *three hundred*, trēcenti, -ae, -a; *three hundred apiece*, trēcēni, -ae, -a (314); *three times*, thrice, ter; *three days*, tridūm, -i, n.; *three years*, triennium, -i, n.
thrifty, parcus, -a, -um
throat, guttur, -ūris, n.
throne, sōlium, -i, n.

through, pēr (g. acc.)
throw, cōjicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3
thrash, turdus, -i, m.
thumb, pollex, -īcis, m.
thunder, to, tōnn, -ni, -itum, 1
thunderbolt, fulmen, -īnis, n.
thus, sic, itā
thy, tuus, -a, -um
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, m.
tide, aestus, -ūs, m.
tiger, tigris, -is or -īdis, c.
till, donec, dum, quoad; *to till*, cōlo, -ni, cultum, 3
time, tempus, -ūris, n.; *a second time*, iterum; *by this time*, jam; *four times*, see "four"
timely, opportunus, -a, -um
timid, timīdus, -a, -um
Titus, Titus, -i, m.
to, in, ūl (g. acc.). N.B. (1) "to" before a verb is never to be read by the Lat. inf. unless the inf. is the subj. or obj. of another verb; (2) nor by the supine except after a verb of motion; (3) it is rendered by the subjunctive when meaning "in order to," and also after verbs of asking, &c. (143); (4) see also ad and gerundive (186)
to-day, hūdiē
together, simul, una; *having conversed*, inter sēsē collōcūti
toil, lābor, -ōris, m.
token, indicium; -i, n.; *pledge*, pignus, -ōris, n.
tolerate, pātior, passus, 3 dep.
tonib, sēpulcrum, -i, n.; *tumulus*, -i, m.
to-morrow, crās
tongue, lingua, -ae, f.
too, too much, (adv.) nimis, nimium; *too little*, parum (adv. used also as a noun); *he has too little strength*, parum virium habet; *this task is too difficult for you to accomplish*, hūc opus difficīlius est quam quod (or ut

hōc) perficiās; *see also* Par. 64, 149
tooth, dens, -tis, m.
top, vertex, -icis, m.; *the top of the mountain*, uons summus
torch, tacea, -ae, f.; fax, -fācis, f.
torn, lacer, -āra, -ērūm
torture, cruciātus, -ūs, m.
touch, tango, tetigi, tactum, 3
towards, versus (of places); ergā (of conduct towards persons); ad (all g. acc.), *see* Par. 183
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -i, n.
truce, vestigium -i, n.
train, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2; (educate) erūdio, -ivi, -itum, 4
traitor, proditor, -ōris, m.
tranquil, tranquillū, -a, -um
tranquillity, tranquillitas, -ātis, f.
transfer, ago, -egi, actum, 3
transfer, transport, transfēro, -tūi, -lātum, -ferre
travel, iter facio
traveller, viator, -ōris, m.
treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um; *treacherously*, per dolum
treachery, perfidia, -ae, f.; dōlus, -i, m.
treason, (military) proditio, -ōnis, f.; (civil) mājestas, -atis, f.
treasure, thēsaurus, -i, m.
treasury, aerārium, -i, n.
treaty, foedus, -ēris, n.
tree, arbor, -ōris, f.
tremble, trēmo, -ui, 3; (from top to toe) contrēmo, -ui, 3
tribe, tribus, -ūs, f.
tribunal, tribūnal, -ālis, n.
tribune, tribūnus, -i, m.
tribuneship, tribūnātus, -ūs, m.
tribute, tribūtum, -i, n.
trick, dōlus, -i, m.
trifles, nūgae, -ārum, f. pl.
triumph, triumphus, -i, m.; *to triumph*, triumpho, 1
Trojan, Trojānus, -i, m.

troop (of horse), turma, -ae, f.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f.
trophy, trōpaeum, -i, n.
trouble, ōpēra, -ae, f.; *to trouble*, turbo, 1
troublesome, mōlestus, -a, -um
Troy, Troja, -ae, f.
true, vērū, -a, -um; *truly*, i.e. truthfully, vērū
trumpet, lūba, -ae, f.
trunk, truncus, -i, m.;
trust, to, crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3 (dat.); confido, -fīsus sum, 3 (dat. of pers., abl. of thing); *trusting in the nature of their position*, naturā loci confisi;
trust, fides, -ei, f.
trusty, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um
truth, (abstract) vērītās, -ātis, f.; (what is true, fact) vērūm, -i, n.; *if you will have the truth*, si vērūm audire vīs; *you have spoken the truth*, vērā dixisti
try, cōnor, 1, dep. (with inf.); *make proof of*, tento, 1; *we have tried this danger*, tēntāvimus hoc pēriculum
Tullius, Tullius, -i, m. (3)
Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.
Tulliola, Tulliola, -ae, f., i.e. the little Tullia (a child's name)
Tullus, Tullus, -i, m.
tumult, tūmulus, -ūs, m.
turn, verto, -ti, -sum, 3; *he turned to (in speaking)*, se convertit ad; *the enemy turned their backs*, i.e. fled, terga dēderunt; *turn out*, evēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *in turn*, invicem
twelve, *see* Par. 81; distrib. 314
twenty, tēntieth, *see* Para. 81, 314
twice, bis
twist, torqueo, -si, -tum, 2
two, duo, -ae, -o (78, 314); *two hundred*, dūcenti, -ae, -a; *two days*, bīdnum, -i, n.
tyrant, tērannus, -i, n.

Ugliness, *dēformitas*, -ātis, f.
ugly, *turpis*, -e
Ulysses, *Ūlysses*, -is, m.
unable, *I am*, *nēqueo*, -quīvi, 4;
imperf. *nequibam*; *see* L. Vocab.
unaccustomed, *insōlītus*, -a, -um
unarmed, *īnermis*, -e
uncertain, *īncertus*, -a, -um (*g.*
gen.)
uncultivated, *īnōlītus*, -a, -um
under, *sūb*, Par. 180 (*g. abl. or*
acc.); *under Caesar (as general)*,
Cæsare dūce (197)
undergo, *sūbeo*, -īvi or -īi, 4
understand, *īntellēgo*, -lēxi, -lēc-
tum, 3
undertake, *suscipio*, -cēpi, -cep-
tum, 3; *to undertake politics*,
cāpēssere rem-publicam
undeserving, *īdignus*, -a, -um (*g.*
abl.)
unequal, *īnpār*, -pāris
unfair, *īnīquus*, -a, -um
unfortunate, *īnfēlix*, -īcis
unfriendly, *īnīmīcus*, -a, -um
ungrateful, *īngrātus*, -a, -um
unhappy, *īnfēlix*, -īcis
unity, *cōcordia*, -ae, f.
universal, *ūnīversus*, -a, -um
unjust, *īnīustus*, -a, -um
unknown, *īgnōtus*, -a, -um
unlearned, *īndoctus*, -a, -um
unless, *nīsī* (*same construction as si*,
see Par. 125, 295)
unlike, *dissimilis*, -e
unlucky, *īnfēlix*, -īcis; *īnfaustus*,
-i, um [*gen.*]
unmindful, *īmmemor*, -ōris, (*g.*
unpleasant, *īngrātus*, -a, -um
unseasonable, *īnopportūnus*, -a,
-um
unsuccessfully, *īnfelīciter*
until, *dum*; *dūnēc*; *quoad*; *not*
until, *nōn antēquam*; *he did not*
answer until I twice questioned
him, *nōn antē respondit quam*
his eum interrogāvi

unwarlike, *īmbellis*, -e
unwilling, *I am u. to come*, *nōlo*
(nōlui, nolle, 234) vēnīre; *she*
came unwillingly, *īnvīta* (-a,
-um) *vēnit*. N.B. *This adj. agrees*
with its noun, but is only used
adverbially; *īnvītus est is not*
Latin [*abl.*]
unworthy, *īdignus*, -a, -um (*g.*
uphold, *sustīneo*, -ui, -tentum, 2
upon, *sūper* (180)
uprightness, *prōbītās*, -ātis, f
up to, *tēnus* (178)
urge, *urgēo*, *ursi*, 2
us, *see* Par. 90, 93
use, *to*, *utor*, *usus*, 3, *dep.* (*g. abl.*)
used, *he, they, used to, &c. (turn by*
imperf. indic. or by sōleo, sōlī-
tus, 2, dep.)
useful, *ūtilis*, -e
useless, *īnūtilis*, e
usual, *sōlītus*, -a, -um
usually, *fēre*, *plērumquē*
utter, *ēdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
utterly, *omnīno*; *utterly destroy*,
dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 (*for other*
verbs used with "utterly," see the
verbs themselves)

Vain, *vānus*, -a, -um; *īnānis*, -e
vainly, *in vain*, *frustrā*; *nēquī-*
quam
valley, *vallis*, -is, f.
valour, *virtus*, -ūtis, f.
value, *prētium*, -ī, n.; *to estimate*
at a high value, *magnī aestīmāre*;
to value, *aestīmo*, 1 (283, 284)
valuable, *prētīus*, -us, -a, -um
vanish, *ēvānesco*, *ēvānuī*, 3
vanguish, *vinco*, *vīci*, *victum*, 3
variety, *vārīetās*, -ātis, f.
various, *vārīing*, *vārīus*, -a, -um
vast, *īngens*, -tis
venerate (worship), *vēnēror*, 1, *dep.*
venom, *vīrus*, -ī, n.
venture, *audeo*, *ausus*, 2, *dep.*
Venus, *Vēnus*, -ēris, f.

verse, *versus*, -ūs, m.
very, *ipsē*, -a, -um; *your very life*,
vita tua ipsa; *very small*, *par-*
vulus, -a, -um; *very great*, *very*
many, &c., *perinagnus*, *per-*
multi, &c.
vessel, *nāvis*, -is, f.; *nāvigium*, -i,
 n.
Vesta, *Vesta*, -ae, f.
vice, *vītium*, -i, n.
vicious, *prāvus*, -a, -um
victim, *victima*, -ae, f.
victor, *victor*, -ōris, m.
victorious, *victor*, -ōris, m.; *victrix*,
 -icis, f.
victory, *victōria*, -ae, f.
vigour, *vigor*, -ōris, m.; *vires*, -ium,
 f.
village, *vīcus*, -i, m.
villain, *scēlestus*, -a, -um
vine, *vītis*, -is, f.
vineyard, *vīna*, -ae, f.
violate, *viōlo*, 1
violence, *vīs*, acc. *vim*, abl. *vi*, f.;
by v., *per vim*, or *vī*
violent, *violētus*, -a, -um
violently, *violēter*, or *vi*
Virgil, *Vergilius*, -i, m.
virgin, *virgo*, -inis, f.
virtue, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.
virtuous, *prōbus*, -a, -um
vision, *visus*, -ūs, m.; *dream*, *som-*
niūm, -i, n.
visit, *vīso*, -si, 3; *visit* (*with punish-*
ment), *afficio*, -fēcī, -fēc-tum, 3
voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, f.
void, *expers*, -tis
vomit forth, *evōmo*, -ui, -itum, 3;
(against any one, in with acc.)
void, *vōtum*, -i, n.; *void*, *to*, *vōveo*,
vōvi, *vōtum*, 2
Vulcan, *Vulcānus*, -i, m.
vulture, *vultur*, -ūris, m.

Wage, *gūro*, *gessi*, *gestum*, 3; *I*
wage war, *bellum gēro*

wait, *māneo*, -nsi, -nsum, 2; *wait*
for, *expecto*, 1
walk, *ambūlo*, 1
wall, *mūrus*, -i, m.; *town walls*,
moenia, -ium, n. pl.
wander, *erro*, 1; *vāgor*, *pālor*, 1,
 dep.
wandering, *error*, -ōris, m.
want, *inūpia*, -ae, f.
wanting, *to be*, *dēsum*, -fui, -esse
war, *bellum*, -i, n.; *in war and in*
peace, *dōmi bellique*, or (*more*
commonly) *militiaeque* (265); *a*
ship of war, *nāvis longa*
warlike, *bellicōsus*, -a, -um
warm, *cālidus*, -a, -um; *warm*, *to*
grow, *cālesco*, 3
warmth, *cālor*, -ōris, m.
warn, *mōneo*, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)
wash, *lāvo*, *lāvi*, *lōtum*, 1
waste, *lay waste*, *vasto*, 1; *to waste*
time, *tempus tērere*, -trīvi, -trī-
 tum, 3; *waste* (*adj.*), *a w. district*,
rēgio inculta
watch, *vīgilia*, -ae, f.; *watch*, *to*,
vīgilo, 1
water, *āqua*, -ae, f.; *water*, *to*,
rīgo, 1; *a river waters this*
valley, *amnis hano vallem rīgat*
wave, *fluctus*, -ūs, m.
way, *via*, -ae, f.; *itor*, *itinēris*, n.;
manner, *mōdus*, -i, m.; *in what*
way? *quōmōdo?*
we, see page 45
weak, *infirmus*, -a, -um
weaken, *mīnuo*, -ui, -itum, 3
weakness, *dūbilitās*, -ātis, f.
wealth, *divitiao*, -arum, f.; *opes*,
 -um, f.
wealthy, *divēs*, -ītis
weapon, *tēlum*, -i, n.
weary, *icessus*, -a, -um; *I am weary*
of, *tacet mē* (*g. gen.*) *Par.* 222
 and foll.
weave, *texo*, -ui, -xtum, 3
web, *tēla*, -ae, f.
weep, *fleo*, *flēvi*, *flētum*, 2

weight, pondus, -ēris, n.

weighty, grāvis, -e

well, a. p̄tens, -i, m.; (adv.) b̄nē;
well, to be, vāleo, -ui, 2; *well*
known, it is, constat, 1, im-
 pers.

west, occīdens, -tis, m.

wet, mādīdus, -a, -um

whale, bālaena, -ae, f.

what? quīd? (that which) quod;
what was good for one was bad
for another, quod ālii pr̄fuit,
 ālii obfuit; *what deed?* s̄cō
 Par. 111

what (in order of number)? quōtus,
 -a, -um? *what o'clock?* quōtu
 hōra?

whatever, quisquīs, quicumquē;
w. he said, was false, quodcum-
 quē dixit, falsum erat; (ofl. used
 partitionally) *whatever arms we*
had, were given up to the enemy,
 quidquīd (or quodcumquē) armō-
 rum hābuimus, hostibus trādī-
 tum est

when, (1) cum,¹ ūbi; (2) (inter-
 rogative), quando? (also used
 dependently); *tell me when you*
will come, dīc mīhi quando
 ventūrus sīs

whence, undē [ūbi?

where, quā, ūbi; (interrogative)

whether, conj. (1) (in dep. quest.)
 num, nōnū (135); *whether...or*,
 (a) utrum...ān, (b) -nū...ān (171);
I do not know w., nescio ān (302)

whether, conj. (2) (in alternative-sup-
 positions), *whether...or* (a) sive...
 sive, (b) seu...seu; *whether this*
is true or false, I shall go to
Rome, ēquidēn, sive haec v̄ra
 sunt, sive falsa, Rōnam ībo

whether (archaic pron.) *whether of*
the two? ūter? utra? utrum?

which, quī, quae, quod; (of the
 two) ūter, utra, utrum, s̄cō Par.
 85

while, dum (272). foll. by indic.

white, candīdus, -a, -um

whither, quō; *whither in the world?*
 quonam terrārum?

who, quī, quae, quod; *T. was the*
first who did this, T. pr̄mus hūc
 f̄c̄it; (interrogative) quīs, quīd
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (85); *the whole*
of the valley, vallis tōta

why, cur?

wicked, im̄pius, -a, -um

wickedness, im̄pīa, -ēris, n.

wide, lātus, -a, -um

wife, uxor, -ōris, f.

wild, f̄rus, -a, -um; *w. beast*, f̄era,
 -ae, f.; *wild boar*, āper, -pri, m.

will, vōluntas, -ātis, f.

willing, to be, vōlo, vōlui, vello

willingly, libenter

wind, ventus, -i, m.

wine, vīnum, -i, n.

wing, āla, -ae, f.; of an

cornū, -ūs, n.

winter, hiemps, -ēmis, f.; *war*
quarters, liberna, -ōrum

wisdom, sapiētia, -ae, f.; (not to be
 as distinct from "valour," consi-
 lium, -i, n.

wise, sapiēns, -tis

wish, vōluntās, -ātis, f.; studiū,

-i, n.; *wish, to, or wish for*, vōlo,
 velle, vōlui; pp. 128, 129

with, cum (g. abl.); (in-the-house-
 of) ap̄ud (178)

withdraw (trans.), dētrāho, -traxi,
 -tractum, 3; (intrans.) recēdo,
 -cessi, -cessum, 3

¹ The form quum, which is still erroneously retained in some modern editions of classical authors, has no authority. It is "of the rarest possible occurrence even in late MSS." and was long ago described by an eminent grammarian as "dead and buried."

within, intrā (g. acc.); (adv.) in-
tus; *w. three days*, tribus his
diebus (263a)
without, sinē (g. abl.); (outside),
extrā (g. acc.), (adv.) extrā;
without accomplishing anything,
rē infectā; *without the know-
ledge of*, clam (g. abl.)
withstand, rēsi-to, -stiti, -stitum,
3 (g. dat.)
witness, testis, -is, m.; *witness, call
to*, testor, 1, dep.
witty, lepīdus, -a, -um
woe! vae! (interjection)
wolf, lūpus, -i, m.
woman, mulier, -ēris, f.; fēmina,
-ae, f.
womanish, muliebri, -o
wonder, wonder at, miror, 1, dep.
wonderful, mirus, -a, -um
wont, to be, sūleo, sūlitus, 2; (also
rend. by imperf. indic.) the land
was wont to be laid waste, āger
vastābātur
wood, a, silva, -ae, f.; wood,
māteries, ēi, f.
wooden, ligneus, -a, -um
wooden, ligna, -ae, f.
wrap, arborum, -i, n.; *to keep one's
word*, fidem praestāre; *to bring
up*, rēnūtiāre
work, opus, -ēris, n.
workman, fāber, -ri, m.
*world, where, whither, &c., in the
world?* ubi, quonam, &c., terrā-
rum? *the world*, (terrarum) orbis,
-is, m.; N.B. mundus, -i, m.
means "universe" incl. the stars;
the Campanian country is the
most beautiful in the world, āger
Campānus orbis (gen.) terrārum
pulcherrimus est
worm, vermis, -is, m.
worn out, confectus, -a, -um
worse, pūjor, -ōris (68)
worship, cōlo, -ui, -cultum, 3
worst, pessimus, -a, -um (69)

worth, to be, vāleo, -ui, 2
worthless (of men), nūquam, indecl.;
more w., most w., see Par. 68
worthy, dignus, -a, -um (g. abl.);
the worthy Tullius, T., vīr
optīmus; *worthy, to deem*, dig-
nor, 1, dep. (g. abl.)
*would, he would not (i.e. wished
not to) come*, nōluit venīre; *he
would (i.e. he was determined to)
come*, vōluit venīre
would that, ūtīnam (g. pres. subj.
of possible, imperf. subj. of im-
possible wishes; see Par.
295)
wound, vulnus, -ēris, n.; *wound*,
to, vulnēro, 1
wrath, ira, -ae, f.
wreck, naufrāgium, -i, n.
wreath, sertum, -i, n.
wrest, to, extorqueo, -torsi, -tortum,
2 (dat. of pers. or abl. with a)
wretched, miser, -ēra, -ērum
write, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3
writer, scriptor, -ōris, m.
wrong, a, iniūria, -ae, f.

Xenophon, Xēnōphon, -phontis,
m.

Xerxes, Xorxēs, -is, m.

Year, annus, -i, m.

yearly, every year, quōtannis

yesterday, hēri; *yesterday night*,
nox hesternā

yet, as yet, adhūc; *nevertheless*,
tūmen (at the beginning of a
clause, or after an emphatic word);
not yet, nōndum

yield, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 (g. dat.)

yoke, iūgum, -i, n; *to send under
the yoke*, sub iūgum mittēre

you, vōs; see page 45

young (man), iūvenis, -is, -m.; iūdū-
lescens, -tis, m.; (boys), puēri

parvūli; *young (ones)*, pulli,
-ūrum, m. ; 'the young' may be
transl. jūniōres or pūeri
younger, junior, -ioris (69) ; young-
est, minimus nātū
your, vester, -tra, -trum

yourself, seo Par. 105 (*te*)
youth, iūventūs, -ūtis,
juvēnis, -is, m.

Zeal, stūdiūm, -i, n.
cum (or summo) stū-

NOTE ON *se*, *suus*, &c.

Sē, *suus* are used (not *eum*, *eius*) only when the Pronoun (1) refers to the Principal Subject ; (2) is in a Subordinate Clause. Unless both these conditions are satisfied, *sē*, *suus* must not be used.

I. In the following examples condition (1) is satisfied, but (2) is not :
(a) *T. thanks me, for I helped him*, T. grātiās mihi agit, nam ei subveni ;
(b) *T. loves me, and I forgive him*, T. mē amat, et ei ignosco ; (c) *T. and his brother came*, T. et frāter eius vēnerunt.

II. In the following, (2) is satisfied, but (1) is not : (a) *I know that he rejoices* ; Scio eum gaudēro ; (b) *I said that his brother had come*, Dixi frātre eius vēnisse.

III. In the following, both conditions are satisfied : (a) *He begs me to pardon him (i.e. himself)*, Orat ut sibi ignoseam ; (b) *He asks whether you saw his brother*, Quorūt nūn frāterem suū vidēris.

